

**Note: A GROWER, FARM and FIELD must be set up in order to go to the Run Screen and load a field and configuration.**

## **Startup**

1. Turn display on by pressing the BLACK BUTTON on the back of the Integra display

**Note: At any time, pressing the BACK ARROW in the upper left of a pop up window will go back a screen. Continue to press the BACK ARROW to get to the HOME SCREEN.**

## **Grower/Farm/Field Tab**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press the FARMSTEAD icon at the bottom center of the setup window
3. Press the GROWER/FARM/FIELD tab
4. Press the GREEN PLUS
5. Press the GREEN PLUS next to Grower
6. Enter the GROWER/BUSINESS NAME
7. Press the GREEN CHECK
8. Press the GREEN PLUS next to Farm
9. Enter the FARM NAME
10. Press the GREEN CHECK
11. Press the GREEN PLUS next to Fields
12. Enter the FIELD NAME
13. Press the GREEN CHECK
14. Repeat steps 8 thru 13 for all Farms and Fields
15. Press the BACK ARROW when all Farms and Fields are entered

**If you are setting up all tabs in one session, begin with step 3 for Season and Operator.**

## **Season Tab**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press the FARMSTEAD icon at the bottom center of the setup window
3. Press the SEASON tab
4. Press the GREEN PLUS
5. Enter the SEASON NAME
6. Press the GREEN CHECK

## **Operator Tab**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press the FARMSTEAD icon at the bottom center of the setup window
3. Press the OPERATOR tab
4. Press the GREEN PLUS
5. Enter the OPERATOR NAME
6. Press the GREEN CHECK
7. Repeat steps 3 thru 5 for all Operators
8. Press the BACK ARROW

**This page left blank intentionally.**

## **Startup**

1. Turn display on by pressing the BLACK BUTTON on the back of the Integra display

**Note: At any time, pressing the BACK ARROW in the upper left of a pop up window will go back a screen. Continue to press the BACK ARROW to get to the HOME SCREEN.**

## **Vehicle Tab**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press the MANAGE EQUIPMENT tab
3. Press the GREEN PLUS to add a vehicle to the list
4. Press the PLANTING button under Choose Vehicle Type
5. Press the KEYBOARD under Make
6. Enter the Vehicle Make
7. Press the GREEN CHECK
8. Press the KEYBOARD under Model
9. Enter the Vehicle Model
10. Press the GREEN CHECK
11. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
12. Press the GREEN CHECK

## **Implement Tab**

**Note: If set up with interplant, create 2 implements (one with interplant and one without).**

**If you are setting up Vehicle, Implement and Controller tabs in one session, begin with step 3 for Season and Operator.**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press MANAGE EQUIPMENT button
3. Press the IMPLEMENT tab
4. Press the GREEN PLUS
5. Press the PLANTING button under Choose Implement Type
6. Using the drop down arrow under Select Planter/Seeder Type, select PLANTER
7. Using the drop down arrow under Select Attachment Method, select REAR DRAWBAR  
**Note: ONLY select Rear Drawbar for Kinze planters, including 2 point hitch attachment machines, for optimum air clutch performance.**
8. Press RIGHT BLUE ARROW
9. Using the drop down arrow under Planter Monitor, select KINZE PLANTER MONITOR MODULE
10. Select SPLIT ROWS ENABLED **for interplant implement only**
11. Select PLANTER SECTION CLUTCH CONTROL **for air clutch equipped planters**
12. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
13. Using the up/down arrows, enter the Number of Rows on the planter
14. Press the KEYPAD button
15. Enter the Row Spacing Value
16. Press the GREEN CHECK  
(example: 16 row 30 inch spacing; interplant setup 31 rows at 15 inch spacing)
17. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
18. Using the up/down arrows, enter the Number of Implement Sections on the planter  
(refers to air clutch sections: 3600/3660 = 4 sections standard,  
3800 = 8 sections standard, if no air clutches select 2 sections)

19. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
20. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW again
21. Press the KEYPAD button
22. Enter the value for the Hitch to Application Distance (Feet)  
(measure the distance from the hitch to the application point)  
**Non-Interplant** - from hitch point to seed tube  
**Interplant** - hitch point to half-way point between rows
23. Press the GREEN CHECK
24. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
25. Press KEYPAD button
26. Enter the Implement Name
27. Press the GREEN CHECK
28. Press the GREEN CHECK to exit the Implement Setup Wizard

## **Controller Tab**

**Note: Controller is only set up with a hydraulic drive equipped planter.**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press the MANAGE EQUIPMENT button
3. Press the CONTROLLER tab
4. Press the GREEN PLUS
5. Press the PLANTING button under Choose Controller Type
6. Using the drop down arrow, select SEED COMMAND as the Device
7. Using the drop down arrow, select HYDRAULIC SEED CONTROL as the Device Type
8. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
9. Using the up/down arrows, select the number of drives  
(3600, 3660: 1 drive; 3800: 2 drives)
10. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
11. Press the GREEN CHECK to select SEED COMMAND as the Controller Name
12. Press the GREEN CHECK
13. Press the BACK ARROW to exit Vehicle/Implement/Controller Setup

## **GPS Offset**

1. Press the VEHICLE tab in the upper right
2. Highlight the Vehicle in the Vehicle list
3. Press the GPS OFFSETS tab in the lower right corner
4. Press the KEYPAD button for Antenna Location from Rear Axle
5. Enter the value (inches)
6. Press the GREEN CHECK
7. Using the drop down arrow, select IN FRONT or BEHIND
8. Press the KEYPAD button for Antenna Location from Centerline
9. Enter the value (inches)
10. Press the GREEN CHECK
11. Using the drop down arrow, select Left or Right
12. Press the KEYPAD button for Antenna Height from Ground
13. Enter the value (inches)
14. Press the GREEN CHECK
15. Press the HITCH tab
16. Press the KEYPAD button for Front Draw Bar
17. Enter the value (inches)

18. Press the GREEN CHECK
19. Press the KEYPAD button for Rear Draw Bar
20. Enter the value (inches)
21. Press the GREEN CHECK
22. Press the KEYPAD button for Front 3-point Hitch
23. Enter the value (inches)
24. Press the GREEN CHECK
25. Press the KEYPAD button for Rear 3-point Hitch
26. Enter the value (inches)
27. Press the GREEN CHECK
28. Press the GREEN CHECK when complete to exit GPS Offsets

## **Product Tab**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press the PRODUCT tab
3. Press the GREEN PLUS
4. Press the SEED VARIETY button under Add Product
5. Using the drop down arrow under Crop, select the CROP that you are setting up information for
6. Using the drop down arrow under Units as Planted, select the UNIT you are using
7. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
8. Press the WRENCH button next to the Variety or Hybrid Manufacturer drop down box
9. Press the GREEN PLUS
10. Enter the HYBRID MANUFACTURER
11. Press the GREEN CHECK
12. Press the GREEN CHECK to exit the Edit List
13. Using the drop down arrow under Variety or Hybrid Manufacturer, select the MANUFACTURER NAME
14. Press the KEYBOARD under Variety or Hybrid Name
15. Type the PRODUCT NAME
16. Press the GREEN CHECK
17. Press the GREEN CHECK to confirm the Variety/Hybrid Manufacturer and Name

***Repeat procedures for all products***

## **Configuration Tab**

- ***VEHICLE, IMPLEMENT and CONTROLLER must be set up prior to this step.***
  - ***If you are using an interplant planter you will set up one configuration for interplant and one configuration for non-interplant.***
1. Press the WRENCH button
  2. Press the CONFIGURATION tab
  3. Press on the GREEN PLUS
  4. Press the PLANTING button under Choose Operating Configuration Type
  5. Using the drop down arrow, select your Vehicle
  6. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
  7. Using the drop down arrow, select your Implement
  8. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
  9. Using the drop down arrow, select your Controller
    - If you have Hydraulic Drive, select SEED COMMAND
    - If you have Contact Drive, select NONE
  10. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
  11. Using the drop down arrow, select your Primary Ground Speed Source

12. Using the drop down arrow, select your Backup Ground Speed Source
13. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
14. Press the GREEN CHECK to confirm the Suggested Name for Configuration

**Repeat steps 3 thru 14 for interplant configuration**

## **Switch Mapping**

***The switches automatically default to the Hydraulic Drive (Seed Command) and Sections 1 and 2 on Switch 1 and Sections 3 and 4 on Switch 2. The following procedure moves the Hydraulic Drive to the Master Switch and Section 1 on Switch 1, Section 2 on Switch 2, etc.***

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Highlight the configuration on the list that you want to switch map for
3. Press the WRENCH button in the middle of the screen
4. Press the AUXILIARY INPUT button on the left hand side
5. Press the ASSIGN button in the upper right hand corner
6. The switch highlighted in green is the one selected and the Seed Clutch boxes highlighted below are what that switch controls
7. Press on the NUMBER 2 SWITCH
8. Press on NUMBER 2 SEED CLUTCH
9. Press on NUMBER 3 SWITCH
10. Press on NUMBER 3 SEED CLUTCH
11. Press on NUMBER 4 SWITCH
12. Press on NUMBER 4 SEED CLUTCH
13. Continue until all of your sections are on their own switch
14. Press the GREEN CHECK if NO Hydraulic Drive; continue with step 15 if you have Hydraulic Drive
15. Press the MASTER SWITCH
16. Press the BLUE DOWN ARROW to the right of the screen
17. Press on SEED COMMAND NUMBER 1
18. Press the GREEN CHECK
19. Check that all the Seed Clutches and Seed Command are on the switches you want
20. Repeat steps if they are not or press RESET ALL to start over
21. Press the BACK ARROW in the upper left corner
22. Press the BACK ARROW again to return to Main Setup Screen

## **Loading a Field/Operation Configuration (Load Run Screen)**

***IMPORTANT: To Load a Field/Operation Configuration, you will need to have your Integra display in the tractor and connected to the planter.***

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press START FIELD OPERATION button
2. Using the drop down arrows, select the desired GROWING SEASON, GROWER, FARM and FIELD
3. Press the BLUE ARROW
4. Using the drop down arrow, select the desired OPERATION CONFIGURATION you are going to use
5. Press the RIGHT BLUE ARROW
6. Using the drop down arrow, select the desired PRODUCT
7. Press the GREEN CHECK
8. Confirm the Product by pressing the GREEN CHECK
9. Press the GRID button in the lower left corner
10. This will take you to the main Run Screen

## **Setting Seeding Rate**

***IMPORTANT: To Load the Run Screen, you will need to have your Integra display in the tractor and connected to the planter.***

1. Press the RATE box in the upper right of the screen
2. Press the WRENCH button to the right of the screen
3. Press the KEYPAD button for Rate 1
4. Enter desired SEEDING RATE value
5. Press the GREEN CHECK
6. Press the KEYPAD button for Rate 2
7. Enter the desired SEEDING RATE value
8. Press the GREEN CHECK
9. Press the KEYPAD button for Increment
10. Enter the TARGET RATE INCREMENT value to be used for Quick Rate Change
11. Press the GREEN CHECK
12. Press the BACK ARROW
13. Press the PLANTER DRIVES (RPM) box in the lower right of the screen
14. Press the KEYBOARD button for sds/rev
15. Enter the SEEDS PER REVOLUTION value
  - Mechanical Meters Corn = 12
  - EdgeVac Standard Rate Corn = 39
  - EdgeVac Low Rate Corn = 24
  - Soybeans (Mechanical or EdgeVac) = 60
16. Press the GREEN CHECK
17. Press the BACK ARROW to return to the Home Screen

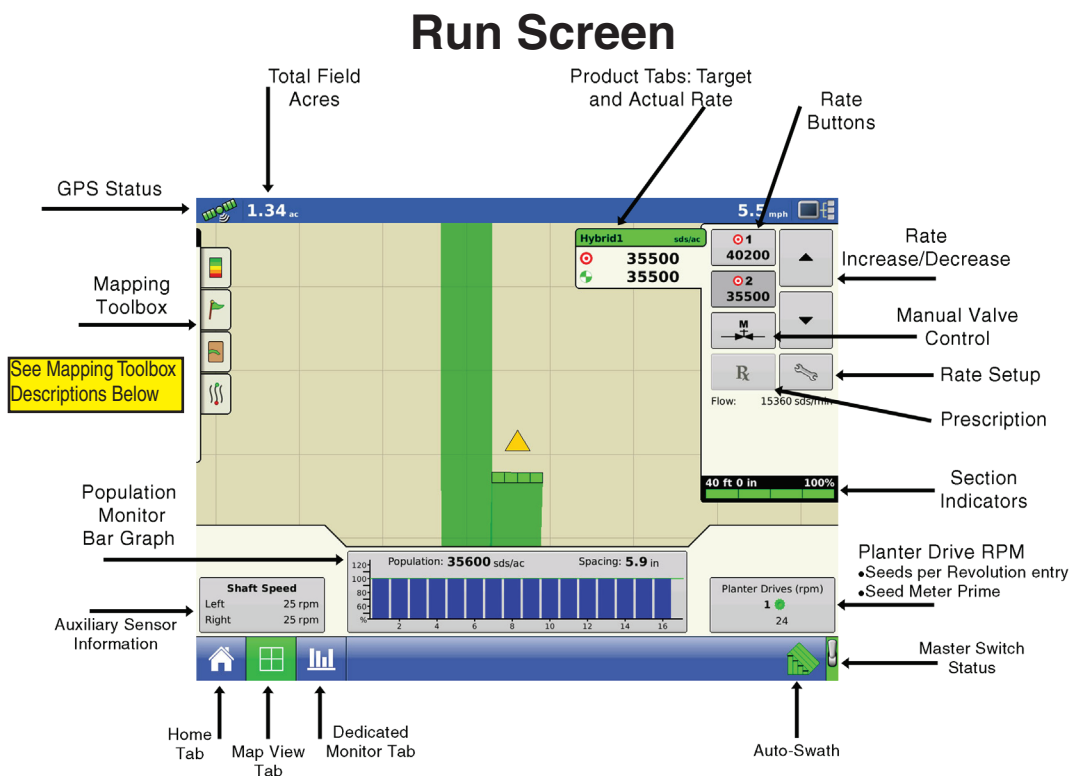
***To begin planting, make sure your Master Switch and all corresponding switches are turned on.***

## **Programming the PMM**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Press MANAGE EQUIPMENT button
3. Press the IMPLEMENT tab
4. Highlight an IMPLEMENT you created
5. Press the SEED MONITOR button in the lower right of the screen
6. Press the PLANTER CONFIGURATION button
7. Enter in values for the Smallest Row Spacing Used, Number of Row Units, Shaft Sensors, any Auxiliary Sensors such as Pneumatic Down Pressure, ASD Tank Pressure, Tank Weight for Scales, EdgeVac Sensors, etc.
8. Press the GREEN CHECK
9. Press the GREEN CHECK when the dialog box appears (“This will require a Mux Bus detection”)
10. Follow the on screen directions and start to plug in your sensors ONE AT A TIME from LEFT to RIGHT and REAR to FRONT
11. After all sensors have been plugged in a dialog box will appear (“All sensors have been found”)
12. Press the GREEN CHECK
13. Press the BACK ARROW to return to the Home Screen

## **Seed Tube Replacement**

1. From the HOME SCREEN, press the WRENCH button
2. Select a CONFIGURATION on the list
3. Press the WRENCH button in the middle of the screen
4. Press the SEED MONITOR button in the bottom center of the screen
5. Press the SENSOR CONFIGURATION button
6. Press REMOVE next to the sensor you wish to remove
7. Physically remove the old sensor
8. Install the new sensor on the planter
9. Plug the new sensor into harness
10. Press INSTALL next to the sensor that was replaced
11. Sensor should say OK
12. Press the BACK button to return to the Home Screen



## Mapping Toolbox Tabs

### Tab1

1. Identify and change variety colors
2. Remove markers
3. Rate range identification
4. Press the TAB and then the WRENCH icon to allow changes

### Tab2 (flag icon)

1. Make markers for tile inlets, rocks, washouts, etc.
2. Press the FLAG icon and then the WRENCH icon to add field markers
3. Press the GREEN PLUS to add a marker to the list

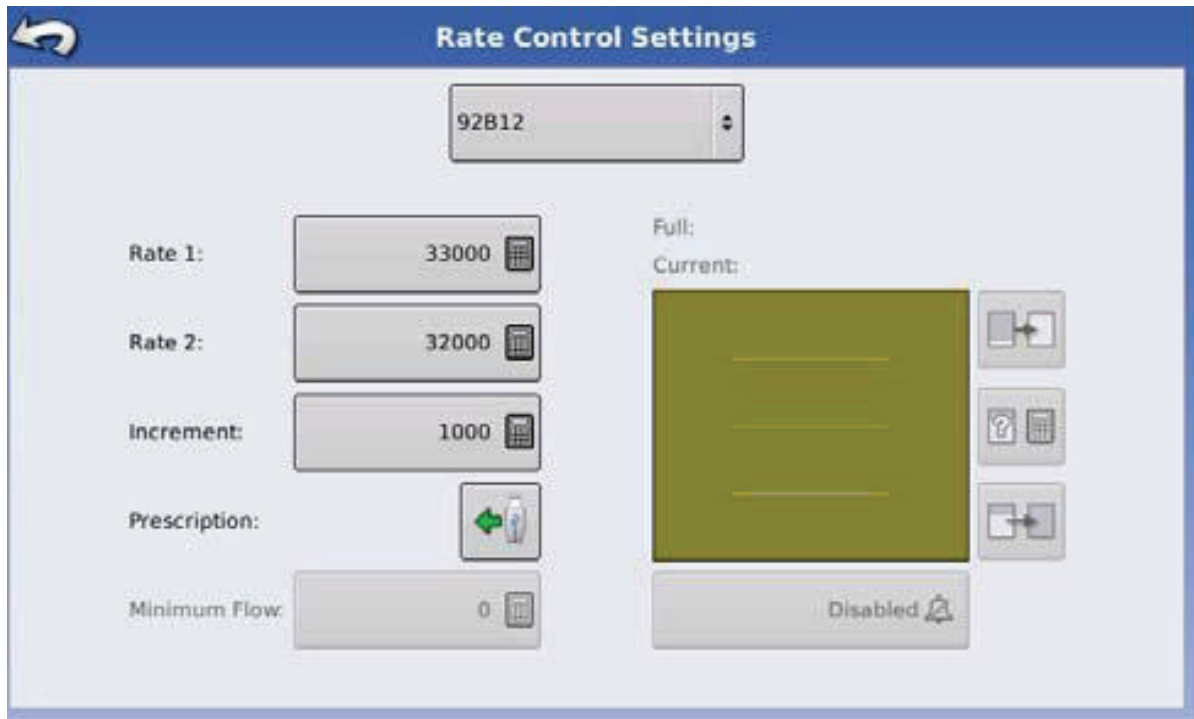
### Tab3

1. Make Boundaries
2. MUST create an outer boundary before an inner boundary

### Tab4

1. Guidance Options
2. Set A-B lines for manual guidance and automated steering
3. Nudge options for steering

The selection box can be minimized by tapping on a tab twice.



## Changing Rate

1. Press the RATE box
2. Press the WRENCH icon
3. Press the CALCULATOR for RATE 1, RATE 2, and INCREMENT to enter the desired values

### Note:

- **The current rate is bold. Press the desired rate to make it the current rate.**
- **The minimize the rate window, press on the hybrid number.**

# Monitor Tab

The screenshot displays the Monitor Tab interface with the following components:

- Hydraulic Drive Shaft Speed:** Shows 0.48 ac and 5.5 mph. A sub-panel displays 'asd' with 194 rpm and 33500 sds/ac.
- Population Monitor Bar Graph:** A bar chart showing population across 16 sections. The total population is 33300 sds/ac and the spacing is 6.3 in.
- Section Indicators:** A horizontal bar with 16 segments, where the first 14 segments are green.
- Auxiliary Sensor Information:** A red-bordered box containing:
  - ShaftSpeed:** Left (24 rpm), Right (24 rpm)
  - Edge VAC:** 20 in
  - Down Pressure:** 250 lb
  - ASD Tanks:**

	Weight	Area Left
Left	807 lb	74 ac
Right	807 lb	74 ac
  - ASD Tank Pressure:** 12 in

The bottom navigation bar includes icons for Home, Grid, Bar Graph (highlighted), and a right-side control panel.

## Run Screen



Dedicated  
Monitor Tab

- The SHAFT SPEED displays the speed of the planter drive shafts, in RPM.
- The TANK WEIGHT displays the weight of seed in each tank.
- The TANK AREA LEFT displays the number of acres (hectares) that can be planted with the amount of seed remaining in the tanks.
- The TANK PRESSURE displays the air pressure level for the Air Seed Delivery (ASD) system.
- The EDGE VAC LEVEL is a measurement of seed meter vacuum. This measurement, shown in inches of water, is displayed for each vacuum fan.
- The PNEUMATIC DOWN PRESSURE is a measurement of down force the air bag places on the row unit.

## **Entering Seeds Per Revolution**

1. Press the dialog box labeled PLANTER DRIVES on the Run Screen
2. Press the CALCULATOR
3. Enter the Seeds Per Revolution for the meter and the disc type you are using
  - a. Finger Pickup Meter - 12
  - b. Brush Meter - Black Soybean Disc - 60
  - c. EdgeVac Meter - Blue Corn Disc - 39
  - d. EdgeVac Meter - Soybean - 60 or 120

## **Prime Seed Meters**

1. From the Run Screen press the PLANTER DRIVES tab in the lower right corner
2. Make sure the planter is lowered to the ground and hydraulics are on
3. Press SEED METER PRIME. The drive will turn one revolution
4. Seed meters are now primed.

## **View Auxiliary Sensors**

1. From the Run Screen press the VIEW AUXILIARY SENSORS dialog box in the lower left corner. It will cycle through the auxiliary sensors (EdgeVac, Down Pressure, Shaft Speed, ASD Pressure, ASD Scale, etc.)

## **Auto-Swath On/Off**

1. Press the SWATH tab in the lower right corner
2. Turn Auto-Swath ON or OFF

## **Setting A-B Line for Manual Guidance Light Bar**

1. Press the GUIDANCE LINES tab (4th tab down on left side)
2. Press NEW PATTERN
3. Select the line pattern you would like to use
4. Press the GREEN CHECK
5. Once you begin moving, press the SET A on the left side of the display
6. Once you have driven far enough a SET B tab will appear. Press it.
7. The light bar will appear at the top of your screen for manual guidance information

**This page left blank intentionally.**

# Hydraulic Drive Settings

## CONFIGURATION RATE CONTROL

### CONTROLLER SETTINGS FOR KINZE® HYDRAULIC DRIVE

Setting	Description	3600 / 3660 EdgeVac Value	3600 / 3660 Mechanical Value	3800 EdgeVac Value	3800 Mechanical Value
<b>Shaft Speed Cal</b>	Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the hydraulic motor (pls/rev).	360	360	360	360
<b>Control Valve Configuration</b>	Setting determines the type of control valve being used for the hydraulic motor. Choices include Servo or RPM.	PWM	PWM	PWM	PWM
<b>Max. Meter Speed</b>	Setting determines the maximum RPM of the seed meter.	150	150	150	150
<b>Gear Ratio</b>	Ratio of the revolutions of the hydraulic drive as compared to the revolutions of the seed meter.	2.947	1.533	2.267	1.533
<b>PWM Frequency</b>	The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve. Typical settings range from 180–220 Hz.	200	200	200	200
<b>PWM Gain</b>	Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate change adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.	60	130	130	130
<b>Zero Flow Offset</b>	Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero Flow Offset value can cause the product control system to not properly control low rates. See the PWM valve manufacturer's information for recommended settings.	45	33	33	33
<b>Allowable Error</b>	Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes.	2%	2%	2%	2%
<b>Response Threshold</b>	Determines the system responsiveness to rate change.	-----	-----	-----	-----
<b>Valve Response 1</b>	Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting.	-----	-----	-----	-----
<b>Valve Response 2</b>	Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting.	-----	-----	-----	-----

## **Hydraulic Drive**

### **Planter Drives dialog box not available on the Run screen in the lower right hand corner**

- Make sure Seed Command is set-up in the Controller tab under the Wrench icon and Manage Equipment tab.
- Under set-up of the configuration select Seed Command as Controller. Rate Logging/Control must be selected. If not selected Drives will not be displayed and the hydraulic drive will not run. Delete and make a new configuration in order to select Seed Command.
  - Example of completed configuration with hydraulic drive: Case IH, Kinze 3660, Seed Command

### **Hydraulic Drive will not Prime**

- Make sure Planter is down
- Make sure Master Switch is on
- Ensure Hydraulics are engaged (Try remote in both directions)
- Make sure Corresponding switch on the switch box is turned on.
  - Can be checked under the Wrench tab and highlighting the configuration and pressing the Wrench icon and then the Auxiliary Input tab.
- Check Implement switch adjustment
  - When in planting position the implement switch arm should not touch anything and be in the neutral position.
  - When planter is in the raised field position the arm should engage the lower parallel arm and move half an inch.
- Make sure Meter Calibration number is correct.
  - Found on the Run Screen in the lower right hand corner. Press the Drive tab and enter in your seeds per revolution. (12 for mechanical corn, 39 Standard EV corn, 24 low rate EV corn, 60 for mechanical and EV Soybeans)
- Check for mechanical interference of drive line by turning hydraulics on and going back to the motor on planter and slowly turning in manual screw on top of PWM valve. Slowly turn screw in and the drive should start to turn. If not, there is no hydraulic flow from tractor or a mechanical binding issue. Completely screw valve all the way out. This will stop the motor from turning and the drive should be ready for planting.
- Check for voltage at the Seed Rate Module. (black and red wires) (Should have Battery Voltage)
- The green light should be flashing on the module (This does not mean there is power at module)

### **Hydraulic Drive does not turn on when planting**

- Make sure master switch is on
- Make sure the corresponding switch on the switch box is turned on.
  - Can be checked under the Wrench tab; highlight the configuration; press the Wrench icon and then the Auxiliary Input tab
- Make sure it primes (See troubleshooting above)
- Ensure Hydraulics are engaged (Place remote in both directions)
- Make sure Meter Calibration number is correct.
  - Found on the Run Screen in the lower right hand corner. Press the Drive tab and enter in your seeds per revolution. (12 for mechanical corn, 39 Standard EV corn, 24 low rate EV corn, 60 for mechanical and EV Soybeans)
  - Do not need to perform meter calibration in order to get the seeds per revolution. Simply put in the number of cells or fingers for your meter. (See above)

## **Hydraulic Drive (cont'd)**

- Make sure there is a rate selected on the Run Screen
  - Found in the upper right hand corner by tapping on the hybrid number. You can then enter in rates for number 1 and 2 by pressing on the wrench icon and entering in the information.
- Check Implement switch adjustment
  - When in planting position the implement switch arm should not touch anything and be in the neutral position. When planter is in the raised field position the arm should engage the lower parallel arm and move half an inch.
- Check for voltage at the Seed Rate Module (black and red wires) (Should have Battery Voltage)
- Check for voltage at the PWM valve when priming meters (Should have Battery Voltage)
- Green light should be flashing on Seed Rate Module (This does not mean there is power there)

### **Hydraulic Drive does not stop when planter is raised**

- Implement switches are out of adjustment
  - When in planting position the implement switch arm should not touch anything and be in the neutral position. When planter is in the raised field position the arm should engage the lower parallel arm and move half an inch.
- Make sure manual over ride screw is all the way out on the PWM valve.

### **Hydraulic Drive takes a long distance (15 ft) before it starts**

- Adjust motion sensor on center wheel to within 1/8th of an inch of pulse wheel on center tire
- Start moving less than 2 mph. An alert at the top of the Run Screen should pop up and read "jump start speed in use" and the drive should start to turn. This will indicate the jump start sensor is working properly. If the alert does not pop up, check for damaged wires going to jump start sensor.

### **Air Clutches Not Working**

- Make sure planter is down
- Make sure the Master switch and all corresponding switches are on
- Implement switches could be out of adjustment
  - When in planting position the implement switch arm should not touch anything and be in the neutral position. When planter is in the raised field position the arm should engage the lower parallel arm and move half an inch.
- Configure the Clutch Module on the Implement Tab under Set-up to make sure the wiring and power wires are not damaged.
- Ensure there is power to the air compressor
- Ensure air in the compressor tank and regulator is set to at least 50 psi.
- Ensure air is going to the valve box
- Manually shut air clutch off with switch box and see if there is air at each clutch section
- Lubricate Air Clutches
- Make sure the Auto Swath option is green on the Run Screen in the lower right hand side of screen.
- Check GPS Off-Set measurements for the vehicle. Press the Wrench Icon. Highlight Configuration. Press GPS Offsets in upper left hand corner.
- Check measurement of application point for planter on pressing the Wrench icon. Highlight Configuration. Press the Wrench. Press Implement Offsets and look at the lower Box.

---

## **PMM**

### **Bar Graph, Population or Spacing does not read when start planting.**

- Make sure the correct speed input is selected.
  - Check in the Planter Configuration screen under the Implement tab. (Most common would be GPS)

### **Interplant rows not showing up on run screen.**

- Make sure the configuration with the interplant name was loaded when loading a field.

### **Rate on the bar graph does not match selected rate.**

- Make sure the row spacing set-up in the PMM is set on the smallest row spacing the monitor will see.
- Perform an infield check to verify rate and difference in PMM.
- Ensure hydraulic drive settings are correct. (See first page.)
  - Press the Wrench icon. Highlight Configuration. Press the Wrench icon. Press Controller Settings.

### **Mux-Bus short to ground (Alarm/Error)**

- The green wire is shorted to the black wire or to the frame.

### **Mux-Bus short to Power (Alarm/Error)**

- The green wire is shorted to the white wire.

## KINZE Planter Monitor Module (PMM) Troubleshooting

Problem	Symptoms	Solution
The text in the Seed Monitor button is Gray	Cannot access Seed monitor setup button	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Reference to Problem- "PMM is not found on the CAN Bus"</li> <li>2. Need to create a new planter. Select Kinze Planter Monitor Module from the dropdown box.</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b> If using interplant. Checkmark Interplant Rows Enabled.</p>
Bad Configuration- "Illegal number of front rows."	Occurs when Planter configuration in the PMM setup.	Accepting the number of front units must be equal to or one less than the rear units. Or there needs to be zero front units.
Error- "Sensors Already Detected. Muxbus Detection Aborted."	Appears shortly after accepting the PMM Setup.	One or more sensors are connected to the PMM. Disconnect all sensors before accepting the PMM setup.
Error- "Mismatched Sensors"	Occurs when accepting the PMM setup	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Occurs when adding interplant rows to a PMM with already detected rear rows.</li> <li>2. Reconnect the rear seed tube sensors and any other required or accessory sensors that were already learned. Leave the seed sensors for the Interplant disconnected. Repeat the MUXbus detection for the Interplant rows.</li> </ol>
Error- "Dirty Sensor" During Startup.	Displays only during system startup. Message appears in a dialogue box displaying which row sensor/s are dirty. Audible alarm "steady beeping". Continues to alarm after selecting "OK" to dirty sensor error.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Clean the detected dirty sensor/s.</li> <li>2. Verify PMM firmware is on v1.5 or higher</li> </ol>
Error- "Dirty Sensor" When planting.	Message appears in a dialogue box displaying which row sensor/s are dirty. Audible alarm "steady beeping". Continues to alarm after selecting "OK" to dirty sensor error.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify PMM firmware is on v1.5 or higher</li> <li>2. Check boot counter on PMM. If value is significantly higher than the rest of the modules. Then a intermittent 12 volt power issue is present.</li> <li>3. Check cabling.</li> </ol>

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Symptoms</b>	<b>Solution</b>
Error- Muxbus short to ground.	Kinze Mux Bus signal wire is being shorted to a ground source	1. Press OK to dismiss the error. Fix sensor harness based on what sensor displayed in the error. 2. If repair cannot be made. Go into PMM setup to disable the seed tube until repairs can be made.
Error- Muxbus short to power.	Kinze Mux Bus signal wire is being shorted to a ground source.	1. Press OK to dismiss the error. Fix sensor harness based on what sensor displayed in the error. 2. If repair cannot be made. Go into PMM setup to disable the seed tube until repairs can be made.
Error- CAN node lost- PMM node has stopped communicating	On the run screen. Message appears in a dialogue box. On the run screen	1. Cycle power to the InSight monitor.  2. Check cabling
Configuration is not found in the Field operation wizard.	Created a configuration. Configuration will not come up in the Field operation Wizard.	Check for CAN communication on the modules required for the configuration. This is found in the Run Screen in the System button under the CAN tab.
Planter is planting seed. Monitor is not making a map or displaying population		1. Verify PMM firmware is on v1.5 or higher  2. In sensor configuration check to see if shaft RPM sensors are learned and recognized.  3. Inspect shaft RPM sensor. Check sensor & the actuator wheel are properly aligned (centered) and have 1/8 inch air gap.
Planter is planting seed. Monitor is making a map of 1/2 of the planter of planter swath.	Occurs only when clutch control is not used.	1. Inspect shaft RPM sensor cable connection.  2. Inspect shaft RPM sensor. Make sure the sensor & the actuator wheel are properly aligned (centered) and have 1/8 inch air gap.
Planter is planting seed. Monitor is displaying population. Monitor is not making a coverage map.	Displays Bar Graph & reads a shaft RPM. Navigation arrow is following the direction of travel. But not moving on the map.	1. GPS Flier point has been logged by the InSight. To remove the flier point push the Clear Bounds button under Grower/Field Management

Problem	Symptoms	Solution
Planter monitor is displaying half of the actual population.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify sprocket combination is actually set up for target population.</li> <li>2. In system diagnostics check PMM ground speed is accurate.</li> <li>3. In the PMM setup check # of rows and row spacing. <b>NOTE:</b> Row spacing needs to be setup for the minimum row spacing.</li> </ol>
Planter monitor is displaying improper spacing or population of the actual rate.		<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Verify sprocket combination is actually set up for target population.</li> <li>2. In system diagnostics check PMM ground speed is accurate.</li> <li>3. In the PMM setup check # of rows and row spacing. <b>NOTE:</b> Row spacing needs to be setup for the minimum row spacing.</li> </ol>
Sensors calibrating wait for calibration.	During InSight Startup	Wait for Planter Monitor Module (PMM) to finish before operation.
Row # sensor not detected	Population sensor did not begin communicating with the PMM.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Acknowledge the error by pressing OK. Check the LED light on the sensor to see if sensor is working properly.</li> <li>2. Cycle power on the InSight display</li> </ol>

**This page left blank intentionally.**

## Home Screen Layout

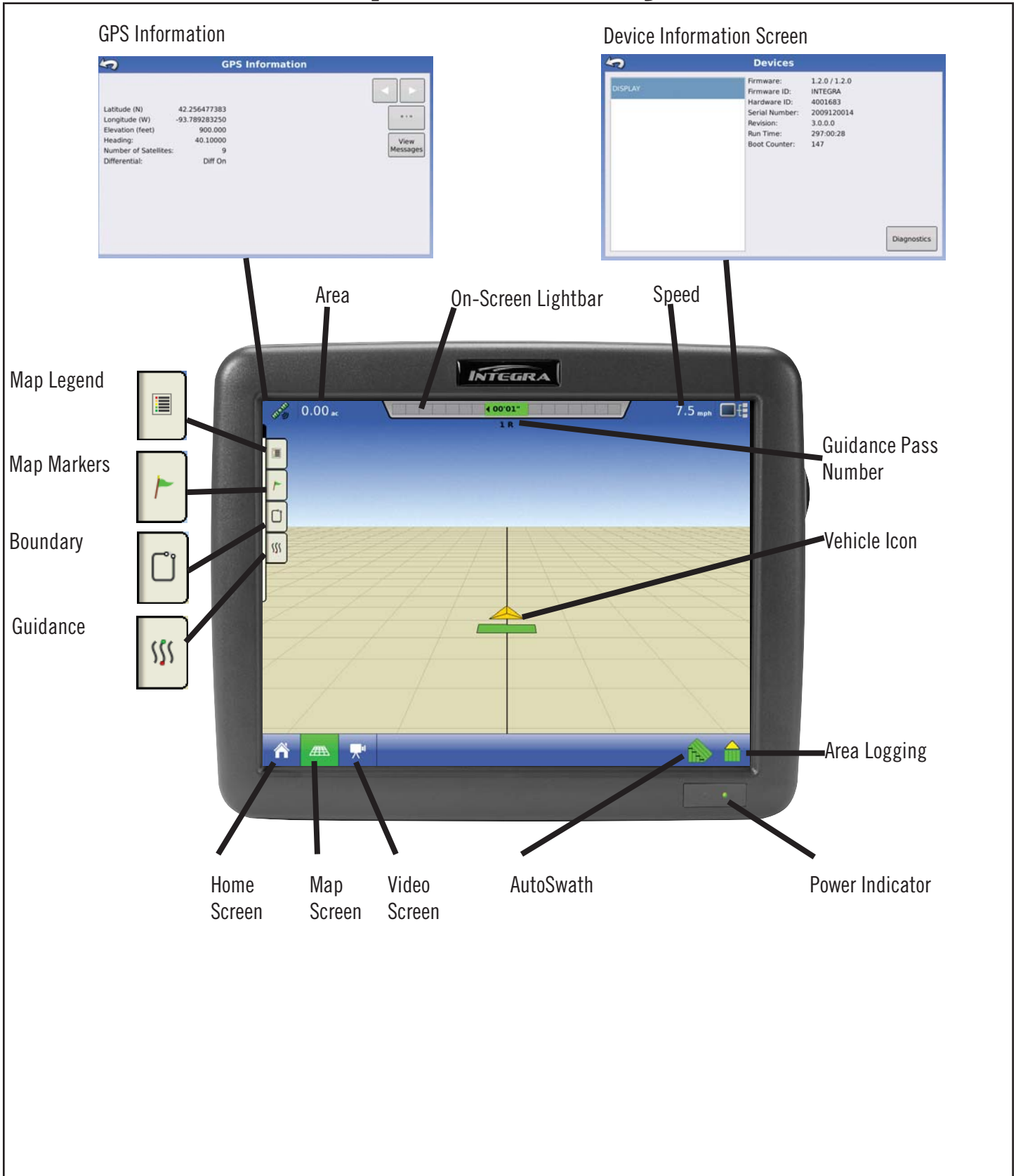
The diagram illustrates the home screen layout of the INTEGRA system, centered around a tablet device. The main screen displays the following information:

- Configuration:** Ag Leader, Waterway, South, Region: <1>
- Operation Summary:** (Empty area)
- Productivity:** -- ac/hr
- Average Speed:** -- mph
- Operating Time:** 0:00:00
- Area Complete:** 0.0 ac
- Area Remaining:** 0.0 ac
- Distance Traveled:** 0.0 ft
- Time:** 10:08:48 AM, 04/29/2010

Callouts point to the following screens:

- Grower, Farm and Field:** Field Operation Wizard: Grower Selection. Fields include Growing Season (2010 Crop), Grower (Greenpasture Farms), Farm (Jones Farm), and Field (Main Field).
- Region:** Options screen with a dropdown menu set to <1>.
- Setup:** Configuration screen for JD 8130 Ripper, showing Equipment Name (JD 8130), Vehicle (JD 8130), and Implement (Ripper).
- Report Details:** Report Details screen with a table of attributes and values.
- External Storage Operations:** External Storage Status screen showing Used (0.5 MB), Free (244.1 MB), and Total (244.6 MB) storage.
- Summary Report:** Summary Report screen showing a table of instances with columns for Region, Area (ac), and Date Created.

## Map Screen Layout

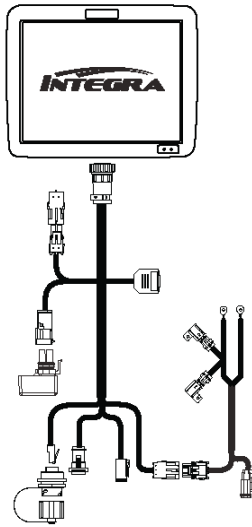


## Connecting the System

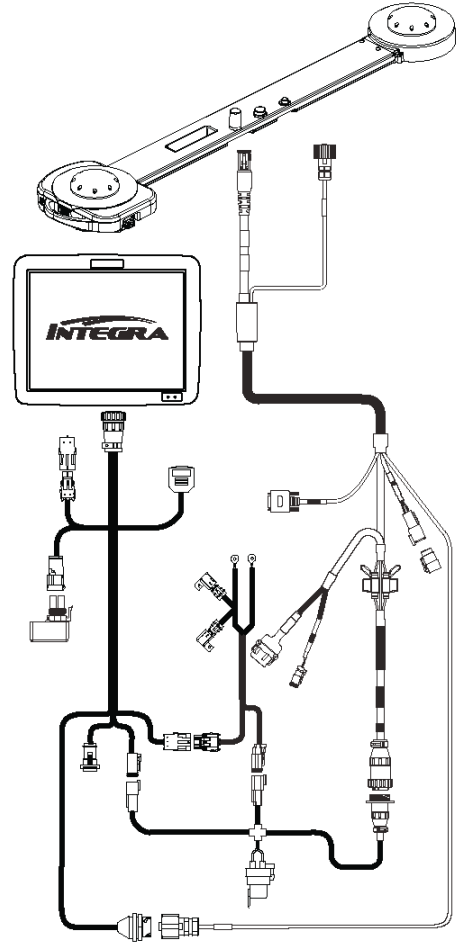
### Standard System

**Fuse Type:** Blade Style (ATO/ATC)      **Operating Voltage:** 9-16 V DC

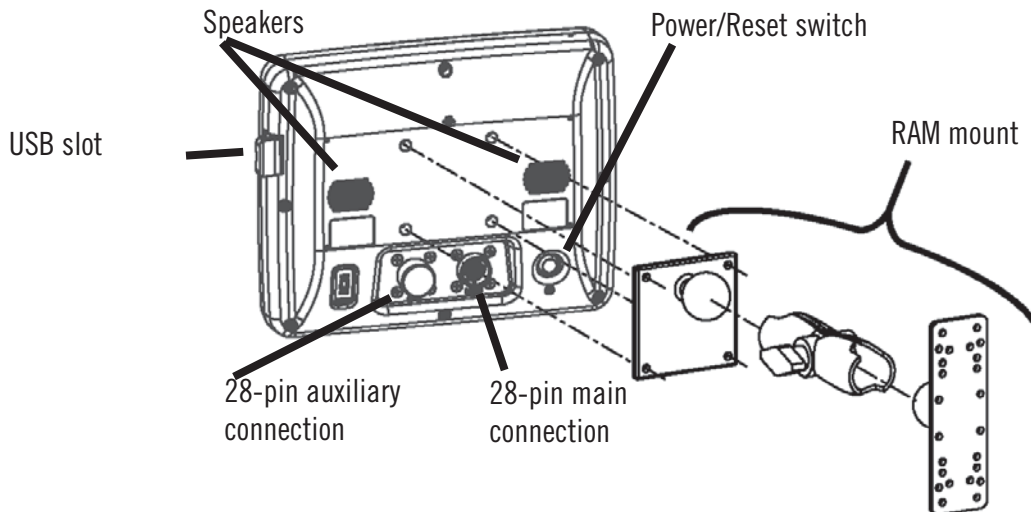
**Rating:** 5A, 250 VAC  
15A, 250 VAC      **Max Current Rating:** 2.5 amp.









### INTEGRA with ParaDyme













## Mounting the System









## Status Bar Icons

			GPS Button
			Flex Mode (ParaDyme users only)
			Device Information Button






## Task Bar Buttons

			Home
			Map View
			Steering Status
			NORAC Engage Buttons
			Video Screen Button





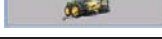

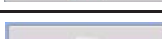

## Function Buttons

		Master Switch
		Area Logging Status
		AutoSwath

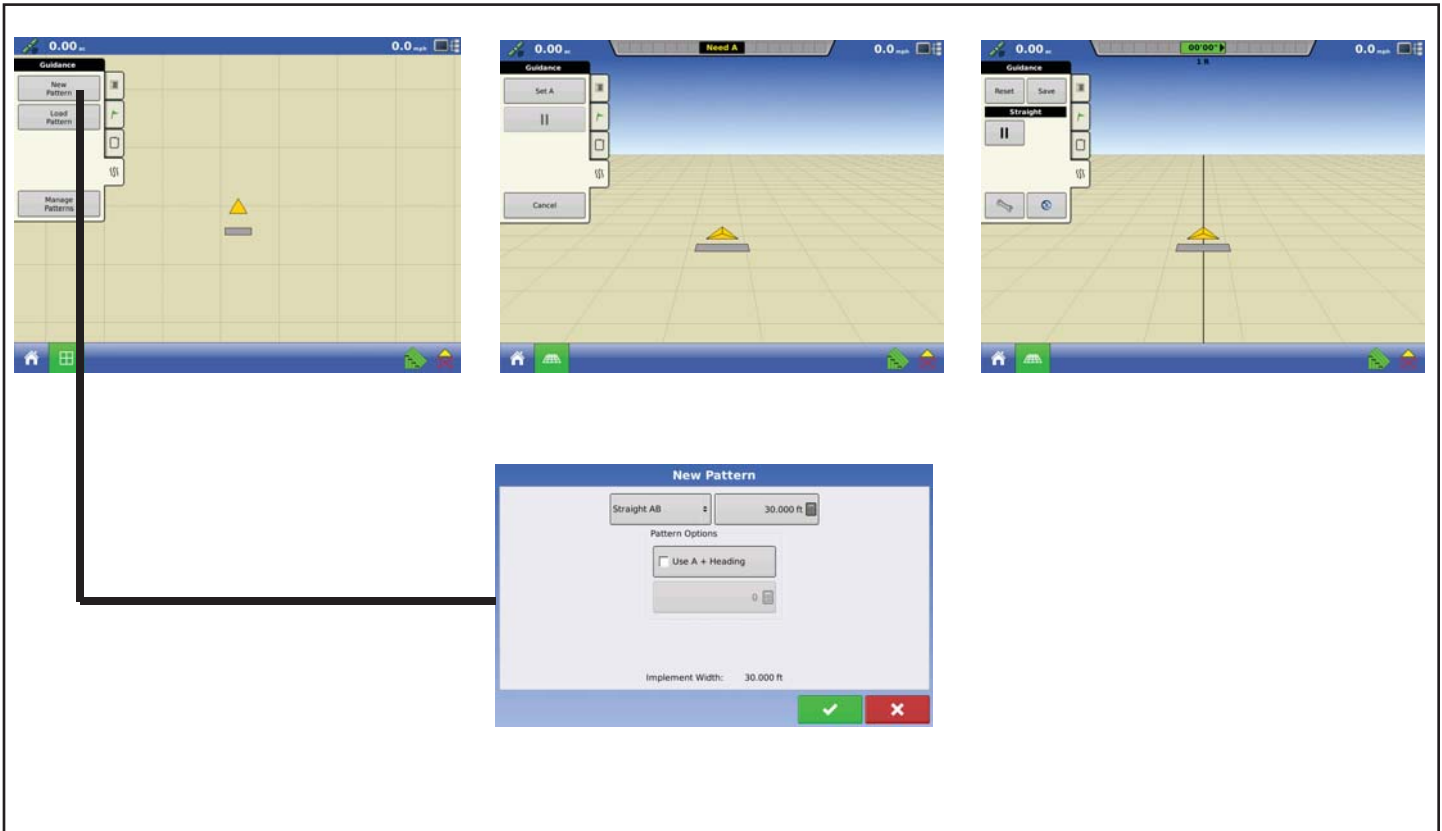
## Map Screen Icons

			Vehicle Icons
			Arrow Icons
			Zoom Tool Icons

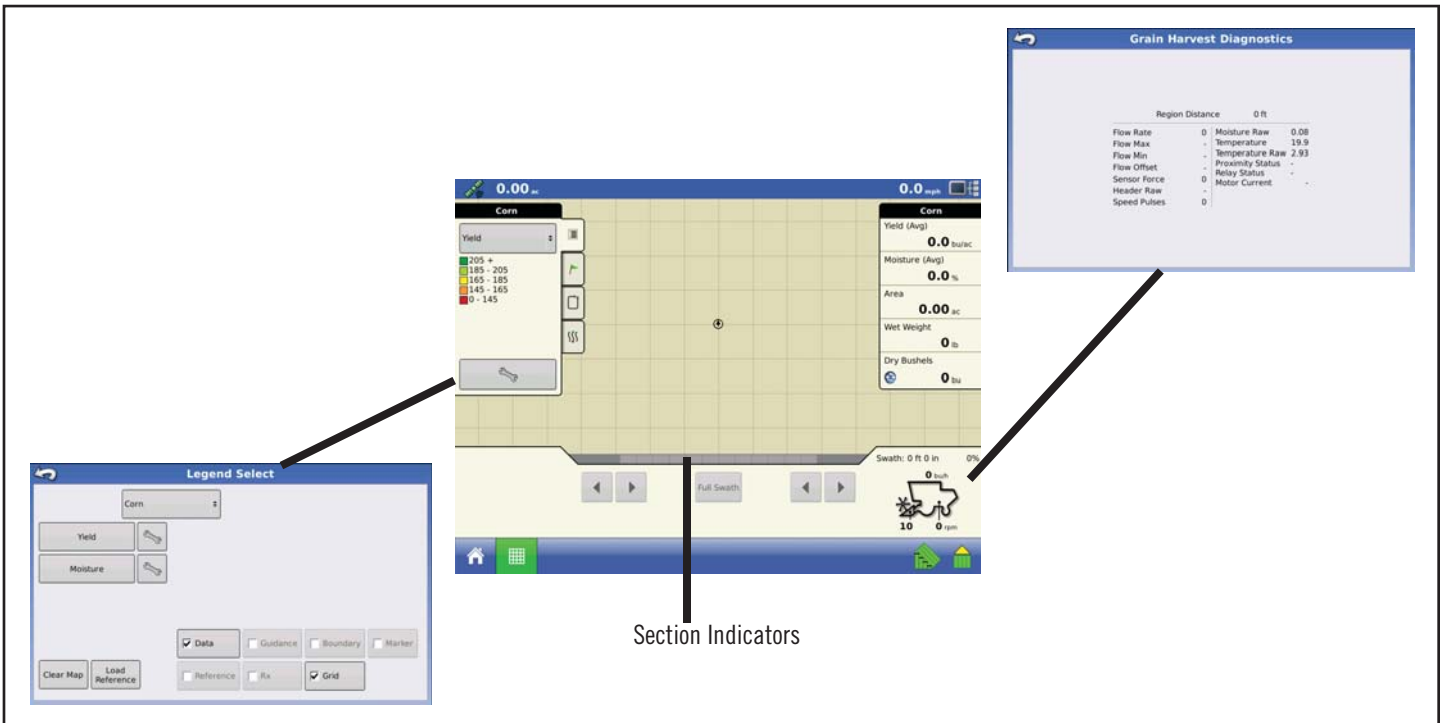
## Setup Buttons

	Setup (wrench) Button
	Add Button
	Remove Button
	On-screen keyboard
	Configuration Setup
	Management
	GPS
	Console

## Guidance



## Harvest



## Planting (SeedCommand™)

The interface is divided into several functional panels:

- Legend Select:** A panel for selecting crop types and map layers. It includes a dropdown for 'Soybeans', buttons for 'Varieties' and 'Rate', and checkboxes for 'Data', 'Guidance', 'Boundary', 'Marker', 'Reference', 'Rx', and 'Grid'. 'Data' and 'Grid' are currently checked.
- Rate Control Settings:** A panel for configuring seeding rates. It features a 'Soybeans' dropdown, input fields for 'Rate 1' (32000), 'Rate 2' (30000), and 'Increment' (1000). It also includes a 'Prescription' button, a 'Minimum Flow' field (0), and a 'Full: Current:' status indicator.
- Seed Monitor Options:** A panel for monitoring seed distribution. It has 'Display Options' (Table View) and 'Rate / Spacing Display' (Scan, Freeze, Planter). It shows 'Averages' for 'High Row' (1: 27900) and 'Low Row' (1: 27900), and a 'Gain' field (1). An 'Alarms' section has a checked option 'Ignore seed alarms when row clutches turn off'.
- Planter Controls:** A panel for meter calibration. It includes a 'Meter Calibration' section for 'Soybeans' with a '0 sds/rev' field and a 'Calibrate' button. A 'Seed Meter Prime' button is also present.

The central main display shows a grid map with a 'Soybeans' rate of 32000 sds/ac. It includes a 'Section Indicators' bar at the bottom, a 'Planter Average' of 27900 sds/ac, 'Spacing: 0.0 in', and 'Planter Drives (rpm)' showing 1 and 31. A 'Swath: 0 ft 0 in 0%' indicator is also visible.

## DirectCommand™ Liquid

The interface is divided into several functional panels:

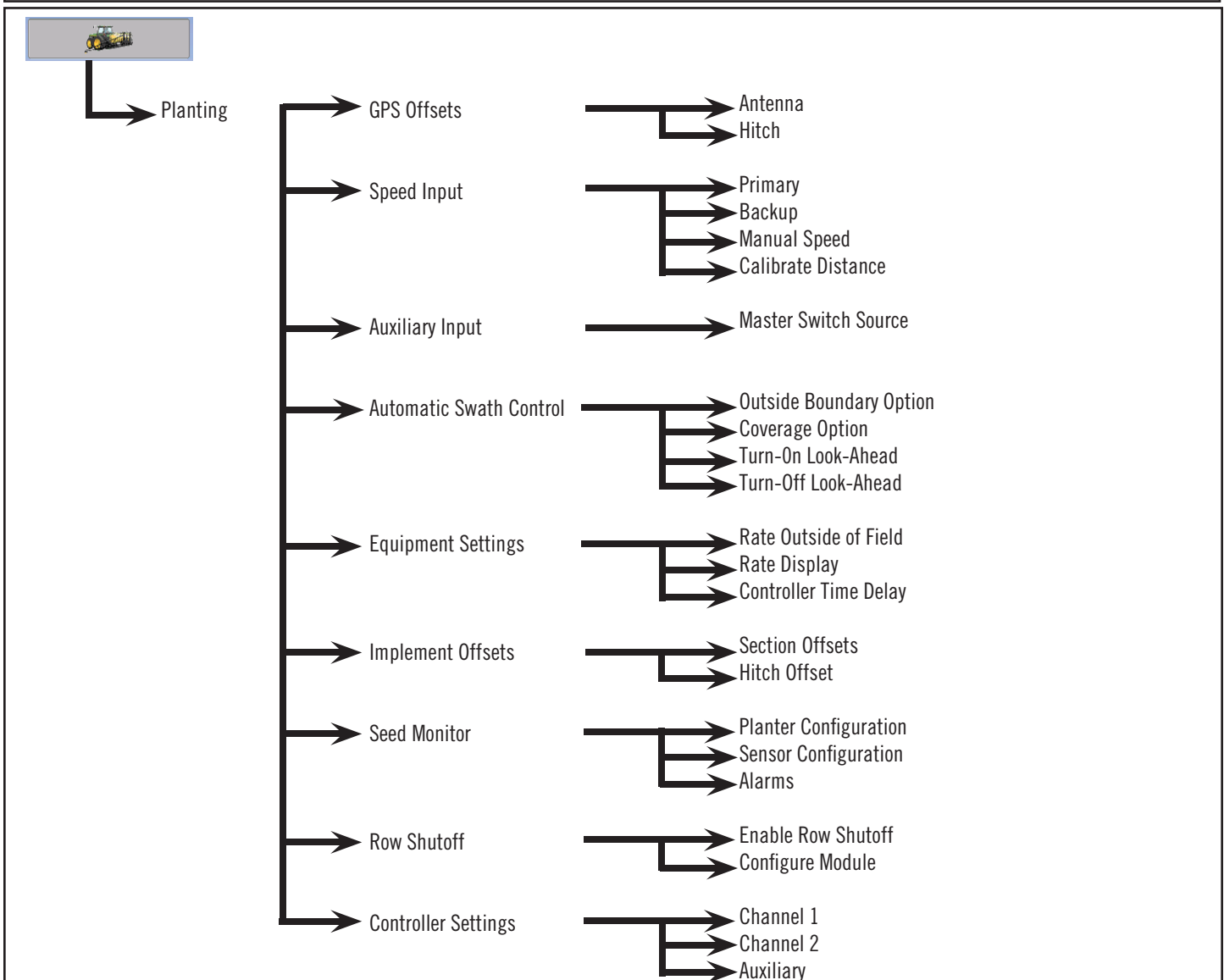
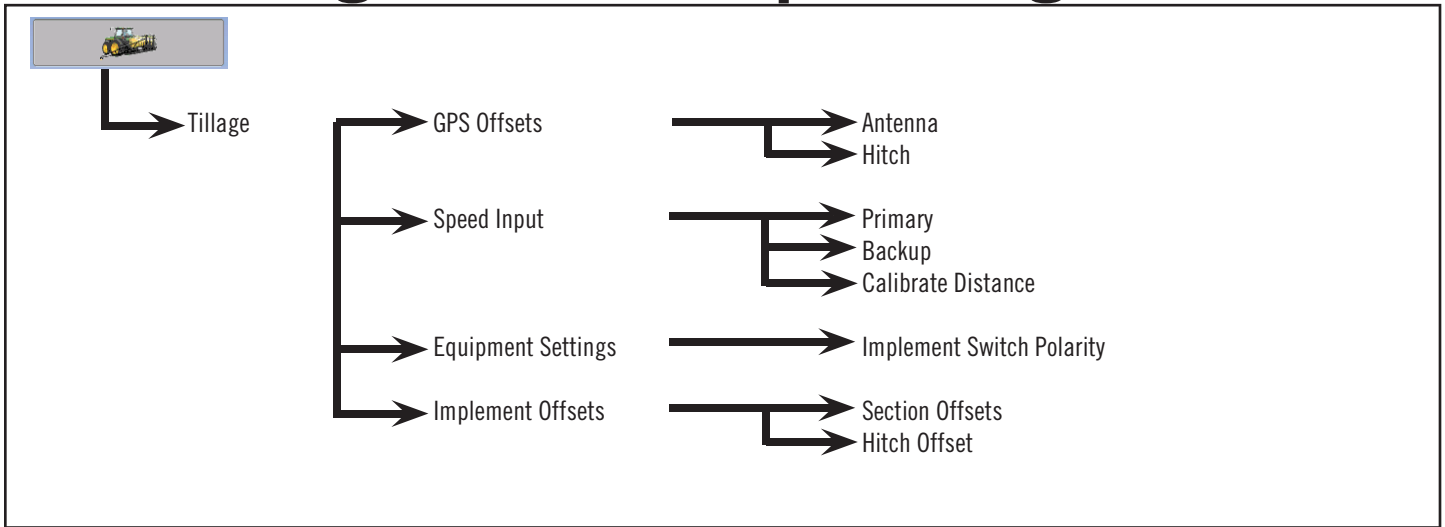
- Legend Select:** A panel for selecting the liquid type (currently 'Water') and configuring map display options. It includes a 'Rate' button, a 'Data' checkbox, and other map-related controls like 'Guidance', 'Boundary', 'Marker', 'Reference', 'Rx', and 'Grid'.
- Rate Control Settings:** A panel for configuring application rates. It shows 'Rate 1' and 'Rate 2' (both set to 12.00), an 'Increment' of 2.00, and a 'Prescription' icon. It also displays 'Full' and 'Current' tank levels at 1200 gal and a 'Minimum Flow' of 0 gal/min.
- Map View:** The central display area showing a field map with a grid. It includes a 'Water' legend with rate ranges (13.0+, 11.0-13.0, 9.0-11.0, 7.0-9.0, 0-7.0) and a 'Roundup' legend with rates of 28.000. A 'Section Indicators' label points to the map's section lines. The map also shows 'Injection' controls (Mode: Crop, Target Height: 30 in, Sensitivity: 5) and a 'Swath' indicator (0 ft 0 in, 0%).
- Injection Controls:** A panel with 'DirectInjection', 'Prime', and 'Agitate' buttons, and a green checkmark button at the bottom.
- Boom Height Control Options:** A panel for adjusting 'Crop Mode', 'Sensitivity' (set to 5), and 'Target Height' (set to 30).

## DirectCommand™ Dry

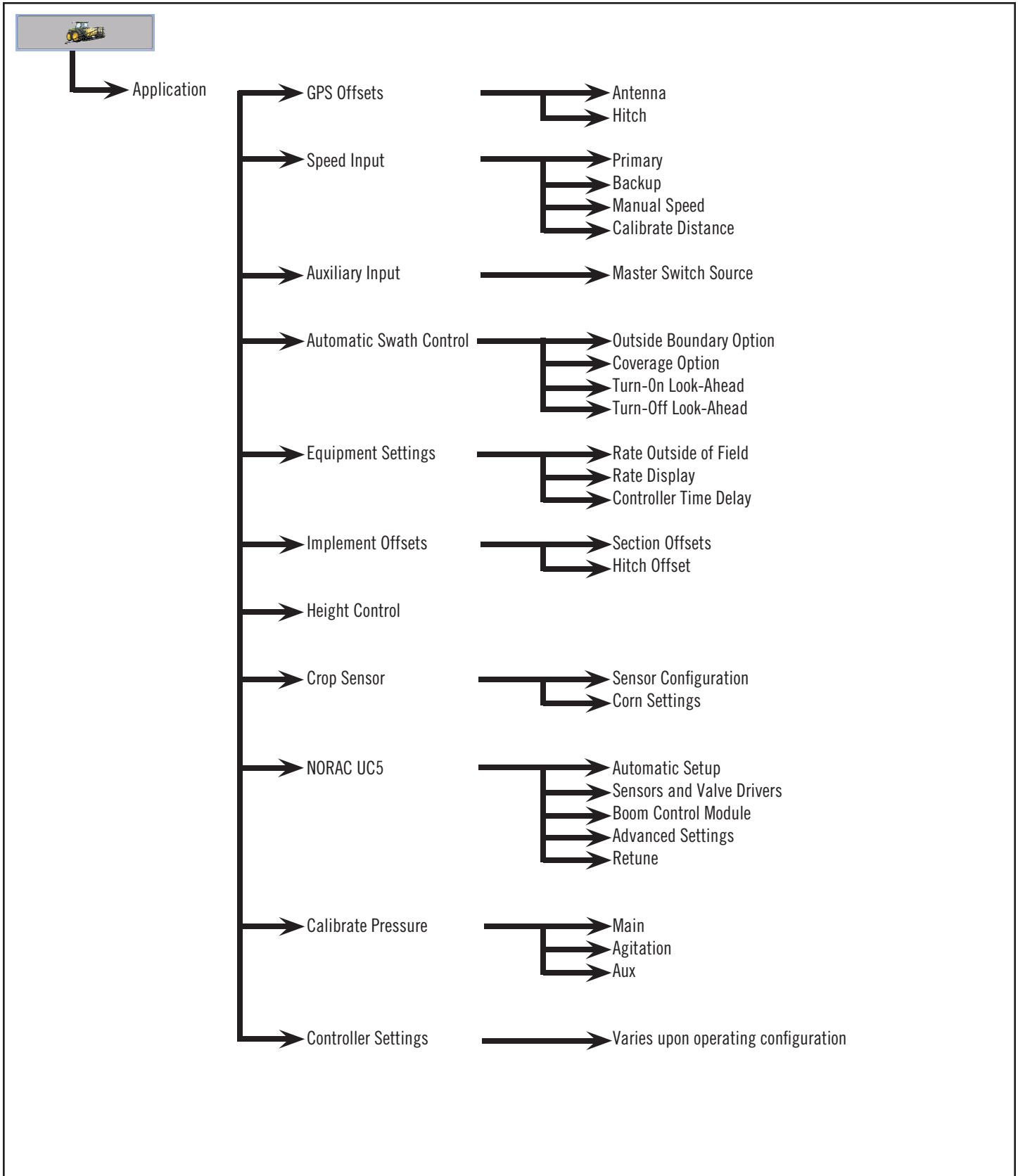
The interface is divided into several functional panels:

- Legend Select:** A panel for configuring map layers. It includes a dropdown menu set to 'DAP', a 'Rate' button with a wrench icon, and checkboxes for 'Data', 'Guidance', 'Boundary', 'Marker', 'Reference', 'Rx', and 'Grid'. 'Data' and 'Grid' are currently checked. 'Clear Map' and 'Load Reference' buttons are also present.
- Rate Control Settings:** A panel for configuring application rates. It features a 'DAP' dropdown, input fields for 'Rate 1' (50.00), 'Rate 2' (40.00), and 'Increment' (10.00). It also includes a 'Prescription' button with a green arrow and a 'Minimum Flow' field set to 0. On the right, a yellow map preview shows a field with a 'Full' capacity of 150 ft³ and a 'Current' level of 150 ft³. Below the preview are fields for '15 ft³' and '10 %'.
- Central Map:** The main application area showing a field map with a grid. The top status bar displays '0.00 ac' and '0.0 mph'. A 'DAP' dropdown is at the top left. A legend on the left shows rate ranges: 55.0+, 45.0-55.0, 35.0-45.0, 25.0-35.0, and 0-25.0. A right-side panel shows 'DAP' (50.00), 'MAP' (40.00), and 'Urea' (60.00) rates, along with 'Flow' (0.0 lb/min), 'Applied' (0.0 lb), 'Area' (0.0 ac), and 'Container' (150 ft³) information. At the bottom, 'Section Indicators' are shown as three numbered buttons (1, 2, 3) with '0' below each and an 'RPM' indicator.
- Spreader Control:** A panel for managing the spreader's physical settings. It includes 'Spread Width' (60 ft) and 'Spinner Speed' (600 rpm) controls. Below are buttons for 'Chain Oiler', 'Static Calibration', and 'In-Field Calibration'. The main area is divided into 'Channel 1', 'Channel 2', and 'Channel 3', with 'DAP' selected. It displays 'Product Density' (58 lb/ft³), 'Feed Gate 1 Opening' (2 in), and 'Conveyor 1 Rate' (0.256 ft³/rev).

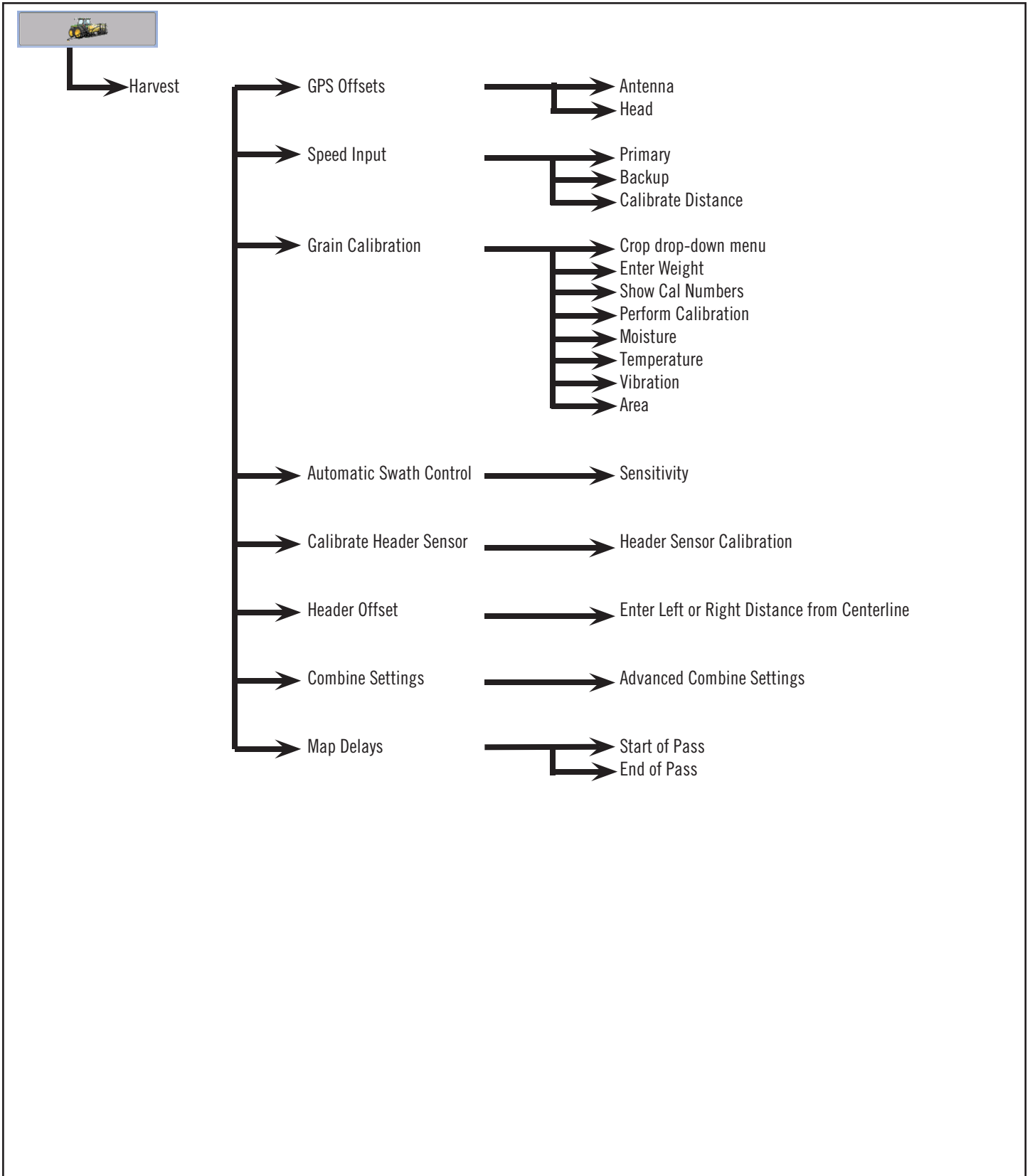
## Configuration Setup Settings - 1



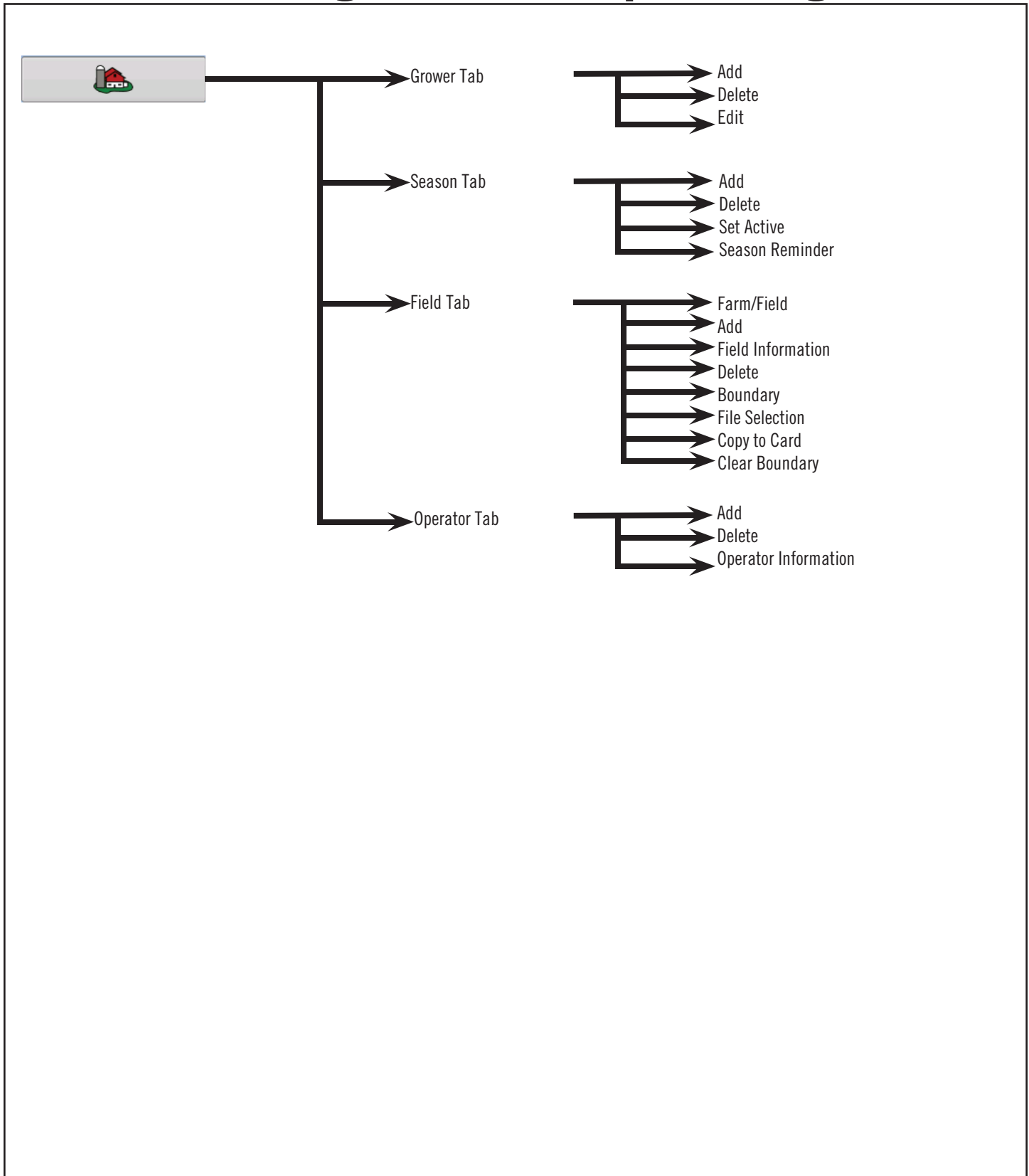
## Configuration Setup Settings - 2



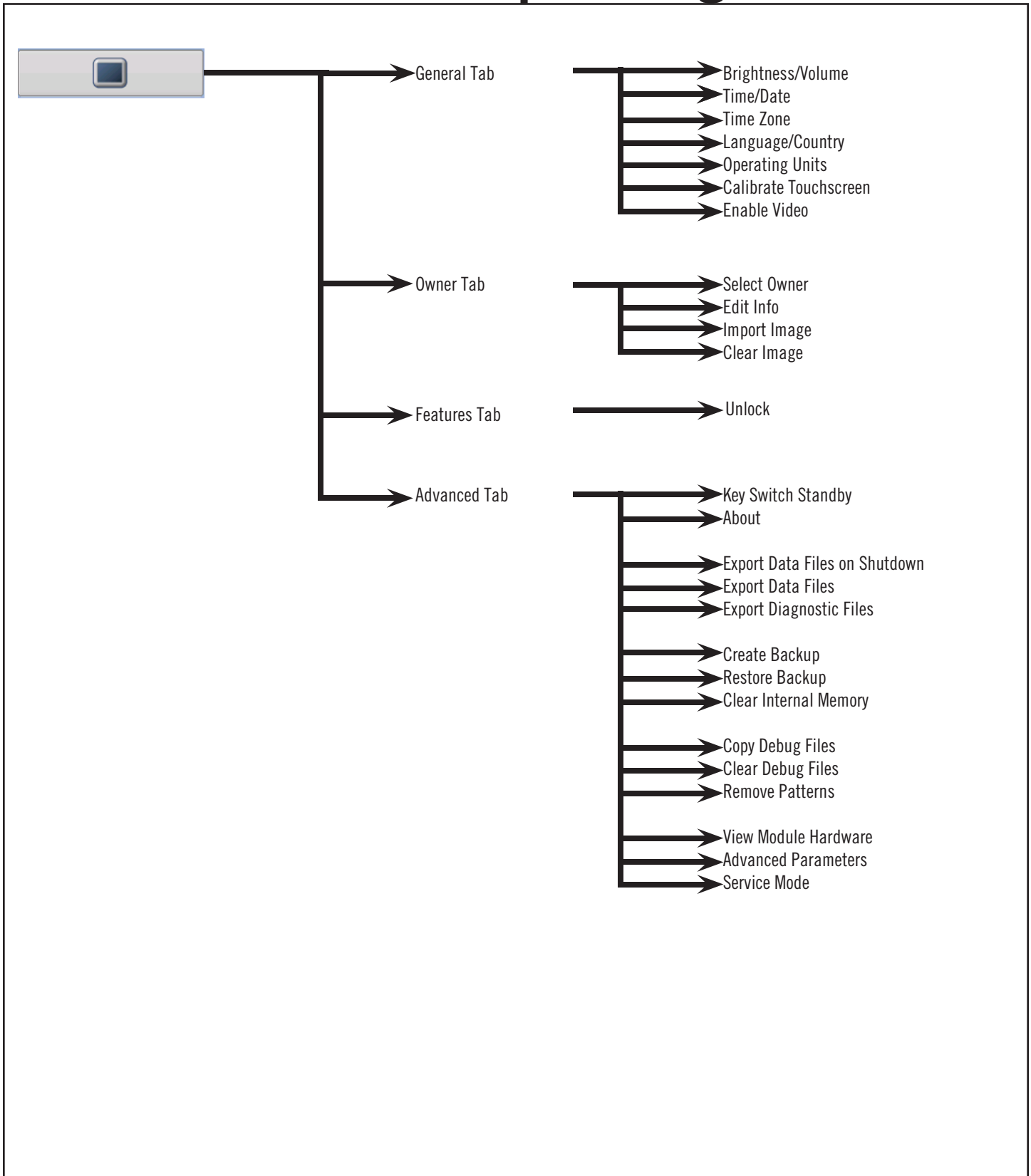
# Configuration Setup Settings - 3



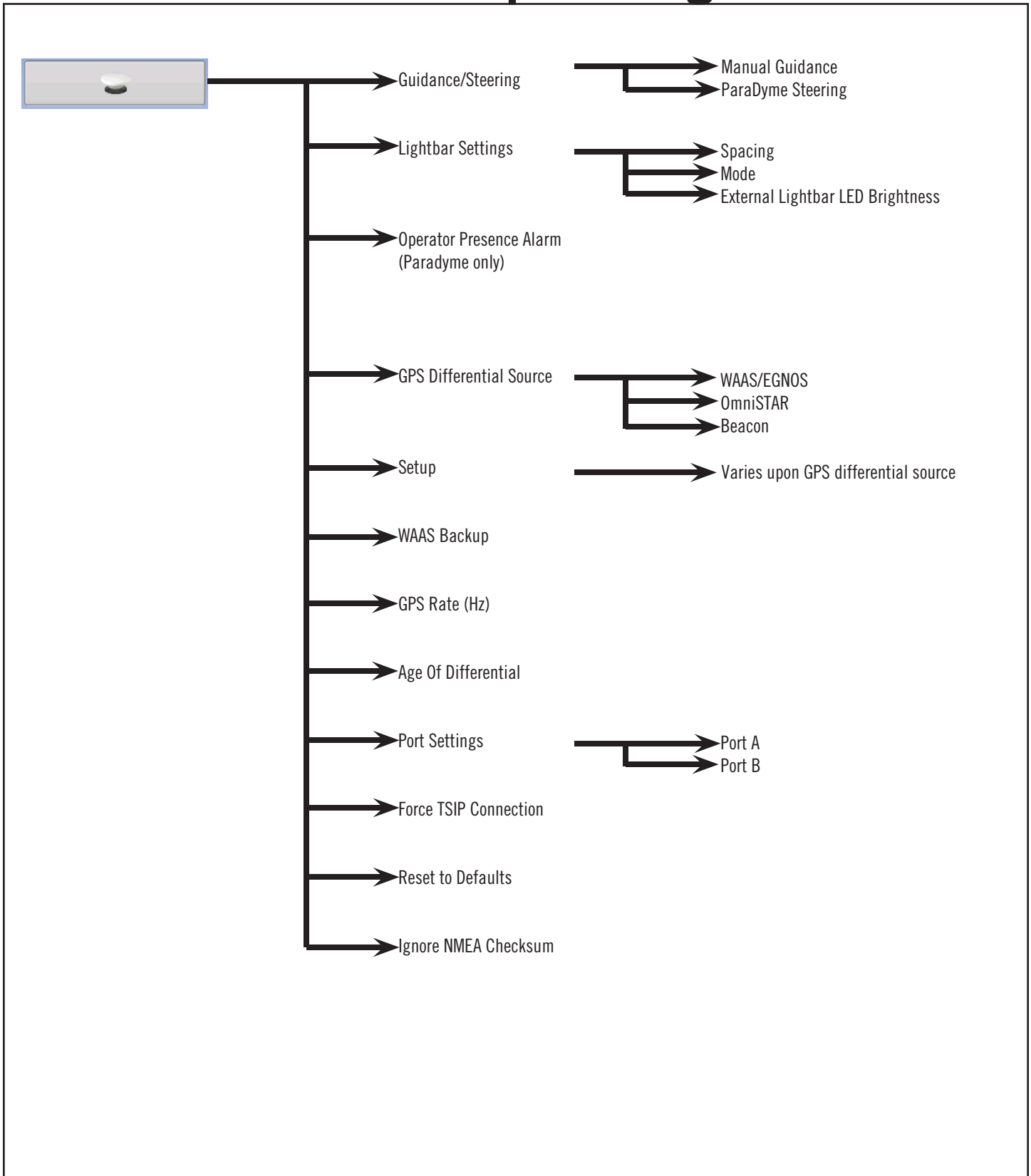
## Management Setup Settings



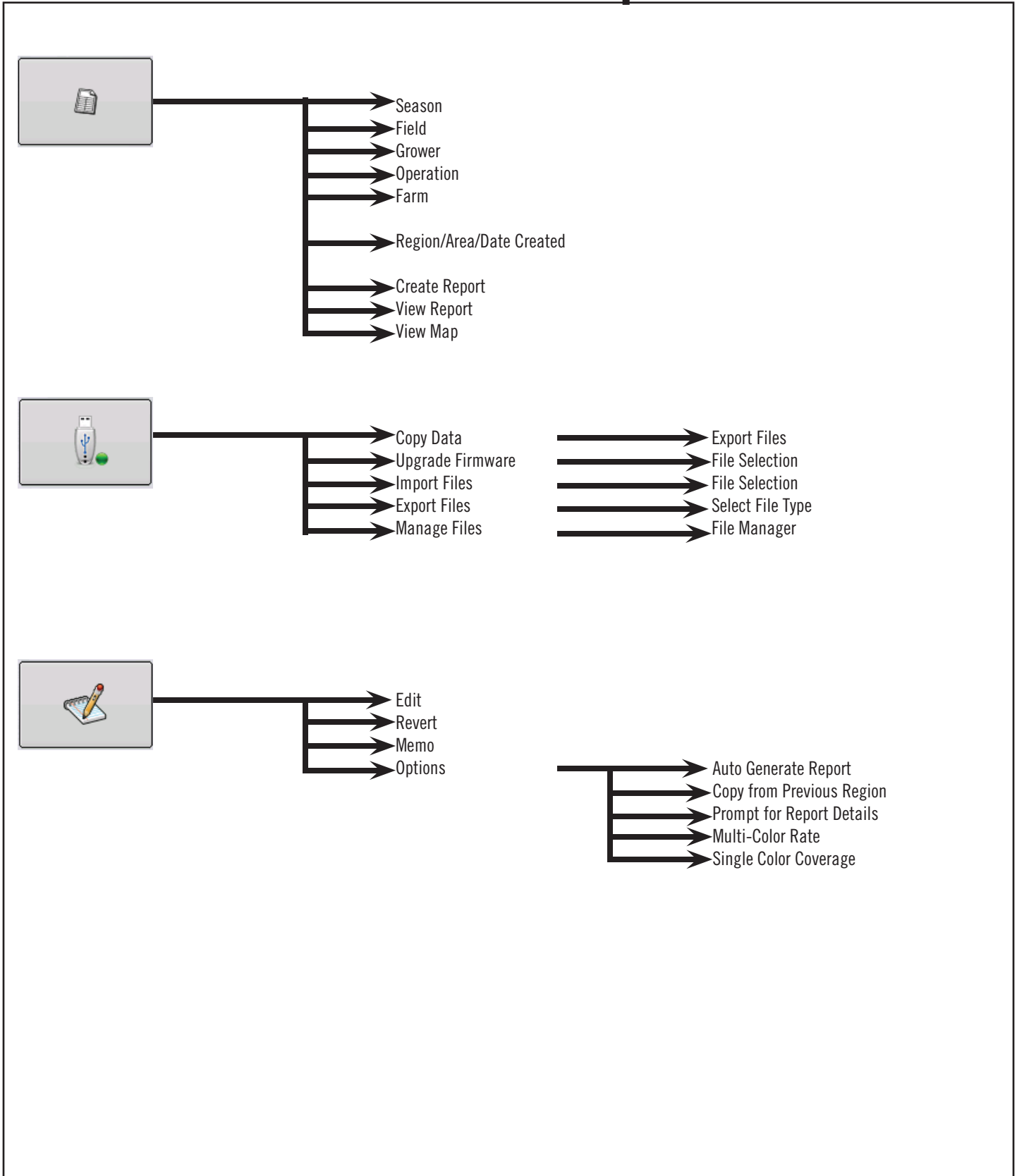
## Console Setup Settings



# GPS Setup Settings



## Home Screen Setup Menus



## Safety Notice

Read these safety instructions and the User Manuals thoroughly, and follow the instructions.

- Only an operator who is fully authorized to drive the vehicle can use the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- The operator must not exceed the safe speed limit for the terrain on which the vehicle is operating.
- The operator must always be aware of his actions when operating the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- When installing the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system do not force the components as this can result in damage to the components.
- Always follow the instructions in the installation, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- Only trained personnel should install the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- Always inventory the components delivered to ensure all the correct components are present. Never use replacement components. Only use original components.
- If there are any questions regarding the safe operation of the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system or the instructions in the manuals, immediately contact your authorized dealer or technical support.
- Always use the correct tools to install the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- To prevent injury, use caution when installing the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- Do not use or operate the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system in unsafe weather conditions.
- Do not use or operate the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system on unsafe terrain.
- Only an operator who is trained, experienced or authorized can use or operate the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- Before using the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or ParaDyme system, the operator must have sufficient knowledge of how to operate the systems in a safe manner.
- When installing the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system, all safety precautions must be clearly understood. If there are any loose, missing or damaged parts they should not be used.
- Before using the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system verify all functions are checked and controlled to ensure they are working correctly. When there is any doubt, do not take any risks - always contact your authorized dealer or technical support.
- Before operating the OnTrac2 system and/or the ParaDyme system, verify all functions of the Operator Presence Switch to ensure it functions correctly.
- Powering the OnTrac2 system and/or the ParaDyme system ON or OFF must be done by following the correct prescribed procedures.
- If any vehicle or system function is abnormal, for example if excessive vibrations or noise occur, immediately stop the vehicle, power OFF the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and ParaDyme system and contact your authorized dealer or technical support.
- When maintaining or cleaning the OnTrac2 system and/or the ParaDyme system, it must be completely powered OFF and are free of any electrical currents.
- The operator of the OnTrac2 OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System in conjunction with ParaDyme system must read and understand all safety instructions so they can react in case of an emergency.
- The authorized dealer must always carry out maintenance or repairs on the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- During repair or replacement of components on the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system only original components must be used.
- Operator or maintenance personnel must always wear the correct personal protection equipment when working on the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- Maintenance personnel must always use the recommended cleaning materials and accessories when the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system is cleaned.
- Unsafe conditions or situations with the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system must be reported to your authorized dealer or technical support.
- Objects cannot be placed on or in the area of the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system.
- During installation, calibration, and tuning of the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system the vehicle wheels may turn to the left and right. Be sure all people and obstacles are clear of the wheels before proceeding.
- Put the vehicle seat and steering wheel in the normal operating position and verify that the OnTrac2 Mechanical Drive Unit (MDU) does not interfere with any controls.
- The operator must read and acknowledge the Automatic Steering Liability Notice each time the system is powered ON.
- If there are any questions regarding the safe operation of the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system or the operating instructions, contact your authorized dealer or technical support.
- The operator must keep alert for obstacles in the path of the vehicle. The OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system cannot identify or avoid obstacles.
- The operator must remain in the operator's chair in the vehicle while the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system is engaged.
- Only use the OnTrac2 GPS Assisted Steering System and/or the ParaDyme system in an open field. The systems must be powered OFF when the vehicle is on any type of roadway.

### Liability Notice

Novariant B.V. cannot be held responsible or liable in any way for any damages and / or accidents that occur through the malfunction of the machine on which it is installed, malfunction of the machine components, machine attributes (e.g. trailers), third party interference(s) or acts of the operator outside the intended use such as prescribed by Novariant B.V.

#### COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Ag Leader Technology has copyrighted (©2010) the contents of this Reference Guide and the operating program for the INTEGRA system. No reproductions may be made without first obtaining the consent of Ag Leader Technology.



INTEGRA User Manual

Firmware Version 2.5

Ag Leader PN 4002086 Rev. F



# Table of Contents

## General

---

### About this Manual

Introduction and Company Profile .....	1
Display .....	1
Service.....	1
System Uses .....	2
System Features .....	2
USB Flash Drive .....	3
Color Touch Screen.....	3
CAN BUS Technology .....	3
Technical Specifications .....	3
System and Upgrades .....	3
Automated Module Firmware Upgrade.....	4
Product Registration .....	4
Conventions Used In This Manual.....	4
Cautions and Warnings .....	4
Cross-references and Web Links .....	4
Viewing this Manual Online .....	5
How to Find Information You're Looking For .....	5

### Installation

Display Hardware .....	7
Installation Instructions .....	7
Fuse Installation and Replacement .....	9
Screen Icon Conventions .....	9

## Setup

---

### Configuration

Home Screen.....	11
Setup buttons .....	11
Configuration button .....	12
Configuration tab.....	12
Manage Equipment button.....	13
Product tab.....	13
Product Setup .....	13
Product Settings .....	14
Crop Settings .....	15
Management button.....	15
Grower .....	15
Season .....	16

Field.....	16
Importing and Exporting Field Boundaries.....	17
Operator .....	18
Display Settings .....	19
General tab.....	19
Owner tab.....	20
Features tab .....	21
Unlocking Features .....	21
Advanced tab.....	21

## Run Screen

Start Field Operation.....	23
Field Finder.....	24
Field Operation Options.....	24
Home Screen After Configuration .....	24
Configuration Setup Screen.....	25
Equipment Configuration Settings.....	26
Implement Switch Settings (for Area Logging).....	26
Equipment Configuration Settings for Rate Control .....	26
Run screens.....	27
Task and Status bars.....	27
GPS Signal Indicator .....	29
Mapping Toolbox.....	31
Map Legend tab .....	31
Legend Settings.....	32
Map Markers tab .....	33
Edit Markers.....	33
Field Options.....	33
Changing Marker Icons.....	34
Boundary Tab.....	34
Boundary Settings .....	35
Create Boundary.....	35
Pause Boundary .....	35
Editing Boundaries.....	35
Video .....	36

## Reports

Summary Report.....	37
Report Details.....	37
General.....	37
Configuration .....	38
Options .....	38
Smart Reports™ .....	39
Create Reports .....	39
Control Channel Report Content .....	40
View Reports .....	41
View Map.....	41

## External Drive

External Storage Operations .....	43
Copy Data .....	43
Upgrade Firmware .....	43
Import Files .....	43
Export Files .....	43
Manage Files.....	44
Delete Files .....	44

## Devices

Device Information.....	45
Devices .....	45
Display Diagnostics.....	45

## Settings

Speed Input Settings .....	47
Calibrate Distance.....	48
Auxiliary Input.....	48
Auxiliary Input Settings.....	49
Auxiliary Input: Help .....	49
Auxiliary Input Diagnostics .....	50
AutoSwath .....	50
GPS Offsets.....	51
Antenna Offsets tab .....	52
Hitch Tab Settings tab.....	52
Mount Tab Settings (for some Application vehicles) .....	52
Head Tab (for Harvest vehicles) .....	52
Swath Section Offsets.....	52
Section Offsets .....	53
Advanced Section Offsets.....	53

## Virtual Terminal

Virtual Terminal .....	55
Common Terminology.....	55
Auxiliary Assignment.....	57
VT Alarms and Trouble Codes.....	58

## GPS

---

### GPS

GPS Button.....	61
Setup .....	61
OmniSTAR Settings .....	62
OmniSTAR Settings — GPS 2500 .....	63
Serial Port Settings.....	65
GPS Information.....	67
GPS Information - General Tab .....	67

Satellite Plot .....	68
GPS Information - Receiver Tab .....	69
GPS Information - OmniSTAR Tab .....	70
RTK/NTRIP Information .....	70
GPS Information - NTRIP .....	70

# Guidance

---

## Guidance

Guidance/Steering Control.....	73
Setup.....	73
Lightbar Settings .....	73
Setup.....	73
Guidance Tab on Mapping Toolbox.....	74
Guidance Tab - before any patterns created or loaded.....	74
Guidance Tab - New A-B pattern .....	75
Guidance Tab- after AB line created or loaded .....	75
Guidance Tab - Nudge Menu .....	75
Guidance Tab - after SmartPath created or loaded.....	76
Guidance Tab - after A-B line created within SmartPath.....	76
New AB Pattern .....	77
SmartPath.....	79
Creating a SmartPath Pattern .....	79
Select a Previous SmartPath Pass .....	80
Create AB Line Within a SmartPath Pass.....	80
Choose Existing AB Lines Within SmartPath .....	81
SmartPath Guidance Options .....	81
Save Pattern.....	82
Load Pattern.....	82
Manage Patterns .....	84
Import Pattern .....	84
Export Pattern .....	84
Edit Pattern .....	84
Remove Pattern/Remove All Patterns .....	85
Pause .....	85
Reset Pattern.....	85
Remark A.....	85
Shift .....	86
Nudge .....	86
Adaptive Curve .....	86
About Guidance Patterns .....	87
A+ Pattern .....	87
Pivot .....	87
Adaptive Curve.....	88
Identical Curve .....	89

# Tillage

---

## Coverage Mapping

Run Time Environment: Map Screen .....	91
About Tillage Configurations .....	91
Configuration Setup.....	92

# Planting

---

## Configuration

Create Configuration .....	93
Setup Configuration .....	93

## AutoSwath

Row Shutoff.....	95
Row Shutoff Configuration Setup.....	95
Row Clutch Setup .....	96
Row Shutoff Look-Ahead Numbers.....	97
Checking AutoSwath Performance for Row Shutoff .....	97
Fixing Overplanting and Underplanting in AutoSwath.....	98

## Rate Control

Hydraulic Seed Rate Control .....	99
Hydraulic Seed Rate Control Configuration .....	99
Controller Settings for Hydraulic Seed Rate Motor Drives .....	100
Channel Tab settings.....	100
Control Valve Settings - PWM.....	101
Control Valve Settings - Servo .....	101
Auxiliary Tab settings.....	101
Hydraulic Seed Controller Settings for Specific Planters .....	102
John Deere Planters .....	102
White Planters .....	102
Case IH Planters.....	102
Hydraulic Seed Meter Calibration Numbers.....	102
Stepper Seed Rate Control .....	103
Stepper Seed Rate Control Configuration.....	104
Controller Settings for Stepper Seed Rate Motor Drives .....	104
Channel Tabs .....	105
Auxiliary Tab .....	105
Gear Ratio Calculations for Seed Rate Motors .....	106
Gear Ratio Drawing - For Single Motor Drive .....	106
Gear Ratio Drawing - For Multiple Drive Combinations.....	107
Seed Ratio Calculation Example Procedure.....	107
Gear Ratio Drawing - For John Deere Pro-Shaft™ Drives .....	108
Priming Seed Rate Meters .....	109
Calibrating Seed Rate Meters .....	109

Rate Control: Map Screen .....	111
Product Control Toolbox .....	111
Rate Control Settings .....	112
Loading Prescriptions .....	113
Showing Prescriptions on the Map Screen.....	113
Troubleshooting .....	114
Hydraulic Seed Control: Zero Flow Offset Variation.....	114
Hydraulic Seed Control: Zero Flow Offset Variation.....	115
Stepper Seed Control Meter Alarms.....	115

## Monitoring

Seed Tube Monitor Module.....	117
SeedCommand Map Screen Examples .....	117
Seed Tube Monitor Module Configuration.....	117
Seed Monitor Setup.....	118
AutoConfig Procedure.....	119
Seed Tube Sensor Configuration .....	120
STMM Split-Row Configurations .....	120
Seed Monitor Options.....	120
Display Options .....	121
Table View .....	121
Seed Monitor Alarms .....	122
Planting Map Screen - Zoom to Extent.....	122
Planting Map Screen - Zoom Detail.....	123
Legend Select.....	123
Legend Setup.....	124
Advanced Seed Monitoring.....	124
Planter Performance screen.....	124
Seed Monitor Options screen .....	126
Seed Monitor Alarms screen .....	126
Row Performance screen.....	127
Virtual Seed Trench.....	128

## Kinze

KINZE Planter Monitor Module .....	129
KINZE Planter Monitor Module Configuration .....	129
KINZE Planter Monitor Setup .....	130
KINZE Planter Configuration.....	131
Planter Configuration Settings .....	131
Ground Speed Settings .....	131
Other Sensors.....	131
EdgeVac .....	132
KINZE Sensor Configuration.....	132
Muxbus Sensor Detection (for KINZE Planter Monitor) .....	133
Order of Muxbus Sensor Installation .....	134
Sensor Information (for KINZE Planter Monitor) .....	134
KINZE Seed Monitor Alarms .....	135
KINZE Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor Calibration.....	135
KINZE EdgeVac Calibration .....	136

KINZE Planter Monitor Options.....	137
Display Options.....	137
Table View.....	137
KINZE Display Items on Equipment Tab.....	138
Troubleshooting.....	139
Alarms on KINZE Planter Monitor.....	139

## Application

---

### Liquid Rate Control

Create Configuration.....	143
Add a Product.....	143
Add a Mix.....	143
Tank Mix Setup.....	143
Setup Configuration.....	144
Liquid Application Controller Settings.....	144
Control Valve Settings - PWM.....	146
Control Valve Settings - Servo, Calibrated Reflow and Ramsey Valve.....	146
Calibrate Pressure.....	147
Fence Row Nozzle Indicators.....	147
Load Configuration.....	148
Run Configuration.....	148
Application Map screen - Zoom to Detail.....	149
Legend Select.....	149
Rate Control: Product Control Toolbox.....	150
Rate Control Settings.....	151
Rate Control: Container Level.....	152
Tank Fill.....	152
Tank Empty.....	152
Tank Partial Fill.....	152
Adjust Container Amount.....	152
Tank Alarms.....	152
Loading Prescriptions.....	153
Showing Prescriptions on the Map Screen.....	154
Shape File Conversion.....	154
Liquid Application Diagnostics.....	156
Troubleshooting DirectCommand Liquid Applications.....	157
John Deere Specific Instructions.....	159
MASTER SWITCH INPUT.....	159
MASTER SWITCH USAGE.....	159
TARGET RATE.....	159
DATA COLLECTION.....	159
AUTOSWATH BOOM SECTION CONTROL.....	159
SPRAY STAR APPLICATION RATE.....	160
SPRAY STAR RINSE CYCLE.....	160
Control Valve Settings.....	160
Liquid Product Control Valve Configuration Options.....	160

Servo Control Valve Settings (By Manufacturer).....	161
Liquid Servo Settings Description.....	165
Liquid PWM Control Valve Settings Description.....	165
Dickey-John NH3 Conversions.....	166
Conversion Formulas .....	166
Troubleshooting Serial Control Applications.....	166
Miscellaneous .....	167
Glossary of Application Settings.....	167
Configuration Settings.....	167
Speed Input Settings.....	167
Automatic Swath Control Settings.....	167
Auxiliary Input Settings.....	168
Controller Settings.....	168
Fertilizer Default Product Settings .....	170

## Injection

Create Configuration .....	171
Setup Configuration.....	171
Rate Response Warning.....	171
Flow Monitor Warning.....	172
Calibrating an Injection Pump .....	172
Priming an Injection Pump .....	173
Load Configuration .....	174
Run Configuration.....	175
Injection Diagnostics.....	175
Troubleshooting Direct Injection Configurations.....	176
Direct Injection: Pump Doesn't Run .....	176
BATTERY POWER PIN OUTS .....	177
Direct Injection: Pump Runs Full Speed .....	177
Digital Pump Speed Pin Outs .....	177
Analog Speed Pin Outs .....	178
Direct Injection: Application Error.....	178
Direct Injection: Discharge Flow Sensor Error .....	178
Discharge Flow Sensor Pin Outs .....	179
Direct Injection: Inlet Restriction.....	179
Vacuum Switch Pin Outs .....	179
Controller Settings: Direct Injection Pump Calibration .....	179
Pump Calibration Setting.....	179
Rate Response Warning.....	180
Flow Monitor Warning.....	180
Field Notes .....	180
Setting Name and Description .....	180
Run Screen .....	180

## OptRx

Installation .....	181
Checklist.....	181
Create Configuration .....	181
Crop Sensor Setup.....	183

Corn Settings .....	183
North American Wheat Settings .....	184
European Settings .....	184
Sensor Setup .....	185
Load Configuration.....	185
Run Configuration .....	185
Create an OptRx V.I. Reference Value .....	185
Determining where to scan a Reference Strip .....	185
Scan a Reference Strip.....	186
Crop Sensor Settings .....	188
Glossary of OptRx Terminology .....	189
Troubleshooting OptRx Error Messages.....	190

## NORAC UC5

Add to a Configuration .....	191
Setup Configuration .....	191
Load Configuration.....	192
Engage button .....	193
Boom Height Control Options Button.....	193
Boom Height Control Options Screen.....	194
Boom Height Diagnostics.....	194

## Spreader

Create Configuration .....	195
SETUP Configuration.....	195
Spreader Control: PWM Control Valve .....	196
Spreader Control: Servo Control Valve .....	196
Spreader Control: Spinner Tab.....	197
Fertilizer Blend Setup .....	197
Load Configuration.....	198
Run Configuration .....	198
Spinner Spreader, with two-bin configuration.....	199
Run Time Operations .....	199
Spreader Control screen.....	200
Conveyor Rate Look-Up.....	200
Fan Frame & Feed Gate Actuator Settings .....	201
Spreader Control: Routine Operations .....	201
Spreader Control: Chain Oiler .....	202
Spreader Control: Static Calibration.....	202
Spreader Control: In-Field Calibration.....	204
Spinner Spreader Servo Settings Description.....	204
Spinner Spreader PWM Control Valve Settings Description.....	205
Spinner Speed PWM Valve Settings Description.....	205
Troubleshooting DirectCommand Granular Applications .....	206
Troubleshooting Serial Control Applications .....	207
Fertilizer Default Product Settings .....	208

## Strip Till

Create Configuration .....	209
----------------------------	-----

SETUP Configuration .....	211
Strip Till Control: Servo Control Valve.....	211
Strip Till Control: PWM Control Valve .....	212
Linear Actuator/Clutch Settings.....	212
Actuator/Clutch Logic .....	213
Fertilizer Blend Setup.....	214
Load Configuration .....	214
Run Configuration.....	215
Meter Prime.....	215
Run Time Operations .....	216
Strip-Till (Three-Bin Configuration) .....	217
Strip Till Control Screen .....	217
Static CFR Calibration Procedure.....	218
In-Field Calibration Procedure (Strip Till).....	219
Strip Till Control: Auxiliary Tab .....	220
Troubleshooting DirectCommand Granular Applications .....	220
Troubleshooting Serial Control Applications.....	221
Fertilizer Default Product Settings .....	222

## Harvest

---

### Yield Monitoring

Run Time Environment: Map Screen.....	223
Harvest Status Items .....	224
Harvest Diagnostic Button on Map Screen.....	224
Legend Select.....	225
Map Screen: Flow Delay .....	225
Region Selection: Options Screen.....	225
Tracking Varieties and Changing Regions .....	226
Variety Tracking menu and Automatic Variety Tracking .....	226
Automatic Variety Tracking.....	227
Automatic Region Changing.....	227
In-Field Messages .....	227
Importing Variety Maps.....	227
Importing Variety Map Procedure .....	227
Error Messages at Variety Map Import .....	228
AutoSwath Sensitivity Settings .....	228
About Harvest Configurations .....	229
Pre-Harvest Checklist .....	230
Display Preparation .....	230
Vehicle Inspection .....	230
Calibration Sequence .....	230
Configuration Setup Settings .....	231
Header Settings.....	232
Calibrate Header Sensor.....	232
Header Offset.....	233
Vibration Calibration .....	233

Temperature Calibration .....	234
Moisture Calibration .....	235
Manual Moisture Setting .....	236
Grain Weight Calibration .....	236
Adding a New Calibration.....	239
Area Calibration .....	240
Grain Harvest Diagnostics.....	241
Harvest Diagnostic Notes.....	242

## Claas Quantimeter

Configuration for CLAAS Quantimeter .....	243
CLAAS Configuration Setup Settings.....	243
Calibration Information for CLAAS Quantimeter .....	244
CLAAS Manual Moisture Setting .....	245
Map Screen for CLAAS Quantimeter .....	246
Diagnostics for CLAAS Quantimeter .....	246
Diagnostics Screen for CLAAS Quantimeter .....	246
Bridge Module .....	247
Troubleshooting CLAAS Quantimeter Configurations.....	247

## Appendix

---

### Appendix

System Diagrams Reference.....	249
File Formats.....	249
Prescription Map File Types.....	249
Boundary and Guideline File Types .....	249
Image File Types.....	249
System File Types.....	250
Module LED Diagnostic States.....	250
Company Warranty Statement .....	250
WARRANTY .....	250
PROPRIETARY TECHNOLOGY NOTICE .....	251
COPYRIGHT NOTICE.....	251
SERVICE AND SUPPORT .....	251



# ABOUT THIS MANUAL

## INTRODUCTION AND COMPANY PROFILE

### ABOUT US

Welcome to the Ag Leader Technology family. Ag Leader Technology, Inc. is the global leader in yield monitor and precision farming systems and is committed to meeting the present and future needs of the agriculture industry by providing high quality products and first class customer support.

### INNOVATION

Ag Leader Technology manufactures and sells products which support a wide array of precision farming practices. These include grain yield monitoring, application rate control and monitoring, variable rate fertilizer application, site-verification, GPS guidance and interface to Autosteer technologies.

### COMPATIBILITY

Ag Leader Technology offers compatibility and supports integration of many different types and brands of equipment used for precision farming. The latest equipment available is supported as well as older series of combines, planters, sprayers, tillage equipment, etc.

### QUALITY AND SUPPORT

Ag Leader Technology and continues to provide the best customer support in the industry. Precision farming doesn't come without questions. Ag Leader is committed to providing the most responsive, knowledgeable and friendly technical support available. Our technical support team is available seven-days-a-week during peak seasons to answer your questions on the operation of Ag Leader products.

### WE WANT TO HEAR FROM YOU!

Feel free to call and discuss:

- Operational questions about the display
- Features you would like to see implemented to improve the system or features you would like to see added to the system to increase functionality

## DISPLAY

The display is a full-featured, year-round hub of any precision farming operation. A full-color HD touchscreen display is easy to read and offers powerful, year-round precision farming tools. Built-in manual guidance, full-screen mapping, planter and application control, yield monitoring, real-time data logging and automated steering make up the core functionality of the display.



**WARNING:** Read manual completely before operating display. Understand and follow all operating and safety instructions for proper use of this display. Failure to use display properly could result in an impairment of the safety features of this product.

## SERVICE

There are no user-serviceable parts inside the display. Contact the manufacturer for a Return Material Authorization (RMA).

ph: (515) 232-5363

fax: (515) 232-3595

e-mail: support@agleader.com



---

**CAUTION:** *This display has an internal lithium coin cell battery that is good for the life of the product and does not need to be replaced. There is a risk of explosion if the battery is replaced by an incorrect type. Dispose of used batteries according to the battery manufacturer's instructions.*

---

## SYSTEM USES

- Manual Guidance
- ParaDyme™ automated steering
- Video Camera Inputs
- Mapping tillage operations
- Mapping and logging product application
- Mapping of all field boundaries, sub-boundaries, waterways and terraces
- Grain yield monitoring
- Variety logging
- Granular and liquid fertilizer application
- Liquid spray system control
- NH3 application control
- Application control of multiple bin spinner spreaders

## SYSTEM FEATURES

- Sunlight-readable screen
- Rugged sealed enclosure
- Compatible with most NMEA GPS receivers
- DirectCommand and SeedCommand product control using industry- standard CAN-bus interface
- Adjustable volume control
- Perspective 3D View Map
- Report preview
- Automatic field selection
- Automated module firmware upgrade
- Advanced GPS Diagnostics
- USB media slot
- 28-pin plug compatible with InSight and EDGE displays.
- 28-pin auxiliary connection
- RAM mount

## USB FLASH DRIVE

Display kits include a USB Flash Drive which you can use to save and transfer your data in and out of the display. The USB function has not been approved for use in a moving vehicle.

## COLOR TOUCH SCREEN

The display features a color touch screen display. The touch screen allows easy and intuitive navigation through the screens on the display without the need for any external keypad or mouse devices. Here are a few key things to remember if you are new to using a touch screen device:

- Do not use any sharp objects for running the touch screen device, this could result in damage to the display. Using the tip of a finger is the recommended method of operating the display touch screen.
- Do not use any harsh chemicals to clean the touch screen. Using a damp soft cloth or an anti-static wipe made specifically for cleaning computer displays is the correct way to clean the screen and the enclosure.
- The touch screen requires only a gentle touch of about half-second in duration to operate correctly. A common mistake new users make is to try to navigate too quickly through the system using firm taps instead of gentle presses on the display screen.

## CAN BUS TECHNOLOGY

This system uses Controller Area Network (CAN) technology. CAN systems are comprised of individual modules, each with their own high speed processor, connected through a high-speed communications cable. CAN has many benefits, including greater ability to configure and expand the system, compatibility, simpler installations with less wiring, and increased system dependability.

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

Do not exceed the specifications below:

- Storage Temperature: -20°C to +80°C.
- Operating Temperature: -10°C to +70°C
- Operating Input Voltage: 9 –16 V DC
- Max Current Rating: 4.0 amp
- Environmental Protection Rating: IP65
- No Protective Grounding required
- Use 150V insulation rating for external circuits



**CAUTION:** Exceeding these specifications may result in degraded operation and/or damage to the display.

## SYSTEM AND UPGRADES

Ag Leader Technology will periodically provide operating program updates that will improve the performance of your display. Required software updates will be available free of charge for download from [www.agleader.com](http://www.agleader.com). On occasion, major releases will be made available that have significant

product feature additions or enhancements. These optional software updates may have an additional fee associated with them.

## AUTOMATED MODULE FIRMWARE UPGRADE

In the display, all display and module firmware upgrades are packaged in a single.fw2 file. The module firmware files are stored internally in the display. A warning alerts you when a module upgrade is required. You can upgrade all files in a single batch by using an upgrade screen. For more information, see *“Advanced tab” on page 21*.

## PRODUCT REGISTRATION

When registering your Ag Leader Technology products by one of the following methods, you can elect to receive notice of any new product updates or features.

Register by mail: Ag Leader Technology

2202 South Riverside Dr.

Ames, IA 50010

Register by Fax: 515-232-3595

Register at the Ag Leader Web site at <http://www.agleader.com>

## CONVENTIONS USED IN THIS MANUAL

## CAUTIONS AND WARNINGS

The user manual uses the following text formatting schemes to call attention to information related to simplifying system operation and proper operating practices to prevent accidental data loss. If in doubt about the results of performing an action or deleting an item from the system, back up all system files to the USB external drive prior to proceeding with the action.



**Note:** Provides informative tips to assist with system setup, calibration, and operation.

---



**CAUTION:** Indicates specific settings, calibrations, and procedures that must be followed for proper system performance and operation.

---



**WARNING:** Indicates specific instructions to avoid accidental loss of data and system configurations settings.

---

## CROSS-REFERENCES AND WEB LINKS

Throughout this manual, numerous cross-references are provided to other pages or sections. These cross-references are always shown in blue, italic text; and list the title and page number as in the following example: To find the information you're looking for, see *“How to Find Information You're Looking For” on page 5*. If you are viewing this manual in PDF format, you can click on this blue text and go directly to the link.

Links to web sites are shown in blue, italicized, and underlined text, as in the following example: To view the web site, go to: [www.agleader.com](http://www.agleader.com).

## VIEWING THIS MANUAL ONLINE

This user manual can be viewed online at Ag Leader's Web site. To view an online version, go to the Ag Leader Web site and click the Customer Support link. You will see a page titled "Product Manuals."

To view and/or print the User Manual online, you will need the Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader .pdf file format. The Adobe Reader software comes pre-installed on most personal computers. If Adobe Reader is not installed on your computer the program is available for download at no charge. A link to the Adobe download site is located at the Ag Leader Web site.

## HOW TO FIND INFORMATION YOU'RE LOOKING FOR

What do you do if you cannot find the information that you're looking for? There are three different ways at your disposal to find specific information quickly. These steps can include:

1. Look up the information in the Table of Contents.
2. Look up the information in the section indexes that are located at the end of each manual section (Planting, Tillage, Application, and Harvest).
3. Use the Adobe Reader's search function. While viewing this manual online in PDF format, press the **CTRL+F** buttons on your keyboard. A search menu should appear, and from here, you may enter in a search term.



# INSTALLATION

## DISPLAY HARDWARE



- **(A) USB media slot**

Used for data transfer in and out of the display.

- **(B) Stereo speaker**

The built-in stereo speaker is used for audible warnings. The volume can be adjusted through the display setup routine.

- **(C) RAM mount**

- **(D) VGA video output**

Can be used to connect to a video projector for demonstration purposes.

- **(E) 28-pin auxiliary connection**

Used for camera input.

- **(F) 28-pin plug**

The 28-Pin round connector contains CAN, RS-232 serial, and system power and ground connections. It is compatible with the InSight and EDGE displays, and includes an Ethernet connection for ParaDyme automated steering.

- **(G) Power/Reset switch**

The Power/Reset switch is used for turning the INTEGRA display on and off in installations where the system is connected to a continuous power supply. If the INTEGRA display ever stops responding, the manual power switch may be held in for five seconds to restart the system. Only do this as a last resort, data loss could occur during times of improper shutdown.



- **(A) USB media slot**

Used for data transfer in and out of the display.

- **(H) Light sensitivity sensor**

Used to automatically dim the display during nighttime or low-light situations.

- **(I) Power light**

The power light displays one of three states: When it is green the display is on; when it pulses amber the display is in Standby Mode, and when it is solid amber the display is running on battery power.

## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS

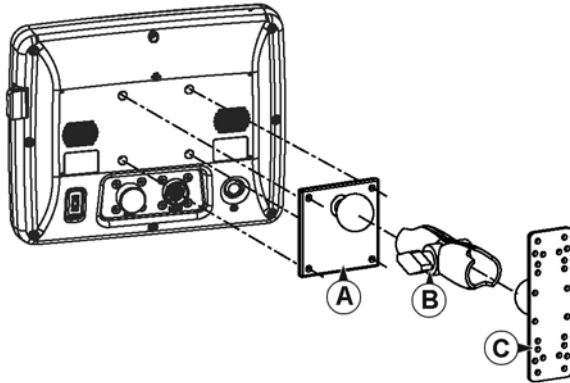
All machine installation and mounting kits are shipped with instructions specific to that kit. Instructions include special details relating to mounting, wiring and display configuration.

Mount the display to a secure support inside the vehicle cab. The following must be considered when choosing a mounting location:

- The display must be readily accessible to the machine operator.
- The display must not obstruct the machine operator's normal driving view.
- The display must not interfere with or limit access to any of the existing machine controls.
- The CAN system cabling be routed and secured without interfering with existing machine controls.

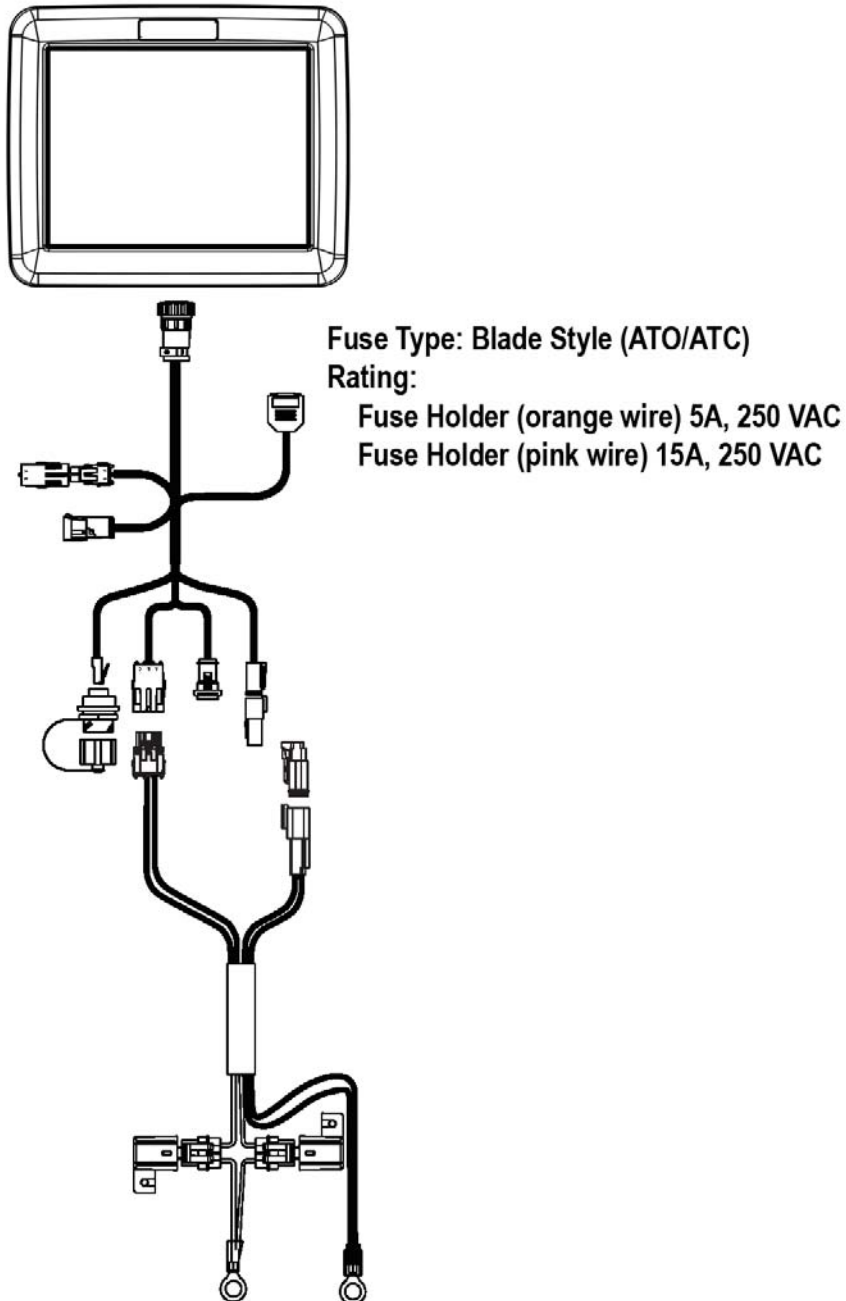


**WARNING:** If drilling holes is required during the mounting process, care must be taken to insure that damage is not done to existing vehicle wiring, mechanical, or cab structure. Refer to vehicle manufacturer documentation for specific details on your equipment. Follow all OEM instructions, cautions, and warnings when working around equipment.



- (A) RAM Base, PN 400280
- (B) RAM Arm - 5", PN 400279
- (C) 2"X6" Base, PN 400187

# FUSE INSTALLATION AND REPLACEMENT



**CAUTION:** The fuse is to be placed in the fuse holder in-line with the battery power cable and used with display only.

## SCREEN ICON CONVENTIONS

The following control buttons are made available for entering names and calibration values into the system.



An on-screen Keyboard is made available when appropriate for use during all setup processes. Press the keyboard button to access the on-screen text entry screen.



An on-screen Numeric Keypad is made available for changing configuration settings and calibration numbers. Press the keypad button to access the on-screen numeric entry screen.

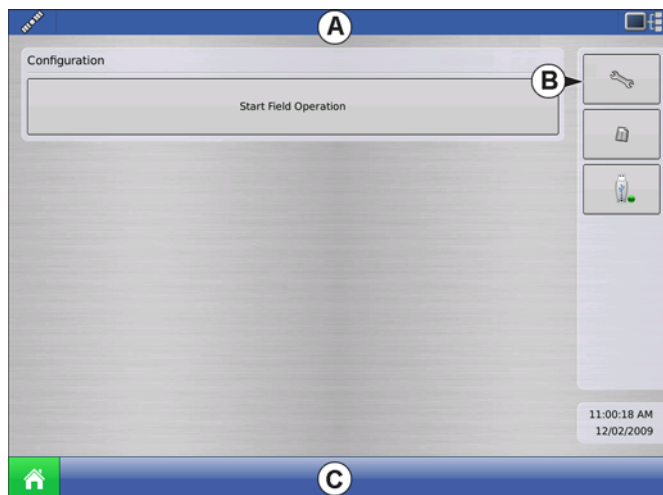


# CONFIGURATION

## HOME SCREEN



Press: Home button



Most of the functionality of the display is not available until the basic setup process is completed.

**(A) Status bar**

**(B) Setup button**

**(C) Task bar**

You must complete these initial configuration steps for the Run Time Environment to be active:

**1. Grower, Farm, and Field management**

For more information, See *“Management button” on page 15.*

**2. Equipment Operating Configuration**

You can access Configuration Setup by pressing the

**Setup (wrench) button (B)** at the upper right-hand portion of the Home screen. For more information, see *“Configuration button” on page 12.*

**3. Product setup**

For more information, see *“Product tab” on page 13*, as well as the additional configuration information described in each Operations chapter.

**4. Start Field Operation**

For more information, *“Start Field Operation” on page 23.*

## SETUP BUTTONS



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button

The Setup buttons, shown at the bottom of the Setup screens, are where you can toggle between screens that adjust settings for Configuration, Management, GPS and display.



**• Configuration button**

Press to adjust the configuration settings particular to your vehicle and equipment; as well as enter and edit product information. For more information, see *“Manage Equipment button” on page 13*, *“Product tab” on page 13*, as well as *“Configuration Setup Screen” on page 25.*



• **Management button**

Press to access and edit Grower, Farm, Field and Operator information. For more information, see *“Management button” on page 15.*



• **GPS button**

Press to adjust Guidance settings, GPS settings, and lightbar settings (if applicable). For more information, see *“Guidance” on page 73.*

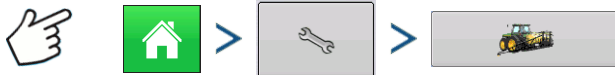


• **Display button**

Press to adjust settings for Time and Date, brightness and volume settings, operating units, language; enable video; view features; and also create and

restore backups.

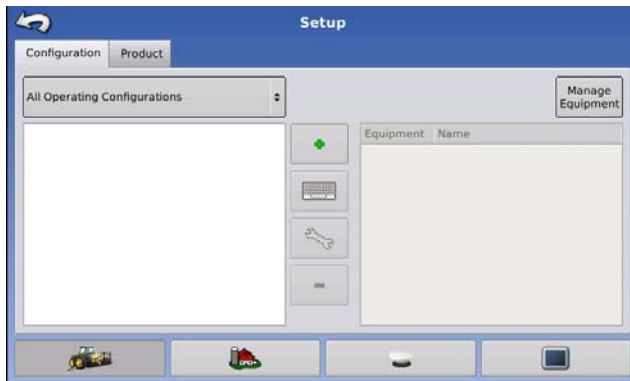
## CONFIGURATION BUTTON



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button

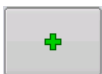
The Setup screens are comprised of the Configuration and Product tab. The Configuration tab is explained below; the Product tab is described at *“Product tab” on page 13.*

## CONFIGURATION TAB



The Setup screen’s Configuration Tab is where you can create new configurations, view configuration information, as well as view and change configuration settings. Begin by going to the Home screen, and pressing the Setup (wrench) button. The Configuration Setup screen appears, as shown.

In the upper left-hand corner of the screen is the Operating Configuration drop-down menu. Use this to select the type of operating configuration you wish to view - Tillage, Planting, Application or Harvest.



• **Add button**

Press to add an Operating Configuration. At the following screen, choose an operating configuration type, such as Tillage, Planting, Application, etc.) From here, an on-screen wizard continues you through each step of the configuration process.

- When finished, the new configuration appears in the list below the Operating Configuration drop-down menu.
- When you highlight the configuration, the Name of that configuration and the Equipment within it appear on the Setup Tree, located to the right of the Add button.
- Information regarding configurations for specific field operations can be viewed in each Operations chapter.



• **Edit button**  
Press t to edit the Configuration Name.



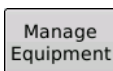
• **Setup button**  
Press to adjust Configuration Settings and other settings. For more information, see *“Configuration Setup Screen” on page 25.*



• **Delete button**  
Press to delete an Operating Configuration.

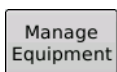


**CAUTION:** When you delete a configuration all data logged with that configuration will also be deleted! However, all log files will remain in memory until exported to the USB drive.



• **Manage Equipment button**  
Press to add, edit, or delete information for information regarding a particular vehicle, implement or controller; or to adjust Implement offsets.

## Manage Equipment button



By pressing the Manage Equipment button, found at the top right-hand side of the Setup screen’s Configuration Tab, you can either:

- Use the drop-down menu to edit settings for an existing Vehicle, Implement or Controller that you created with the Configuration Wizard in the Operating Configuration.
- Create a new Vehicle, Implement and Controller.
- 

---



---

**Note:**

---

- 

## PRODUCT TAB

### Product Setup

The Setup Product Tab is where you can perform the following tasks:

- Add or import Planting products.
- Add or import Application products.
- Add Application Product mixes (such as a tank mix, or a dry blend of multiple products).
- Add or import Harvest products.

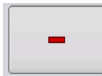


• **Add button**  
Press to add or import a Product. At the following screen, choose a Product Option: Add Product, Import Product, or Add Product Mix (if in Application). From here, an on-screen wizard continues you through each step of the configuration process.

- When finished, the new product appears in the list below the Operating Configuration drop-down menu.
- When you highlight the configuration, the product information appears to the right of the Add button.
- Specific planting and application product information can be viewed in those respective chapters.



- **Edit button**  
Press to edit the Product Name.



- **Delete button**  
Press to delete a product.



**CAUTION:** When you delete a product all regions using that product will also be deleted!

- **Crop Settings button**

For more information, see [“Crop Settings” on page 15](#).

- **Edit Info button**

Press to open the Product Settings screen, where you can where you can edit product information for an existing product in the Product List. For more information, see [“Product Settings” on page 14](#).

- **Yield and Moisture**

Operators using a Harvest operation can use the drop-down menu underneath Legend Settings to edit legend settings for Yield and Moisture.

- **Edit Legend button**

Press to open the Legend Settings screen, where you can change Rate Legend settings. For more information, see [“Legend Settings” on page 32](#).

## Product Settings

The Product Settings screen is where you can edit product information for an existing product in the Product List. To go to the Product Settings screen, first go to the Setup screen’s Product Tab. Press the Edit Info button, and the Product Settings screen appears, as shown.

At the Product Settings screen, you can enter information regarding the following items:

- **Manufacturer**

Enter the Manufacturer and Common Name, if desired.

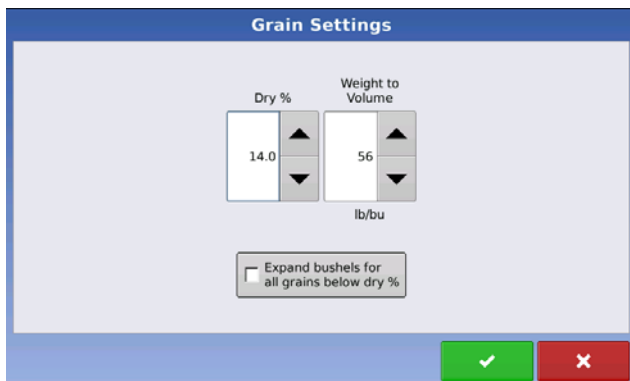
- **EPA Number**

Enter the EPA Registration Number which is listed on the product’s container label.

- **Restricted Use Pesticide**

If the product is a Restricted Use Pesticide, press the check box. This information will also be included for your records.

## Crop Settings



The Crop Settings screen is where you can edit product information for an existing Harvest product in the Product List. To go to the Crop Settings screen, first go to the Setup screen's Product Tab. Underneath the Crop Settings box, press the Edit button, and the Crop Settings screen appears, as shown.

At the Crop Settings screen, you can enter information regarding the following items:

- **Dry %**  
The percentage of grain moisture used to calculate Dry Bushels.
- **Weight to Volume**  
The Weight to Volume conversion number used to calculate bushels.
- **Expand bushels for all grains below dry %**  
If the moisture of the harvested crop is below the dry percentage, the display increases weight to show the weight which would be shown if the crop equalled or exceeded the dry percentage.

## MANAGEMENT BUTTON



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Management (Barn) button

The Management tabs, which are accessible from the Management button on the Setup screen, include Grower, Season, Field, and Operator.

## GROWER

The Grower is a global setting that refers to the business or person that the system is in operation for. Contact information can also be entered for each Grower. The Grower information will be passed into mapping software for automatic Grower setup within desktop software.



- **Add button**  
Press to add a Grower.



- **Delete button**  
Press to delete a Grower.



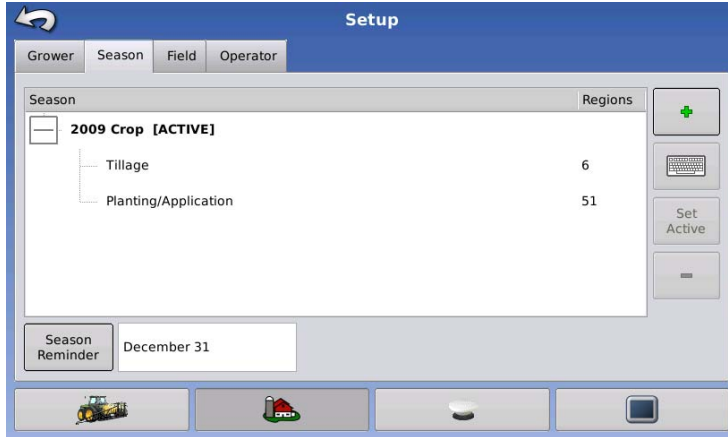
- **Edit button**  
Edit an existing name of a Grower by highlighting that name and pressing button.

Press to enter information for the Grower's Name, Business Phone, Address, Applicator License, Home Phone, Mobile Phone, and Email information.



**Note:** Personal Information entered at this screen can be added or edited at any time.

## SEASON

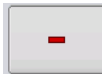


A season is defined as the calendar year that the crop will be harvested. Creating a season and setting it to active is required prior to the system logging any data.

The seasons are displayed in lists, with the Active season displayed in bold face type. All new data is logged to the active season; therefore a season must be set as Active before you can log any new data to it.



• **Add button**  
Press to add a Season.



• **Delete button**  
Press to delete a Season.



• **Edit button**  
Edit an existing name of a Season by highlighting that name and pressing button.

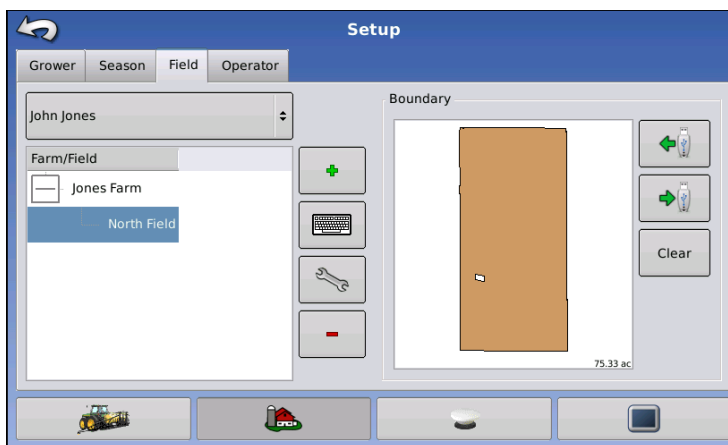
- **Set Active button**

Press to set the season selected in the Summary list box to the active season.

- **Season Reminder button**

Press to set the date that the system will prompt the user to create a new season.

## FIELD



In the display, farms are subdivided into fields. You can associate Field names with a particular Grower. If the display will be used for multiple Growers, enter each Grower business name and associate the field names with the correct grower when the fields are set up within the system.

In the Field Tab, select a Grower underneath the drop-down menu at the top. Each farm of that particular grower is shown in a list, with the fields within that farm as subcomponents within that list.



• **Add button**  
Press to add a Field.



• **Delete button**  
Press to delete a Field.



• **Edit button**  
Edit an existing name of a Field by highlighting that name and pressing button.



• **Setup Tool button**  
Edit the Farm Name and Field Name information by highlighting that name and pressing button. The Field Information screen appears, as shown.

The Field Information screen opens, showing the name of that field in the Title Bar. Field Name information that can be added or edited with the on-screen keyboard buttons include **Farm, County, Township, Range, Section Number, Area, FSA Number, FSA Area and Legal Description.**

• **Area**

shown in the total acres (hectares) of the field.

• **FSA Number**

refers to the U.S. Farm Service Agency’s four-digit number assigned to every field. FSA Area refers to tillable acres as established by the FSA.

• **Clear Bounds button**

Press to center the map on the current GPS position.



**Note:** The Clear Bounds feature is particularly useful if you have flyer points or have logged a point outside the mappable range of your current location.

## Importing and Exporting Field Boundaries

Boundaries can be created with the display or imported from desktop GIS software. Any boundary files present in the display can also be exported for use in desktop mapping software.

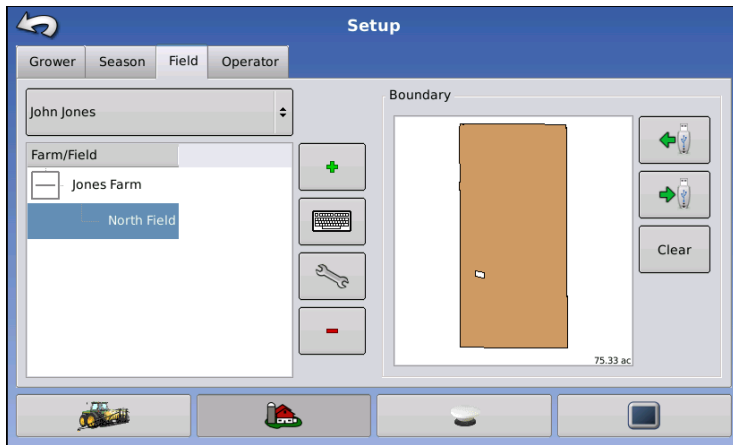


**Note:** For more information on creating boundaries, see “Create Boundary” on page 35.

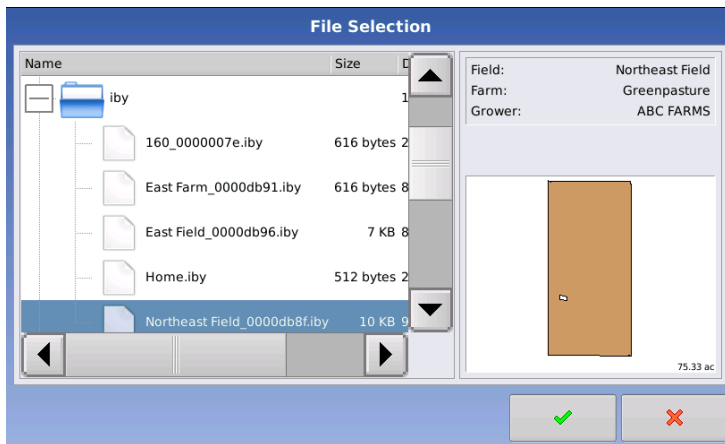


• **USB Import button**

To import a boundary from the USB drive, first go to the Setup Field tab, highlight the correct field in the Farm/Field list and press the USB Import button.



The File Selection screen appears, as shown. Highlight the desired file to import.



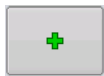
Press the green check mark button to complete the import process.



• **USB Export button**

To export a boundary to the USB drive, highlight the correct field in the Farm/Field list and press the USB Export button. At the File Selection screen, highlight the desired field to export. A screen will appear telling you that the boundary was exported successfully. Press the green check mark button to return to the field setup screen.

## OPERATOR



• **Add button**

Press to add an Operator.



• **Delete button**

Press to delete an Operator.



• **Setup Tool button**

Press to edit Operator information by highlighting that name and pressing button. At the Personal Information screen, you can use the on-screen keyboard buttons to add or edit information for that Operator, including Name, Business Phone, Fax, Address, Applicator License, Home Phone, Mobile Phone, and Email.

# DISPLAY SETTINGS



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Display button

The Display screen contains the following tabs:

- **General tab**

displays settings related to Time, Date, display screen settings, operating units, video and display owner information.

- **Owner tab**

contains functionality for setting up a Display Owner and making any needed edits to the owner personal information.

- **Features tab**

lists unlocks for a particular display.

- **Advanced tab**

includes information related to log files and system backups.

## GENERAL TAB



The Setup General Tab is consists of the following items:

- **Time/Date button**

Press button and use the up and down arrow keys to adjust the hours, minutes, A.M./P.M. settings, month, date and year. To make these changes effective, press the checkmark/ Shutdown button.



**Note:** The display will then shut down immediately. If you do not want to shut the display down, press the Close (Red X) button; however the time/date changes will not be accepted until the display is shut down and restarted.

- **Brightness and volume percentages.**

To change these, press the Brightness/Volume button and use the up and down arrow buttons to change the percentage of the Display Brightness and Speaker Volume.



**Note:** Pressing the Automatic box will display the Display Brightness - Trim setting, which makes adjustments to the display's brightness according to the available or ambient light.

- **Calibrate Touchscreen.**

Press this to launch the Touch screen Calibration wizard. Calibrate the touch screen by following the on-screen instructions.



**CAUTION:** Do not use any sharp objects to operate the touch screen or the display may be damaged.

- **Time Zone**

Use the drop-down menu to select your time zone.

- **Language/Country Selection**

Use the drop-down menu to select the language.

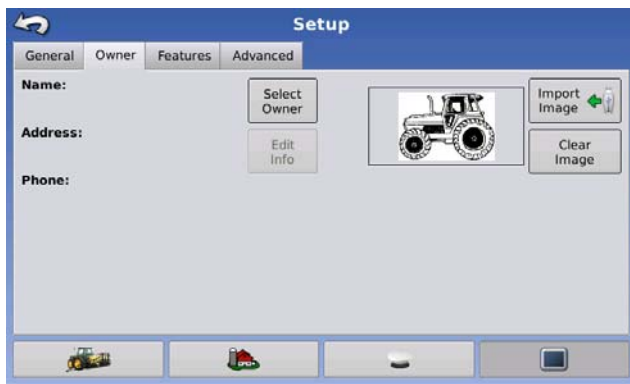
- **Operating Units**

Select either Imperial or Metric.

- **Enable Video**

Enables input from up to four video cameras.

## OWNER TAB



The Owner tab contains functionality for setting up a Display Owner and making any needed edits to the owner personal information. The Display Owner information is used in the product application report feature of application rate control. An image for the Display Owner can be imported for inclusion on product application reports.

- **Name, Address, Phone**

Displayed on Owner Tab.

- **Select Owner**

Press to display a list of all farm and business contacts set up in the system. The on-screen dialog that is displayed will give option to select an existing person/business or create a new one to be used as the Display Owner.

- **Edit Info**

Press to edit or add the personal information for the Display Owner.

- **Import Image**

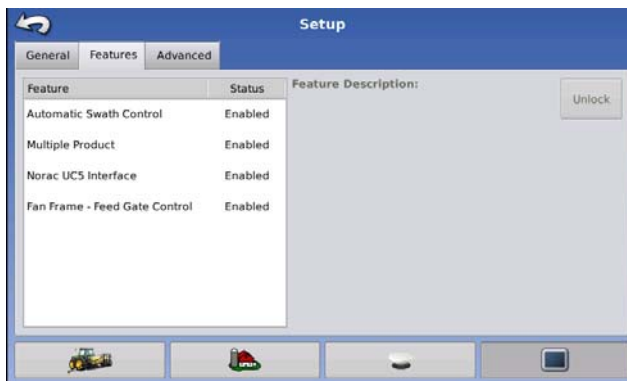
Press to import the image file that is displayed with the Display Owner information on any application reports that are created. The system currently supports .bmp and .png file formats. Size is limited to a maximum of 200 pixels wide x 100 pixels tall.

- **Clear Image**

Press to delete the Business Owner image.

## FEATURES TAB

### Unlocking Features

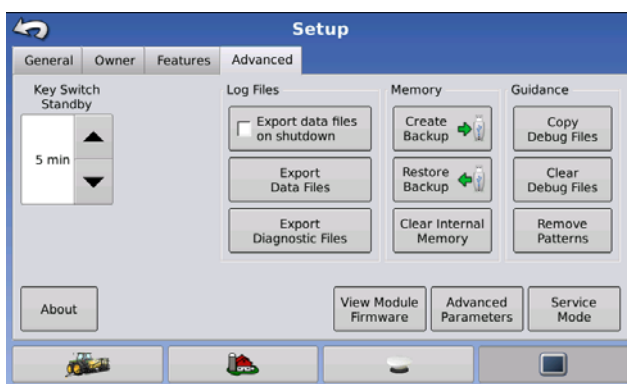


The Features Tab is where you can enter unlock codes. Unlock codes are unique to the serial number of each display and the feature registration number. You must supply these numbers to your dealer when purchasing any unlock codes. Use the on-screen keyboard button to enter the unlock code and press the green check mark button to enable the feature.



**Note:** Once a feature is unlocked, that feature remains with that display and cannot be transferred to another.

## ADVANCED TAB



The Advanced Tab allows you to specify settings for copying log files; specify Key Switch Standby settings; view and manually upgrade module firmware; and create and restore backup files.



**CAUTION:** The **Export Diagnostic Files**, **Advanced Parameters**, **Copy Debug Files**, **Clear Debug Files** and **Service Mode** functionality on the Advanced Tab is reserved for use by the manufacturer. DO NOT change any of these settings without specific instruction from the manufacturer.

#### • Key Switch Standby

This setting allows the display to remain powered up after the vehicle power has been shut down. Instead, the display will switch into a standby mode and the screen will go dark and appear to be shut off; however the power light will change to an amber color. Pressing the display while it is in standby mode will immediately turn the screen back on again.

Use the up and down arrows to specify a length of time that you wish the display to remain powered up in standby mode after the vehicle power has been shut down.



**Note:** When the time you specified in Key Switch Standby is nearly expired, then the amber-colored power light will flash on and off immediately preceding shutdown. If you wish the display to remain powered up for a longer period of time, touch the display to restart the Key Switch Standby countdown.

#### • About button

Displays product licensing information and copyright information.

- **Log Files**

These settings allow you to copy your data in the display.

- **Export Data Files.** Press to copy all logged data in the display to the USB drive.
- **Export Data Files on Shutdown.** Checking this checkbox will copy all log files to the USB drive when the display is turned off.

- **Memory**

Adjusts information stored in the display's internal memory.

- **Create Backup.** Press to create a backup file of all configuration settings, products, and Grower-Farm-Field Management data structure on the USB drive. Backup files are stored using the .ibk file format.
- **Restore Backup.** Press to restore a backup file from the external data drive to the internal memory of the display.
- **Clear Internal Memory.** Press this button to clear the internal memory of the display. The system will present a warning dialog box and ask if you would like to create a backup file prior to clearing the memory.



**CAUTION:** *Once you clear the system's internal memory, this information is deleted and cannot be restored.*

---

- **View Module Firmware.** Displays the Module Firmware Management screen, which is a list of all firmware modules and firmware versions that are available for the display.



**Note:** *The Module Firmware Management list includes module firmware that you may not be running.*

---

- **Import** - Imports any firmware stored on the USB drive into the display memory.
- **Direct Upgrade** - Upgrades an individual module directly from the USB.
- **Remove** - Removes unwanted module firmware from the Module Firmware Management list.



**Note:** *Pressing the Remove button does not remove firmware from the module itself. It merely removes the upgrade file from the display.*

---

- **Remove Patterns.** Pressing this button permanently erases all guidance patterns from the display's memory.

# RUN SCREEN

## START FIELD OPERATION

The start of field operations begins after you set up a Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. This process is similar regardless of the type of field operation currently taking place. Before you can create a Field Operation, you first must have created the following:

- A **Season, Grower, Farm and Field** in Setup Management. For more information, see *“Management button” on page 12.*
- An **Operating Configuration** at the Setup screen’s Configuration Tab. This Operating Configuration consists of Equipment, Vehicle, Implement, Controller (optional), Container (in Application), and Ground Speed Source.
- A **Product** (if you are creating an Application or Planting Field Operation) at the Setup Product Tab. For more information, see *“Product tab” on page 13.*

All of these are referenced by the Field Operation Wizard during the Field Operation setup process.

To begin, press the Start Field Operation button. The Field Operation Wizard appears. Follow the steps in the Wizard to select an operating configuration.

### 1. Grower, Farm and Field Selection

Enter a Growing Season and Grower either by using the drop-down arrows to select existing ones, or by pressing on the Add (plus sign) arrow to create new ones. Then add a Farm and Field either by using the drop-down arrows to select existing ones, or by pressing on the Add (plus sign) arrow to create new ones. Press the blue right-arrow key at the bottom of the screen to proceed to the next step.

### 2. Operating Configuration Selection

Use the drop-down arrow to select an Operating Configuration. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 3. Product Selection

Users creating a Field Operating Configuration in either Planting or Application must select a product from the drop-down list. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue. At the Options screen, enter in a Controlling Product and Units. If you wish to create a new Instance, press the Instance box to the right of the Product selection drop-down list.

### 4. Region Options

For DirectCommand and Rate Control SeedCommand Operating configurations, the Options screen will appear. Use the on-screen keyboard button to edit or change the region name from the system default if desired. At this screen, you can also create a new region or change the controlling product.

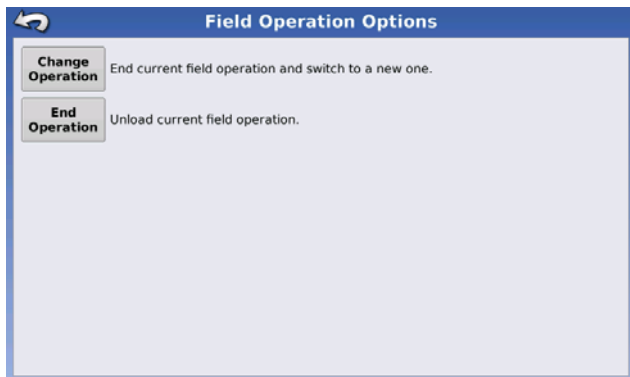
5. When you complete the steps in the Wizard, you will return to the Home screen.

- If you are selecting an Application product, you may check the box marked **Show Only Tank Mixes and Blends** at the Product Selection screen. If this box is checked, the display will only allow the selection of tank mixes that were previously set up.
- For information on Run screen operations, see *“Run screens” on page 27.*

## FIELD FINDER

If you have an existing field boundary, and your current GPS position is within that field boundary, the display will automatically pick the correct Grower, Farm and Field combination when you start a Field Operation.

## FIELD OPERATION OPTIONS



During a field operation, you can change or end the field operation by pressing on the Grower Farm Field (Start Field Operation) button. This opens the Field Operation Options screen, as shown.

- **Change Operations**

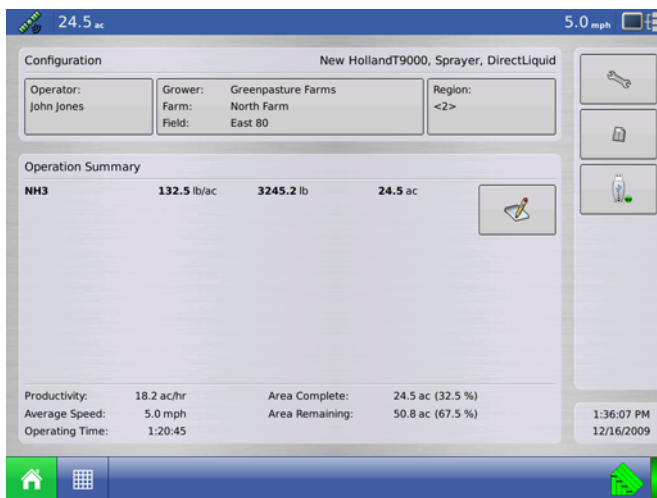
Pressing this button ends the current field operation and allows you to start a new one. Pressing this button ends the current field operation and opens the Field Operation Wizard, where you may create a new field operation.

- **End Operation**

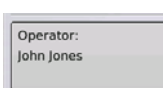
Pressing this button ends the current field operation. The

Home screen then appears as before the creation of a field operation, as shown on [“Home Screen” on page 11.](#)

## HOME SCREEN AFTER CONFIGURATION



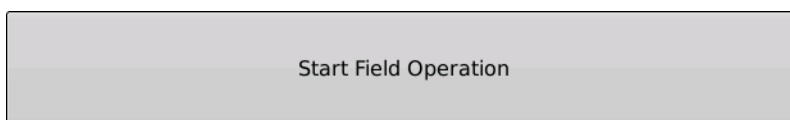
After you have created an Equipment Operating Configuration and then selected a Grower, Farm and Field for that configuration, the Home screen will appear as shown.



- **Operator button**

Allows you to select a machine operator from the drop-down list. Machine operator information is logged with all field operations. Operator information may be entered in

Management Setup at [“Management button” on page 12](#)

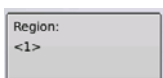


- **Start Field Operation button**

Opens the Field Operation Wizard where you can enter information relating to your

Growing Season, Grower, Farm, Field, Operating Configuration Selection, Crop Type and Product. You

can also Change Operations and End Operations. For more information, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23* and also *“Field Operation Options” on page 24*.



• **Region button**

A region is used to subdivide a field into smaller sections. The region in which data is currently being logged is listed on the Region button. A new region can be created at any time as you are performing a field operation.

To change between or add a new region to a field, press the Region button and follow the on-screen instructions.

The Operation Summary area of the Home screen is where you can view instantaneous field totals. If you are using a multi-product configuration, the field totals for each product is displayed separately. At the bottom of this area of the screen, current data is shown for **Productivity, Average Speed, Operating Time, Area Complete** and **Area Remaining**.



• **Setup button**

Opens the Setup screen. For more information see *“Configuration button” on page 11*.

Opens the Summary Report screen, where you can select different configuration settings for Season, Grower, Farm, Field, Operation, and Product. Additionally, you can create and view Smart Reports™, and view a Summary Map. For more information, see *“Summary Report” on page 37* as well as *“Smart Reports™” on page 39*.



• **External Storage Operations button**

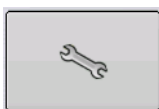
Copy your field data; upgrade display firmware; as well as import, export and manage files. For more information, see *“External Storage Operations” on page 43*.



• **Report Details button**

Edit any of the report items that are listed in Smart Reports™. For more information, see *“Report Details” on page 37*.

## CONFIGURATION SETUP SCREEN



The Configuration Setup screen is where you can make settings adjustments for your equipment, ground speed, GPS, and controllers. To view the Configuration Setup screen, go to the Setup screen’s Configuration Tab and press the Setup button, as shown at left.

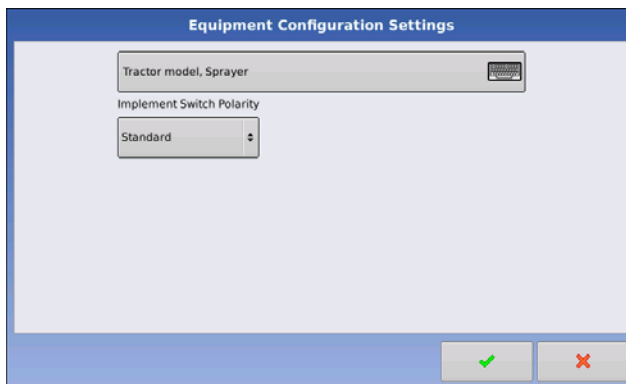
The appearance of this Configuration Setup screen varies, based on your particular configuration. Some DirectCommand and SeedCommand configurations include settings that are mentioned in those individual chapters. Most Configuration Settings screens will include the following buttons.

- **Equipment Configuration Settings.** For more information, see below.
- **Speed Input.** For more information, see *“Report Details” on page 37*.
- **AutoSwath.** For more information, see *“AutoSwath” on page 50*.
- **GPS Offsets.** For more information, see *“GPS Offsets” on page 51*.
- **Swath Section Offsets.** For more information, see *“Swath Section Offsets” on page 52*.
- **Controller Settings.** For more information, see information in the SeedCommand and DirectCommand chapters.
- **Calibrate Pressure.** Used in DirectCommand Liquid Application configurations.

## EQUIPMENT CONFIGURATION SETTINGS

Press the Configuration Settings button on the Configuration Setup screen to view or edit the name of your Equipment Configuration Settings. The appearance of this button will vary, depending upon whether you are using a Area Logging operating configuration (with or without an implement switch); or whether you are using Rate Logging/Control for a DirectCommand or SeedCommand operating configuration. Area Logging settings are explained below. If you have an operating configuration with Rate Control, see *“Equipment Configuration Settings for Rate Control” on page 26.*

### Implement Switch Settings (for Area Logging)



If you are using an Area Logging (Site Verification) operating configuration (meaning that the configuration does not use Rate Logging or Rate Control) then you must specify an Implement Switch Setting. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Configuration Settings button.

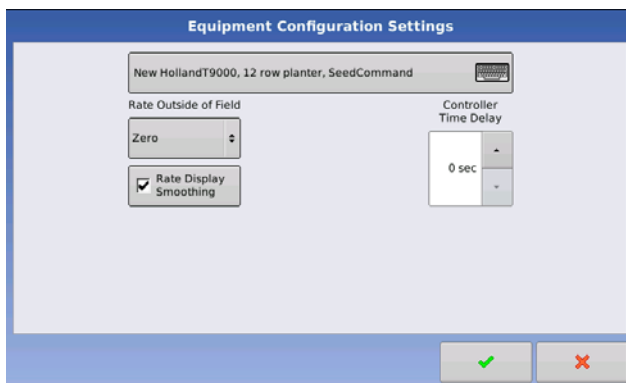
The Equipment Configuration Settings screen appears, as shown.

If you will be using an implement switch choose **Standard** or **Reversed** polarity.

If an implement switch is not in use, select **None**.

Press the green check mark button to return to the Configuration Setup screen.

### Equipment Configuration Settings for Rate Control



If you are using an operating configuration with Rate Control, (such as for certain DirectCommand and SeedCommand configurations) you must specify Equipment Configuration Settings. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Configuration Settings button. The Equipment Configuration Settings screen appears, as shown. The example below shows the Equipment Configuration Settings screen as it appears for DirectCommand; this screen is similar to that shown for SeedCommand configurations.

These settings are directly related to that specific combination of Vehicle, Implement, and Controller.

- The configuration name can be changed by pressing the on-screen keyboard screen.
- The **Rate Outside of Field** selection determines product control channel behavior when the field boundary is exited.
  - **Zero Product** - Product application will turn off.
  - **Last Good** - Product application will continue at the last value used by the control system.
  - **Rx Default** == Product will be applied at the default rate setting

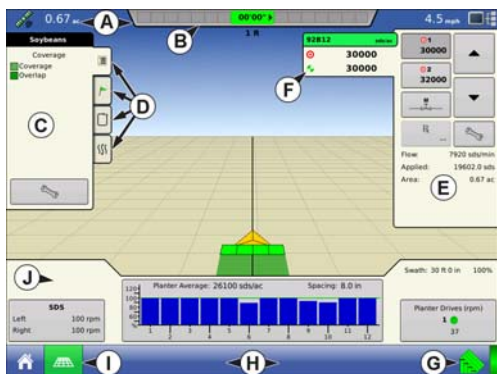
• **Rate Display Smoothing setting**

Determines how the feedback from the control channel rate sensor will be displayed on the map screen. When de-selected, the system will display raw feedback from the rate sensor. When checked, the system will display target rate when the application rate is within 10% of the target rate setting.

• **Controller Time Delay setting**

Compensates for any latency in the control system when changing between different product flow rates during variable rate application. The typical setting range for this is 0 - 1 seconds.

## RUN SCREENS

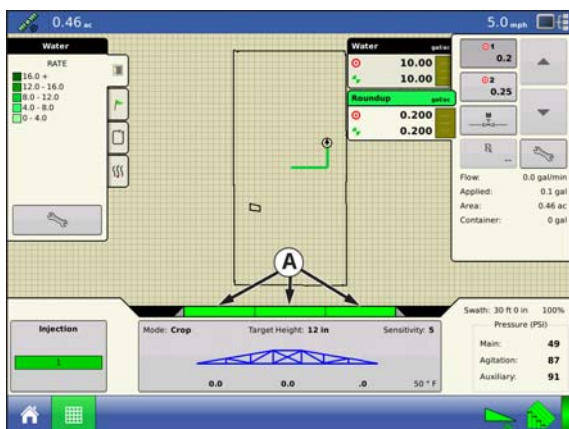


- (A) Status Bar
- (B) On-screen Light bar
- (C) Mapping toolbox
- (D) Mapping Function tabs
- (E) Product Control toolbox
- (F) Product tabs
- (G) Function buttons
- (H) Task bar

- (I) Main Screen buttons
- (J) Equipment tab

The appearance of the Map screen varies, depending upon which operation you are performing, and your specific operating configuration. Two examples are provided below. The top picture shows a SeedCommand configuration which includes a KINZE Planter Monitor Module (PMM) and a Hydraulic Seed Control module. The bottom picture shows a Direct Injection module running a NORAC UC5 Boom Height control. Areas common to many Map screens are named in these pictures.

## TASK AND STATUS BARS



The task bar displays buttons relating to various functions of the display. These buttons and status indicators include Home, Mapping, Autoswath, Logging, and Auxiliary Input Status. These buttons are shown in front of a green background when you are at that screen; otherwise they are shown in front of a blue background. Examples are shown in the table below.

- (A) Section Indicators



**Home button.** Pressing the Home button takes you to the Home screen.

**Map button.** Pressing the Map button takes you to the Map screen. Pressing it more than once cycles the Map screen to zoom in and out.

ZOOM DETAILS 

ZOOM TO EXTENT 

PERSPECTIVE VIEW 



**Note:** The Perspective View is only available when guidance is active.





**Video button.** Pressing this button takes you to the video screen.



**Note:** For more information on the Video screen, see [“Video” on page 36](#).

**AutoSwath button.** Pressing this button turns the AutoSwath feature on and off. When AutoSwath is on, the icon is green; when it is off the icon is white.

AutoSwath - ON 

AutoSwath - OFF 

**Area Logging Status button.** This button appears for configurations that do not use rate control, such as Tillage, Harvest, Planting operations that do not use SeedCommand, and Application operations that do not use DirectCommand. Pressing this button turns logging on and off.

ON 

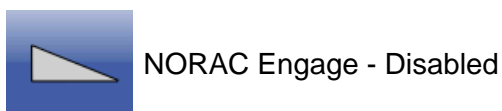
OFF 

The NORAC Engage button enables boom height control. This button can toggle back and forth between Automatic Mode and Manual Mode.

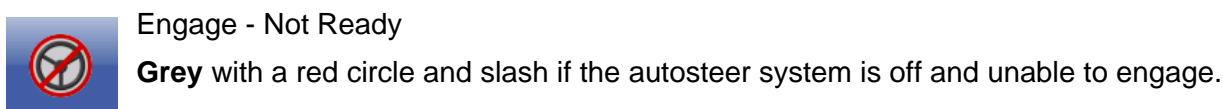
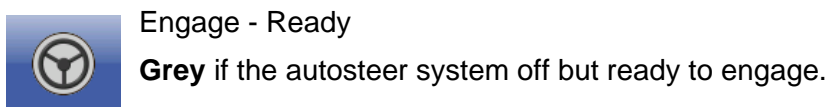
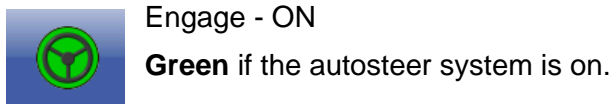
- When you enable Automatic Mode, this button turns green with three lines appearing underneath the triangle. At the same time, the display beeps three times.
- When you disable Automatic Mode on any part of the boom and the display switches to Manual Mode, this button turns grey and the display beeps twice. If less than the full boom remains in Manual Mode, the display will continue beeping twice every three seconds.




NORAC Engage - Enabled



The Engage icon shows that the autosteer system is on, off, or off but ready to engage. The appearance of this icon displays the following:

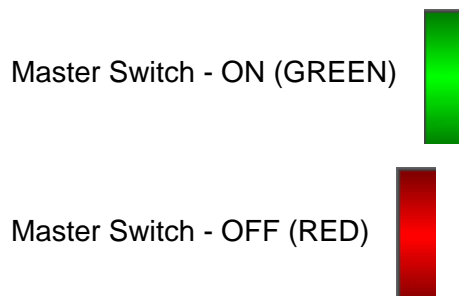



---

 **Note:** For more information, see *“Guidance” on page 73.*

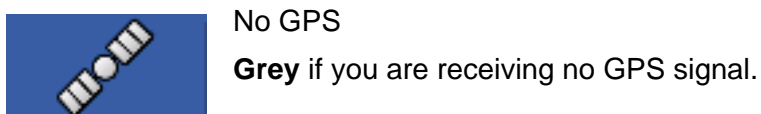
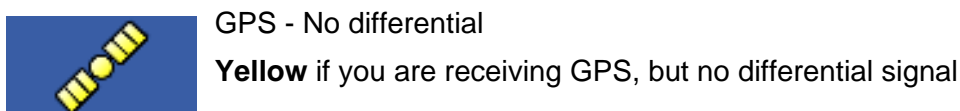
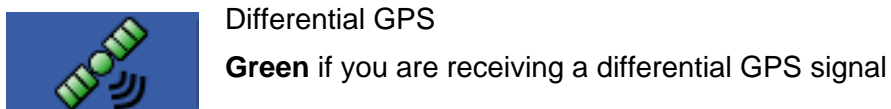
---

Master Switch Status. This bar shows that the Master Switch is active.




## GPS SIGNAL INDICATOR

The GPS button in the upper left-hand corner of the Map screen, displays the following colors:



The Flex Mode icon appears for ParaDyme users who are using Flex Mode. Flex mode provides continuity of position solution to maintain automated steering by seamless flexing (transitioning) to a lower accuracy mode when a higher accuracy mode is lost; such as loss of the RTK radio link.

Flex Mode - ON (GREEN) 

Flex Mode - Exceeded (YELLOW) 



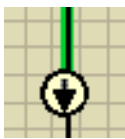
**Note:** For more information, see the ParaDyme Insert.



The Device Information button opens screens that display Device Information, Memory, Display, and display diagnostics.



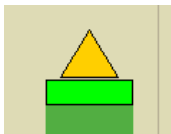
**Note:** For more information, See [“Device Information” on page 45.](#)



Vehicle Icon - Zoom to Extent

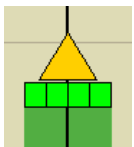
The Vehicle Icon is shown by an arrow inside a circle if the Map screen is viewed in Zoom to Extent.

The vehicle appears as a gold-colored triangle if the Map screen is viewed in Zoom Detail. The appearance of the zoomed-in icon changes depending upon the data being logged in the field.



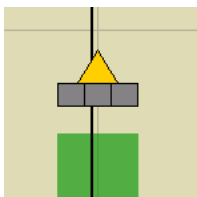
Vehicle Icon - logging

If the vehicle is logging, the implement icon appears as a green bar behind it.



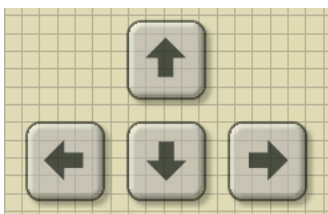
Vehicle Icon - with sections

If the vehicle is logging data from an implement split into sections, (for instance during a planting or application operation), then these sections appear in the implement icon.



Vehicle Icon - not logging

If the vehicle is not logging data, then the implement icon appears as a grey bar.



Press the grid area of the Map screen, and four arrow icons appear at the bottom right of the Map screen. An example showing these arrow buttons is at left. Pressing these arrow icons will move the center of the Map screen in the direction of the arrow button.



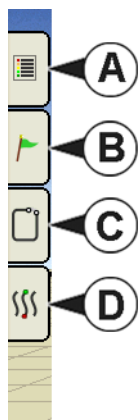
The Zoom Tool icons, which resemble a magnifying glass, are shown at the right-hand side of the Map screen.

Pressing the zoom tool with the plus sign increases the scale of the Map screen.

Pressing the zoom tool with the minus sign decreases the scale of the Map screen.

Pressing the zoom tool with the four arrows underneath re-centers the Map screen and brings its scale back to the default.

## MAPPING TOOLBOX



At the upper left hand side of the Map screen is the Mapping Toolbox. Press any of the four buttons on the toolbox and it expands. The toolbox consists of the following buttons:

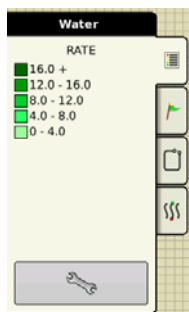
- (A) Map Legend
- (B) Map Markers
- (C) Boundary
- (D) Guidance

The Map Legend, Map Markers and Boundary buttons are explained in the rest of this chapter. The Guidance button is described in *“Guidance” on page 73*.

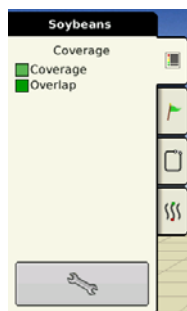
### Map Legend tab

Press the Map Legend button at the top of the Mapping Toolbox, and the Legend appears, either for Rate or Coverage. Two examples are shown below.

Map Legend - Rate



Map Legend - Coverage



Legend Select — Press the Legend Setup (wrench) tool, and the Legend Select screen appears. Here you can adjust Legend Settings, clear the map

- **Clear Map**

Permanently removes all logged data from the active field operation.

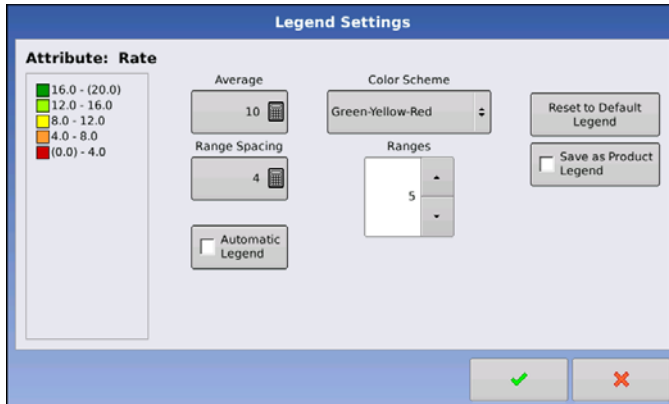


**CAUTION:** Once you clear the map, this information cannot be retrieved.

- **Load Reference**

Loads a list of maps of previous operations performed in that field. For each operation, you can view As-Applied or Coverage attributes; and Varieties if you are performing a Planting operation.

## Legend Settings



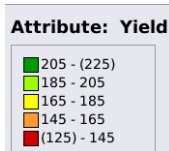
On the Legend Select screen, press the Setup (wrench) button next to the Rate button, and the Legend Settings screen appears, as shown. The Legend Settings screen allows you to change the default legend.



**Notes:**

- The Legend Settings screen can also be accessed by pressing the **Edit Legend** button on the Setup screen's Product Tab.
- Legend settings changes that are made at the Legend Settings screen will affect all regions.

The Legend Settings screen includes the following items:



- **Attribute**

Appears at the top left of the Legend Settings screen, as shown at left. Attributes shown for Harvest include Yield and Moisture. The Rate attribute is shown for Planting and Application operations. You can adjust the color scheme, spacing and ranges as they appear on the map screen, by using the buttons described below.

- **Average**

The Average button changes the average rate for the legend. Use the numeric keypad to specify the average of the ranges shown on the map legend.

- **Range Spacing**

The Range Spacing button changes the difference between the rates in one color range. Use the numeric keypad to edit the legend range spacing value, which is the total number of units represented by a particular color.

- **Ranges**

The Ranges up and down arrow buttons change the number of range increments displayed in the legend.

- **Color Scheme**

The Color Scheme can be modified by using the drop-down list. Choices include the following:

- Green-Yellow-Red
- Single Hue (blues or greens)
- Rainbow

- **Reset to Default Legend**

Resets the legend to the default settings.

• **Automatic Legend**

If the Automatic Legend checkbox is selected, the average automatically sets itself to the field average and updates as the field average changes

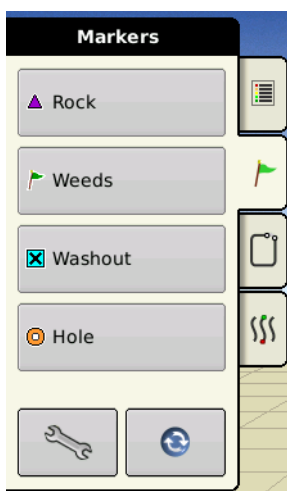
• **Reset to Default Legend**

Press the reset legend to the system default.

• **Save as Product Legend**

Select the Save as Product Legend checkbox if you wish to set the current legend as the default legend for all regions of the same product.

Map Markers tab



Markers are a collection of point objects that are available on the Map Markers tab of the Mapping Toolbox, as shown at left. Map markers allow you to map points on the go in order to identify specific features within a field. Press an individual marker to indicate a Map Marker on the Map screen.

If all of the Markers that you created are not immediately visible in this screen, use the Cycle Map Markers button to view more that you created.

Cycle Map Markers 

Edit Markers




Pressing the Map Marker Setup (wrench) button opens the Markers screen, as shown at left.

- Press the Add button to add a marker.
- Press the on-screen keyboard button to edit the name of a marker.
- Press Change Icon to change marker icons. For more information, see “Changing Marker Icons” on page 40.
- If you have numerous map icons, you can cycle through them by pressing the up and down arrow buttons.

Field Options

- Press the **Clear All Marks** button if you wish to erase all field markers from the Map screen.

 **CAUTION:** Once you clear this information, it cannot be retrieved.

- Press the **Georeferenced Note** button if you wish to add a Field Note that is referenced to your current GPS position.

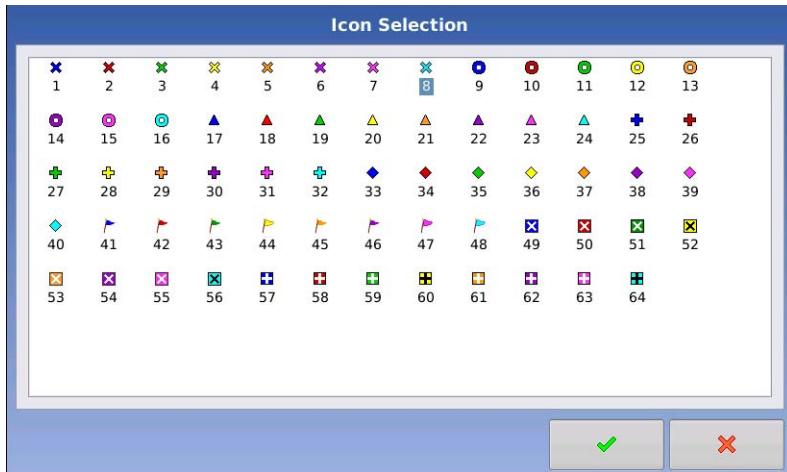


**Note:** This georeferenced position will not show up on the display's on-screen map, but it will be added to desktop software when you export your field data.

## Changing Marker Icons



The “X” at left is the default icon assigned by the system for all new Markers. A different icon can be assigned to a Marker by following the steps outlined below.



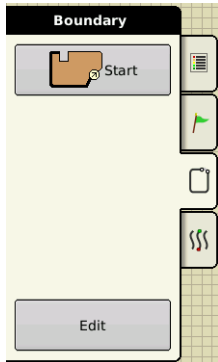
1. Press the Map Marker setup button. The Markers screen opens.



2. On the Markers screen, highlight a marker and press the **Change Icon** button. The Icon Selection screen appears, as shown.

3. Choose an icon and press the green check mark button to close the screen. The changed icon now appears on the Map Icon list of the Markers screen and the Map Markers tab on the Mapping Tool Box.

## Boundary Tab

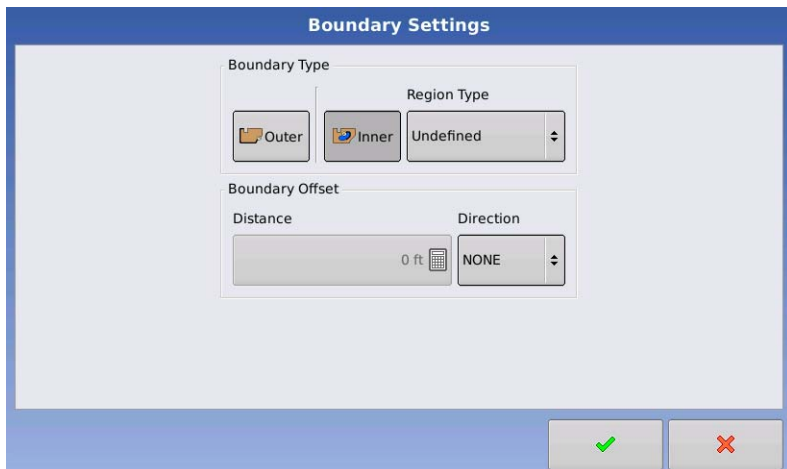


Pressing the Boundary button on the Mapping Toolbox opens the Boundary Tab, as shown at left. Here you can Create, Import, Export, and Clear Boundaries. Before the creation of a boundary, the Start button appears at the top of the Boundary Tab.



During the creation of a boundary, the Stop button appears, and underneath it is the Pause/Resume button.

## Boundary Settings



Pressing the Start button opens the Boundary Settings screen, as shown.

Underneath the Boundary Type area, you have the choice of creating either an Outer Boundary or an Inner Boundary.

- Outer boundaries delineate the borders of an entire field.
- Inner boundaries mark specific features within that field, such as waterways or buildings.

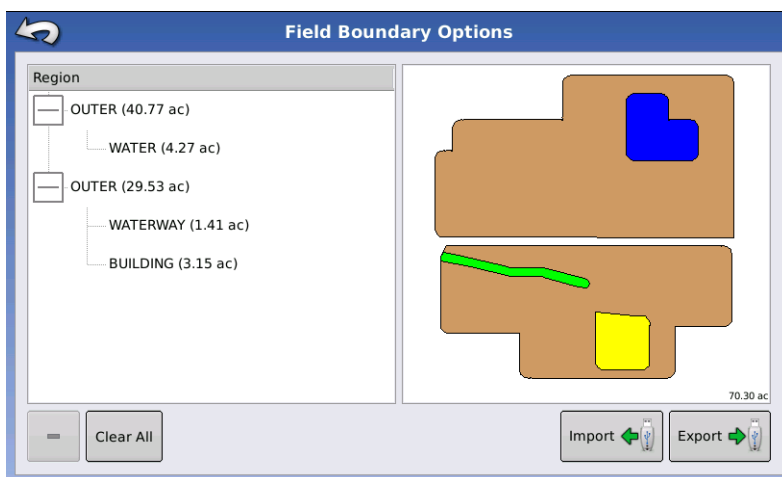
### Create Boundary

1. Choose whether to create either an Outer boundary or Inner boundary by pressing one of the two Boundary Type buttons.
2. If you chose to create an Inner Boundary, use the Region Type drop-down menu to choose the type of boundary. Choices include: **Roadway**, **Body of Water**, **Waterway**, **Buildings** or **Undefined**.
3. The Boundary Offset feature enables mapping a boundary at a user-defined distance to the left or right of the GPS antenna center line. If desired, specify a Boundary Offset distance by choosing a direction and distance from the GPS antenna center line.
4. Press the green check mark button to start the boundary.
5. Press the **Stop** button to complete the boundary. At the Boundary screen, choose whether to **Save**, **Resume** or **Discard** the boundary.

### Pause Boundary

When creating a boundary, you can use the Pause Boundary button to create a straight line between two points. To do this, drive the vehicle to a point, press the Pause Boundary button, then drive to the second point. When you press the Resume Boundary button, a straight line is created between your current point and your pause location.

### Editing Boundaries



Press the Edit button on the Boundary Tab, and the Field Boundary Options screen opens, as shown. Here you can Import Boundaries, Export Boundaries, and Clear All Boundaries.

- **Importing and Exporting Boundaries.** For a description of Importing and Exporting Boundaries, see *“Importing and Exporting Field Boundaries”* on page 17.
- **Clear All Boundaries.** Press **Clear All** to permanently delete all Boundary information for that field.



**CAUTION:** Once you clear this information, it cannot be retrieved.

## VIDEO



- **Video button**

Press and the Video screen appears, as shown.



- **Brightness**

Use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the brightness of the video input.

- **Contrast**

Use the up and down arrows to increase or decrease the contrast of the video input.

- **Camera Number Selection**

The display can receive input from up to four video cameras. Press the numbered buttons to switch views between video cameras.



**Note:** You can adjust the brightness and contrast of each input individually.

# REPORTS

## SUMMARY REPORT



Press the Summary button at the right-hand side of the Home screen to view the Summary Report screen.

Region	Avg Rate (lb/ac)	Total (lb)	Area (ac)	Date Created
<b>Instance 1</b>	<b>108.8</b>	<b>48664.6</b>	<b>447.16</b>	
<1>	108.8	48664.6	447.16	12/11/2009
<b>Instance 2</b>	<b>104.9</b>	<b>223954.6</b>	<b>2134.94</b>	
<1>	104.9	223954.6	2134.94	12/14/2009
<b>Field Total (All)</b>		<b>272619.2</b>	<b>2582.10</b>	

This screen shows you field totals and averages. Use the drop-down menus at the top to specify the information you would like to view. Specific information is shown in the list below for each Season, Grower, Farm, Field, Operation and Product. The list displays information for each Region and Instance.

## REPORT DETAILS



During field operations, or at the conclusion of field operations, you may view Report Details by going to the Home screen and pressing the Report Details button, as shown at left.

When the Report Details screen appears, you may edit any of the report items by selecting that item and pressing the Edit button.

## GENERAL

Attribute	Value
<b>Current Region:</b>	
<b>Soil Temperature</b>	65 ° F
<b>Soil Moisture Level</b>	Optimal
<b>Soil Condition</b>	Medium
Crop Residue Level	
<b>Tillage Type</b>	Conventional
<b>Air Temperature</b>	75 ° F

The General tab is where you can enter information such as the following:

- Crop information
- Application timing
- Weather information
- Soil condition



**Note:** A common use for this functionality is to enter multiple instances of weather data when a product application is completed over the course of multiple days.



**Note:** If desired, you can prompt the Report Details screen to display each time a new product application is started in a field and each time a new region is created. For more information, see “Options” on page 38.

## CONFIGURATION

The screenshot shows the 'Report Details' window for 'JD 8330, Toolbar, DirectLiquid'. It features a table with the following attributes and values:

Attribute	Value
All Regions:	
Nozzle Part Number	
Boom Pressure	
Spray Boom Height	
Crop Rotation Restrictions	
REI	
Application Placement Method	

Buttons on the right side include Edit, Revert, Memo, and Options. At the bottom, there are checkmark and X buttons.

An Equipment Configuration Tab will be present for each control channel being used, in Planting, Application, or Tillage functions. All common information is populated at the same time when multiple control channels are in use. Multiple instances of data can be entered by creating new regions within the field.

When you press the **Edit** button, you may enter the following details, based upon your specific configuration:

- Machine and equipment information as appropriate
- Product REI and rotation restriction
- Application placement method

## OPTIONS

Pressing the Options button on the Report Details screen opens the Options screen. The Options screen is where you can change settings that affect the creation of application reports.

### • Auto Generate Report

Check this option to have the display automatically generate an application report each time you start a new field operation.

### • Copy from Previous Region

Check this option if you wish to have the display copy all values already specified in Report Details for the previous region over to a new region.

### • Prompt for Report Details

Check this option to have the display automatically launch the region summary data collection dialog box each time a new region is created at the Run screen during application rate control.

### • Report Map Appearance

- **Multi-Color Rate** - Select this option to have application reports display the application maps using rate legend as displayed on the run screen.
- **Single Color Coverage** - Select this option to have the application reports display single color product coverage maps.

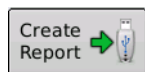
# SMART REPORTS™

Smart Report™ creates documentation of all in-field product application events. This documentation is saved in a Portable Display Format (PDF) on your USB drive. This .PDF either can be viewed on the display screen, or printed later. Smart Reports provide information relating to location, product information, applied totals, field areas, as-applied maps and field boundaries.



**Note:** It is recommended that you enter any necessary information in Report Details before creating a Smart Report. For more information, see [“Report Details” on page 37.](#)

## CREATE REPORTS



To begin creating a Smart Report™, first highlight an item in the list on the Summary Report screen, then press the Create Report button.

1. The Create Report screen appears, which lists the Grower, Field, and Product at top. Two drop-down menus list your **Operating Configuration** and **Product Group**. Use the drop-down menus to change these, if desired. Press the green check mark button when finished.
2. A scroll bar informs you of the progress made when the display compiles the Smart Report.
3. At the conclusion of the Smart Report creation process, a screen states “Report Creation Complete.” Press the green check mark button, or if you wish to view the report press the **View Report** button. A built-in PDF viewer displays your Smart Report. An example is shown at [“Control Channel Report Content” on page 40.](#)




**Note:** You can view subsequent pages in the Smart Report by pressing the blue right and left arrows at top right. Also, you can zoom in and out of the Smart Report by pressing on the magnifying glass icons at top left.

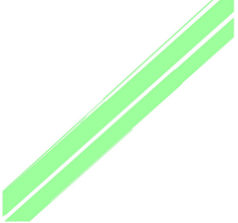
4. Product application reports are automatically stored on the external data card at the time of report creation. Reports are created and stored inside folders that are created with the following sequential information provided by the display:

- **Ten-digit serial number of the display.** Example: 2007250001.
- Grower
- Farm
- Field Name
- Configuration Name
- Unique ID #
- **Date of most recent product application.** The files date information is listed according to Year, Month, Day.

Example: East 91\_Post Sprayer\_DirectLiquid\_0000177a\_060506.pdf.

# CONTROL CHANNEL REPORT CONTENT



<b>Grower</b> Strip till testing		<b>Field</b> Field: 2 Farm: 2 County:                      Description: Township: Range: Section:	
<b>Equipment Configuration</b> Vehicle: Jd 8440 Implement: Strip-till bar		<b>Application</b> Timing:                      Pre Plant Placement:                      Sub Surface	<b>Application Date/Time</b> Start Time: 12/17/2009 3:20 PM End Time: 12/19/2009 10:20 AM
<b>Product: MAP</b> <b>Applied Area: 924.46 ac</b>			
<b>Rate (lb):</b> <input type="checkbox"/> 205 + <input type="checkbox"/> 185 - 205 <input type="checkbox"/> 165 - 185 <input type="checkbox"/> 145 - 165 <input type="checkbox"/> 0 - 145			
			
<b>Crop</b> Crop: Corn Growth Stage: VE - Emergence		<b>Restrictions</b> Crop Rotation Restrictions: No Restricted Entry Interval (REI): 0 hours	<b>Target Pests</b> Not Observed      Not Observed Not Observed      Not Observed
<b>Product Summary</b>			
<b>Name</b>	<b>Manufacturer</b>	<b>EPA #</b>	<b>RUP</b>
MAP			No
N			No
P			No
			<b>Amount</b>
			135639.72 lb
			14920.37 lb
			70532.65 lb
			<b>Average Rate</b>
			146.72 lb/ac
			16.14 lb/ac
			76.30 lb/ac
<b>Operator/Supervisor Information</b>			
Operator:                      License:                      _____		<b>Signature</b>	
Operator:                      License:                      _____			
Supervisor:                      License:                      _____			

2\_2bin\_stripill\_00000324\_091219.pdf Page 1 of 3

The content of all product application reports is divided into two distinct groups. The first page(s) of the report represent field and product control channel specific information. In cases of multiple product application, multiple pages will be generated, one for each channel of product control.

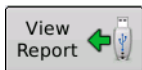
REGION SUMMARY		
Item	Region 1	Region 2
Region Name	<1>	
Operator Name		
<b>Application Details</b>		
Area	924.46 ac	
MAP Amount	135639.72 lb	
Phl Line Amount	90291.33 lb	
Application Start Time	12/17/2009 3:20 PM	
Application End Time	12/19/2009 10:20 AM	
<b>Soil Conditions</b>		
Soil Temperature	45 ° F	
Soil Moisture Level	Wet	
Soil Condition	Medium	
Crop Residue Level	High	
Tillage Type	Strip Till	
<b>Environmental</b>		
Air Temperature	33 ° F	
Wind Speed	15 mph	
Wind Direction (From)	NE	
Sky Condition	Partly Cloudy	
Humidity	50 %	
<b>Additional Information</b>		
Memo		

2\_2bin\_stripill\_00000324\_091219.pdf Page 3 of 3

Control Channel Content includes the following:

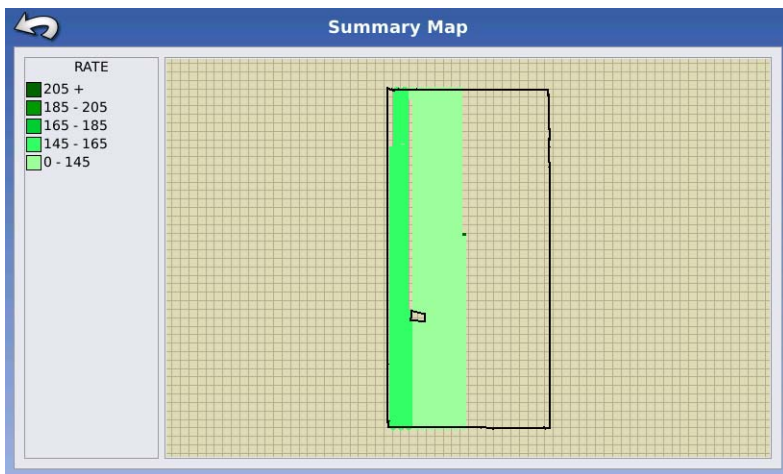
- Service Provider Information
- Grower Information
- Field Information
- Farm Name and Description
- Equipment Configuration Information
- Application Information
- Date/Time Information
- Crop Information
- Rotation Restrictions and REI
- Multiple Target Pests
- Applied Product Information
- Operator and Supervisor Information

## VIEW REPORTS



To view Smart Reports that have been saved on your USB drive, go to the Summary screen and press the View Reports button. At the File Selection screen, scroll down the list and select the .PDF file of your Smart Report. Press the green check mark button and the Smart Report will appear in the PDF viewer.

## VIEW MAP



To view a Summary Map of a particular Field Total, Region or Instance shown in the Summary Report, press the View Map button. A Summary Map appears, similar to the one shown. This map shows the rate applied for Application operations and varieties for Planting operations.



# EXTERNAL DRIVE

## EXTERNAL STORAGE OPERATIONS



The External Storage Operations button is where you can copy your field data; upgrade display firmware; as well as import, export and manage files. To begin, press the External Storage Operations button, as shown at left.

### COPY DATA

To copy all logged data files to the USB drive, press the Copy Data button. This stores the log files using the .ilf file format.



**CAUTION:** When you press Copy Data, all logged information is removed from the display's internal memory.

### UPGRADE FIRMWARE

Pressing the Upgrade Firmware button allows you to upgrade the display firmware from the .fw2 file stored on the USB drive. At the File Selection screen, scroll through the list of files on the USB drive until you find the .fw2 firmware file. Highlight the .fw2 file and the box at the upper right-hand side of the File Selection screen shows the version of this file. Press the green check mark button to continue, and the Upgrade screen informs you that the upgrade is beginning. At the Upgrade Ready screen, press the green check mark button.



**CAUTION:** Do not disconnect display power when the upgrade is taking place.

### IMPORT FILES

To import files to the display's internal memory, press the Import Files button. The File Selection screen opens. Use the scroll bar to find the file you wish to import. File formats that you can import include Boundary Files (.iby), Management Setup (.msf) files, and pattern (.pat) files.

### EXPORT FILES

To export files to the USB drive, press the Export Files button.

#### 1. Select Files to export

The Select File Type screen opens. Select the type of file that you wish to export (either Boundary Files or Pattern files).

#### 2. Select Field

Use the drop-down menus to select a Grower, Farm and Field. Or press the Export data from all fields check box to select all fields.

#### 3. Log Files Exported

The Copy Log Files screen informs you that the log files have been successfully exported.

## MANAGE FILES

To view all files and file folders on the USB drive, press the Manage Files button. The File Manager screen opens, where you can use the scroll bar to view a list of all files and folders. A bar at the bottom of the window shows how much memory is available on the USB drive.

## DELETE FILES

If you wish to delete files, press the Delete Files button. The Memory Management screen appears, which informs you that the selected files will be permanently deleted. If you still wish to delete the files, press the green check mark button.

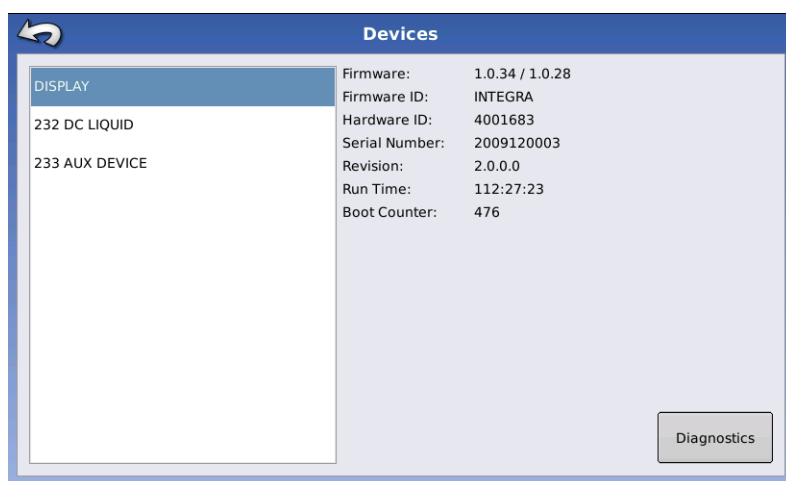
# DEVICES

## DEVICE INFORMATION



Pressing on the Device Information button, located in the upper right corner of the display, opens the Devices screens. Technical support may request that you look at these screens for help in diagnosing a problem.

## DEVICES



Device Information includes **Firmware Version, Firmware ID, Hardware ID, Serial Number, Revision, Run Time** shown in hours:minutes:seconds and Display **Boot Counter**.

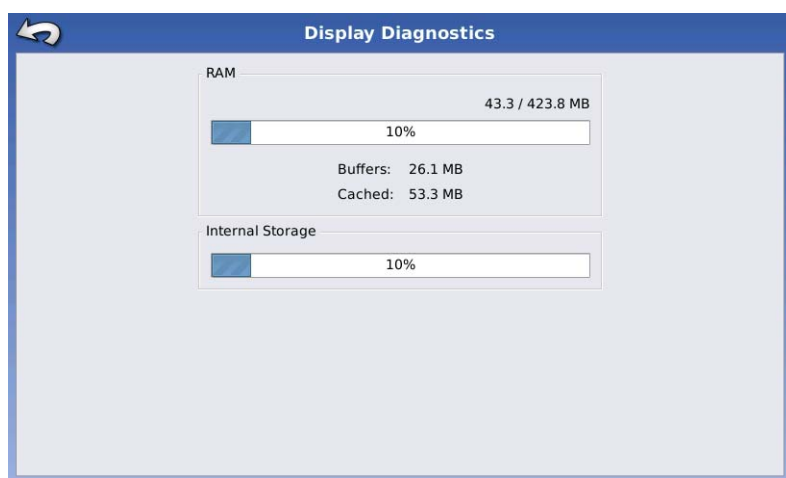
The CAN Device List displays the modules that are connected to the CAN Bus. Select a device to display its particular firmware and hardware information.

CAN device list - shown for typical DirectCommand Liquid configuration.



**Note:** Check the CAN device list to ensure that all hardware modules appear there.

## DISPLAY DIAGNOSTICS



Press Display on the CAN Device list, then press the **Diagnostics** button on the Devices screen to open the Display Diagnostics screen. This screen, as shown at left, includes information about the system memory usage and available memory.



**Note:** For information on Auxiliary Input Settings Diagnostics, see *“Auxiliary Input”* on page 48.

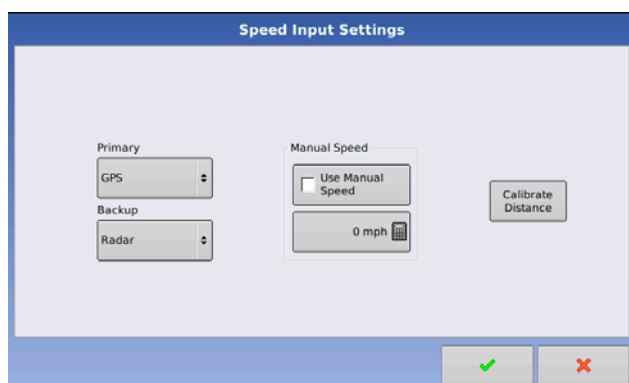


# SETTINGS

## SPEED INPUT SETTINGS



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Speed Input button



The Speed Input Settings screen is where you can calibrate the ground speed input for accurate speed and area calculations.

In most cases **GPS** is the primary speed source with **Radar** serving as backup. If you will be using **GPS** as the primary you will need to select a **Backup** source.

Choices for **Primary** include:

- GPS
- Wheels
- Radar

Choices for Backup include:

- Wheels
- Radar
- Filtered - This setting is used only as a backup speed source for low pulse ground speed sensors. In times when primary speed source is lost, this setting allows you to calibrate and operate with a speed sensor that has a pulse output below the standard threshold of 305 pulses/100ft (imperial) or 10 pulses/meter (metric). Using the "filtered" selection will allow calibration values down to 15 pulses/100ft (imperial) or 0.5 pulses/meter (metric). When the calibration values fall in this lower range, the speed sensor input will be filtered to achieve a more accurate rate control.

Other Notes:

- If you are using a backup radar speed source it is recommended that you calibrate it before the season begins.
- It is recommended to **Calibrate Distance** in the event of GPS loss. For more information, see ["Calibrate Distance" on page 48](#).

# CALIBRATE DISTANCE

If you are not using GPS for ground speed, then after you have created a configuration you must calibrate the ground speed input for accurate speed and area calculations. If you are using GPS, it is recommended to calibrate distance in the event of GPS loss. Use the following procedure to calibrate distance:

## 1. Select Ground Speed Sensor Type

Select the sensor type to calibrate and press NEXT to continue.

## 2. Mark Start and End Points of the Known Distance

The system defaults to 100 feet (50 meters) distance for calibration. Press the numeric keypad to edit the distance, if needed. This value must match the actual distance of the course driven for calibration. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 3. Start Driving Course

Follow the on-screen directions and press Start to begin the calibration process.

## 4. Course Completed

Drive vehicle over the measured course and press Stop. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue to final step.

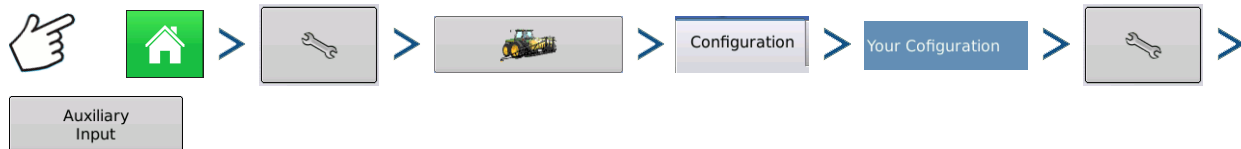
## 5. Calibration Complete

Press the green check mark button to complete calibration and store the calculated value.

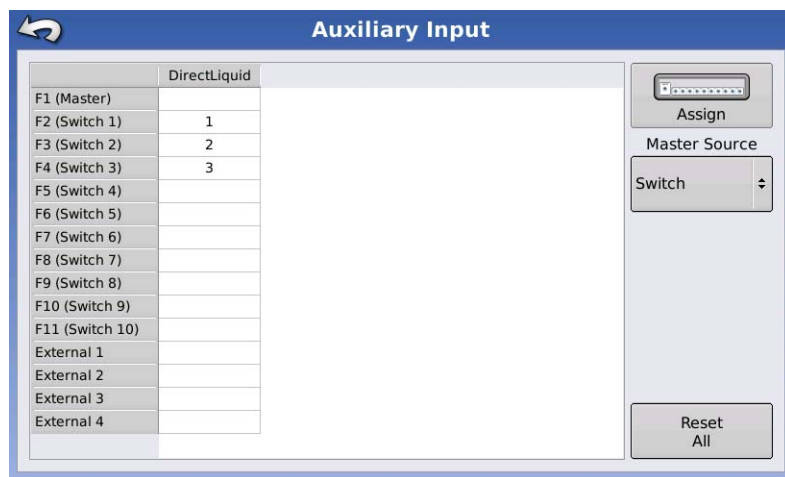


**Note:** Calibration settings can be manually adjusted if desired by pressing **Enter CAL Number** and making small changes to the setting.

# AUXILIARY INPUT



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Auxiliary Input button



This Switch Mapping function is active only for users with DirectCommand or SeedCommand features. The Auxiliary Input Settings screen displays settings for the Master Switch and other switches on a DirectCommand or SeedCommand Switch Box.

Auxiliary Input Settings can be adjusted by going to the Auxiliary Input Summary screen. Go to the Configuration Setup screen and press the Auxiliary Input button. The Auxiliary Input Summary screen appears, as shown. This screen lists each switch on a switch box and

which functions (if any) are assigned to particular switches.

The **Assign** button, located at the upper right-hand corner of this screen, opens the Auxiliary Input Assignment screen, where you can assign functions to switches and external inputs. For more information, see *“Auxiliary Input Settings” on page 49.*

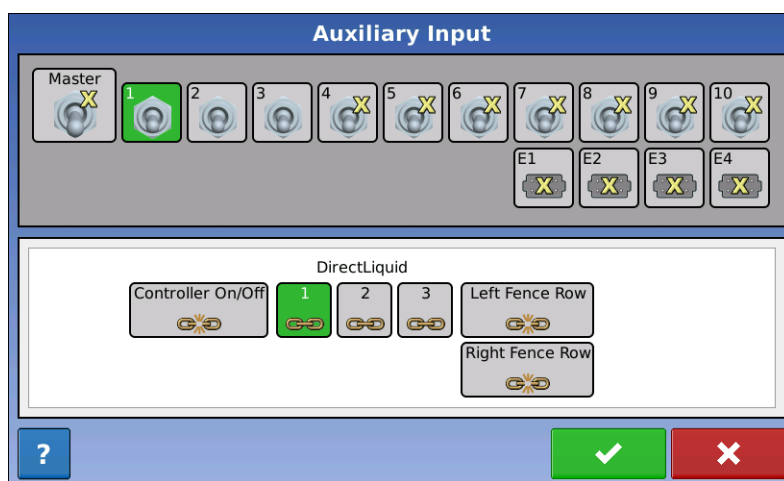
The Master Switch Source drop-down menu controls the master switch for your entire configuration. You may see the following options underneath this menu:

- **Switch** - Controls the master switch.
- **External 2** - This setting can control an optional, floor-mounted master switch.
- **External 1, 3 & 4** - Not used at this time.

The F1-F11 switches can be assigned to any implement sections. You can use these to choose the switches that control a particular section or controller planting clutch. You can also make the following changes to the switch settings:

- Add a switch setting. For more information, see *“Auxiliary Input Settings” on page 49.*
- **Reset All.** This button resets the settings to defaults.

## AUXILIARY INPUT SETTINGS




Pressing the **Assign** button on the Auxiliary Input Summary screen summons the Assign Auxiliary Input Settings screen, as shown. The top of this screen shows a visual display of all switches and external inputs. The switches and external inputs that are unassigned are shown with a yellow “X” mark.

If you would like to change the default switch mapping configuration, select the switch from the top row of inputs. Next, select which switch function that switch controls from the options at the bottom of


the menu.

## AUXILIARY INPUT: HELP

 If you need help adjusting the Auxiliary Input settings, then press the question mark key, as shown at left. The Auxiliary Assignment Help screen appears, which provides definitions for each of the icons shown below.




---

 **Note:** DirectCommand users can control fence row nozzles through a DirectCommand switch box by mapping the switches in Auxiliary Input Settings. The fence row nozzles can be mapped to any switch.

---

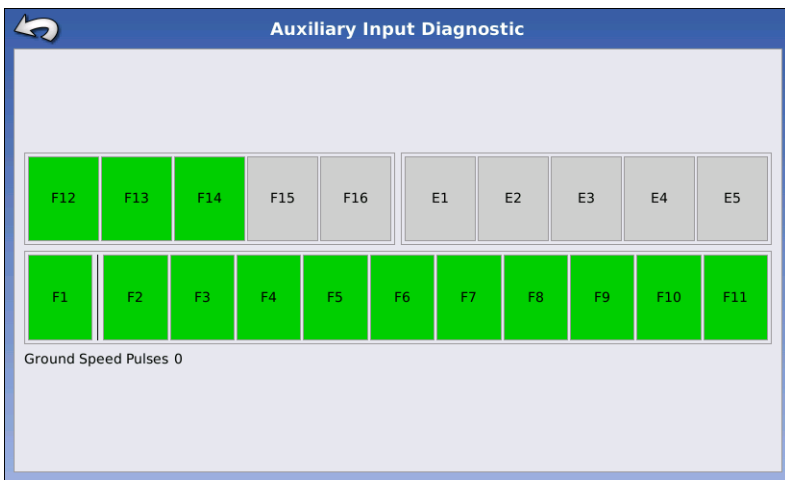
# AUXILIARY INPUT DIAGNOSTICS

The Auxiliary Input Diagnostics screen lists the number of Ground Speed Pulses coming in from the radar to the Auxiliary Module. Additionally, the bottom row of boxes lists the active switches. These color-coded boxes display the following diagnostics:

- **Green**  
The switch box is connected to the Auxiliary Module in the On position.
- **Black**  
The switch box is connected to the Auxiliary Module, but is in the Off position.
- **Grey**  
The switch box is not connected to the Auxiliary Module.



Technical support may request that you look at this screen for help in diagnosing a problem. To get to this screen, press the Display Information button as shown.

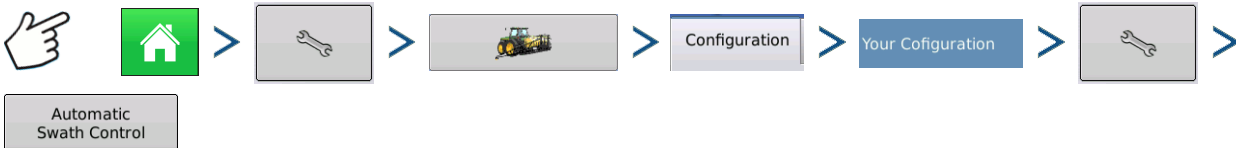


When the Devices screen opens, press the Aux Device listing in the CAN Device list.

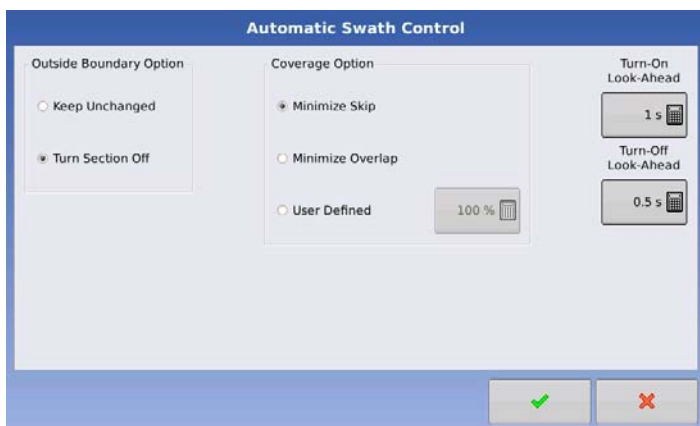


**Note:** The E2 position is the indicator for the foot box.

# AUTOSWATH



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Automatic Swath Control button



The Automatic Swath Control feature turns sections off and on automatically based upon the following conditions:

- Entering and exiting internal and outer field boundaries.
- Entering and exiting previously-applied areas within a field.

At the Configuration Setup screen, press the AutoSwath button. Assuming you are performing a Tillage, Application or Planting operation, the Automatic Swath Control screen appears, as shown.



**Note:** If you are performing a Harvest operation, see *“AutoSwath Sensitivity Settings” on page 228.*

**• Outside Boundary Option**

Select one of the two options to determine system behavior when a section exits a field boundary.

**• Coverage Option**

In the Coverage Option area, you must choose between three options:

- The Minimize Skip option turns off the implement section after the entire section is fully inside your coverage area. This prevents the possibility of skips.
- The Minimize Overlap option turns off the implement section when that section first enters your coverage area. This prevents the possibility of overlaps.
- The User Defined option allows you to choose what percentage of the implement section is within the coverage area before that section turns off. For example, if you choose 50%, then the section will switch off when half of it is within your coverage area.

**• Turn-On Look Ahead**

This setting determines how far ahead the system looks to turn the sections back on. This setting compensates for delay in the planting control system when the implement sections are turned on. To see what these numbers should look like for Row Shutoff Modules, see *“Row Shutoff Look-Ahead Numbers” on page 84.*

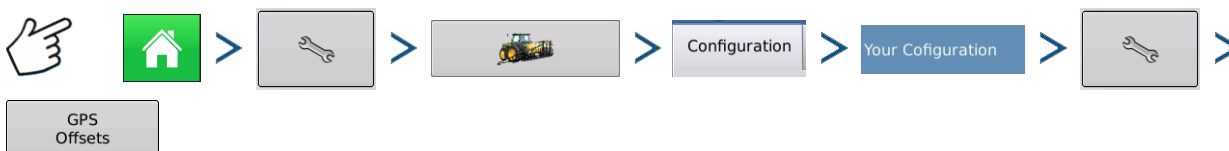
**• Turn-Off Look Ahead**

This setting determines how far ahead the system looks to turn the sections off. This setting compensates for delay in the product control system when the sections are turned off. To see what these numbers should look like for Row Shutoff Modules, see *“Row Shutoff Look-Ahead Numbers” on page 84.*



**Note:** To use AutoSwath for planting operations, you are required to use a 5 Hz or higher GPS output rate. AutoSwath control will not allow sections to be turned on until the master and planting section switches are on. If you have less than a 5 Hz GPS output rate and you select AutoSwath, a warning appears, telling you that AutoSwath Control is not available at less than 5 Hz.

## GPS OFFSETS



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > GPS Offsets button

After completing the process of setting up a Vehicle, you must configure GPS Offsets. The GPS Offsets define where the machine's rear axle and hitch is in relation to the GPS antenna. These settings are used by mapping.

The GPS Offsets settings consist of two tabs: the Antenna Tab and the Hitch Tab.

## ANTENNA OFFSETS TAB

At the Antenna Tab, enter the distance from locations on the vehicle to the antenna.

- Measure and enter the horizontal distance from the rear axle to the position of the GPS antenna. Select IN FRONT or BEHIND to indicate the position of the antenna in relation to the rear axle.
- Measure and enter the horizontal distance from the centerline of the vehicle to the position of the GPS antenna. Select LEFT or RIGHT to indicate the position from the vehicle centerline.
- Measure and enter the vertical height of the antenna above the ground.



**Note:** Accuracy when measuring for a specific setting is essential to ensure proper machine performance.

---

## HITCH TAB SETTINGS TAB

The Hitch Tab allows you to enter in the distance from four different mounting positions on the tractor to the rear axle. Use the numeric keypads to enter these values in if using the hitch point.



**Note:** Accuracy when measuring for a specific setting is essential to ensure proper machine performance.

---

## MOUNT TAB SETTINGS (FOR SOME APPLICATION VEHICLES)

The Mount Tab will only be available when using a self-propelled application sprayer or spreader. This allows you to enter in the application location from the rear axle. Use the numeric keypad to enter in the distance and the drop-down box to select if it is in front or behind of the axle.

## HEAD TAB (FOR HARVEST VEHICLES)

The Head Tab allows you to enter in the distance from the head attachment point to the rear axle. Use the numeric keypad to enter in the distance to the axle.

## SWATH SECTION OFFSETS

After completing the initial process of configuring an implement, you must enter accurate values in the Implement Offsets screen. To configure Implement Offsets, highlight your configuration at the Setup screen, then press the Setup (wrench) tool. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Swath Section Offsets button. The Implement Offsets screen opens. Depending upon your configuration, this screen may consist of up to two tabs: the Section Offsets Tab and the Hitch Offsets Tab.

## Section Offsets

The screenshot shows the 'Implement Offsets' screen with two tabs: 'Section Offsets' and 'Hitch Offset'. The 'Section Offsets' tab is active. It contains two main input sections:

- Enter Left or Right Distance from Centerline:** A numeric keypad showing '0 ft' and a dropdown menu set to 'to the left'.
- Enter Forward or Backward Distance from Hitch Point:** A numeric keypad showing '5 ft'.

An 'Advanced' button is located in the bottom right corner.

- Use the first numeric keypad to enter the distance from the mid-point of the swath section to the machine’s centerline. Select to the left/to the right to indicate the direction the swath section is located from the vehicle centerline.
- Use the second numeric keypad to enter the distance that the swath section is located from the hitch point. Press the checkmark button when finished.



**Note:** Accuracy when measuring and entering implement offsets is required to ensure proper machine performance.

## ADVANCED SECTION OFFSETS

The screenshot shows the 'Implement Offsets' screen with the 'Advanced' button pressed. It displays a table titled 'Swath Section Offset Locations' with the following data:

	Width	F/B Offset	L/R Offset
1	7.500 ft	5.00 ft behind	11.250 ft left
2	7.500 ft	5.00 ft behind	3.750 ft left
3	7.500 ft	5.00 ft behind	3.750 ft right
4	7.500 ft	5.00 ft behind	11.250 ft right

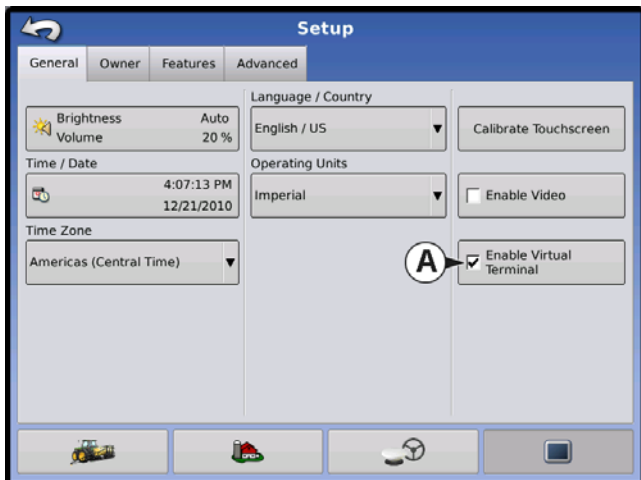
An 'Edit' button is located to the right of the table. At the bottom, a legend reads: 'F / B = Forward or Backward L / R - Left or Right'.

Pressing the Advanced button opens another Implement Offsets screen which shows the swath section offset locations. Press the numeric keypad button to change swath section offset measurements.



# VIRTUAL TERMINAL

## VIRTUAL TERMINAL



The display is compatible with the ISO 11783 (ISOBUS) Virtual Terminal Standard. This enables support of many ISOBUS compliant implements on the display. Virtual Terminal functionality enables the compliant implement's user interface to be viewed and controlled on the display.

## COMMON TERMINOLOGY

- **ISOBUS Working Set**

One or more ISOBUS modules that control an implement's functionality

- **Working Set Master (WSM)**

Main module, handles loading of object pool to VT display

- **Object Pool**

Defines graphical components that ISOBUS modules present on a compatible display.



**WARNING:** Before operating an ISOBUS implement with the display, read the operator's manual provided by the implement's manufacturer and follow all safety information provided in the manual. When this display is used with an ISOBUS implement, the information and functions on the display are provided by the implement ECU and are the responsibility of the implement manufacturer.



**CAUTION:** OnTrac2 can not be used at the same time as Virtual Terminal.

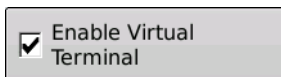
To enable the Virtual Terminal, starting from the Home Page, press:



Setup button (Wrench)




Display button



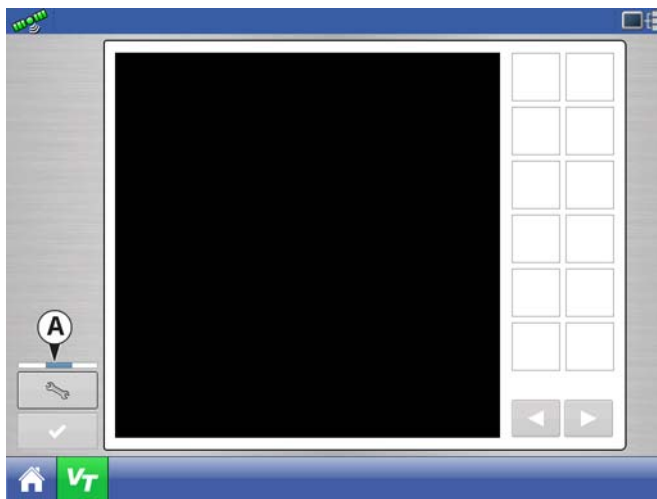
**Enable Virtual Terminal (A)** check box (check should appear in the box)



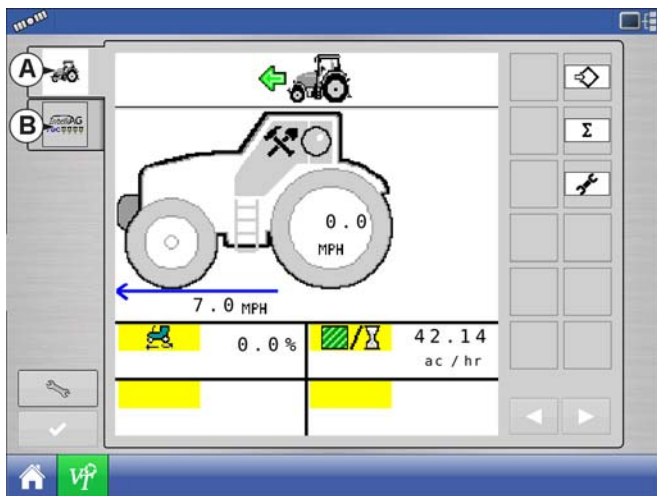
Once a Virtual Terminal has been enabled a **VT**

**button (B)**  will appear in the task bar.

The display has been specifically designed so users can easily toggle between the Virtual Terminal run screen and other display functions by pressing the VT button.




When an ISOBUS compliant implement is connected to the display for the first time, the implement WSM sends its graphic interface, called the Object Pool, to the display. **Status bar (A)** appears while Object Pools are being loaded. This process might take several minutes depending on the number of Object Pools being loaded. Once loaded, object pools are stored in the display memory.



An example of a VT screen with two Working Set Master Object Pools loaded is shown.

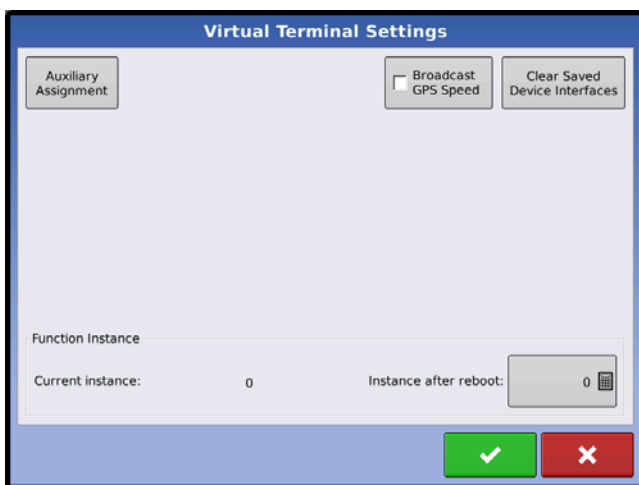
If there are multiple ISO implements connected, the

VT button  appears and allows the user to toggle between Working Sets

The Working Sets can also be accessed by pressing tabs (A) or (B) individually.



Pressing the wrench button on the VT screen takes the user to the Virtual Terminal Settings screen.



• **Auxiliary Assignment**

Allows the user to assign implement functions to ISO compatible inputs.

• **Broadcast GPS Speed checkbox.**

Checking this box allows the implement to use GPS ground speed that has been gathered by the display.

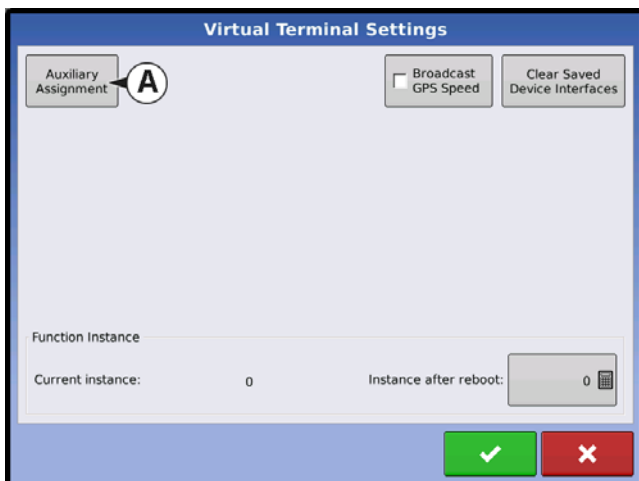
• **Clear Saved Device Interfaces**

Allows operator to clear the Object Pools sent to the display from the implement WSM. After the object pools have been cleared, the next time the implement is connected the object pools will be transferred from the implements WSM to the display again. When this button is pressed, a warning dialogue box appears with the

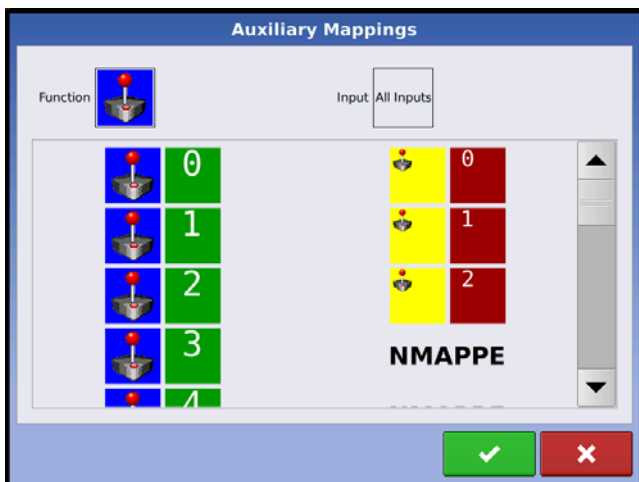
following message:

“Are you sure you want to clear the saved interface files from all virtual terminal devices? Each device will resend its interface the next time it is connected.”

## AUXILIARY ASSIGNMENT



Press the **Auxiliary Assignment button (A)** on the Virtual Terminal Settings screen to access the Auxiliary Mappings screen.



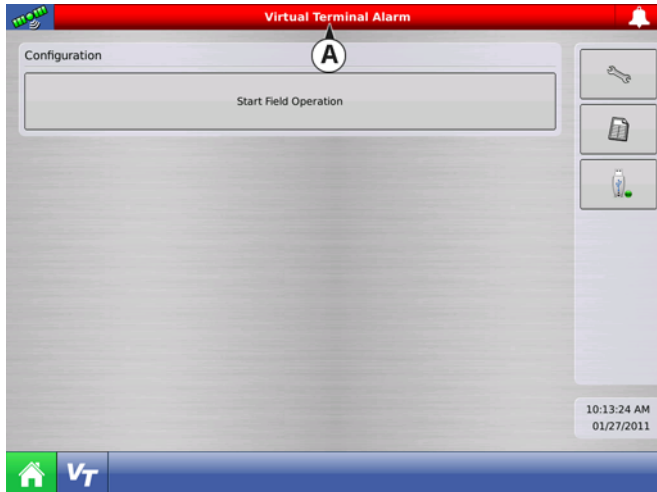
The Auxiliary Mappings screen allows the user to assign implement functions to ISO compatible inputs.

The number of functions and inputs shown on the Auxiliary Mappings screens will vary depending on the implement and input devices connected to the display. An example is shown at the left.



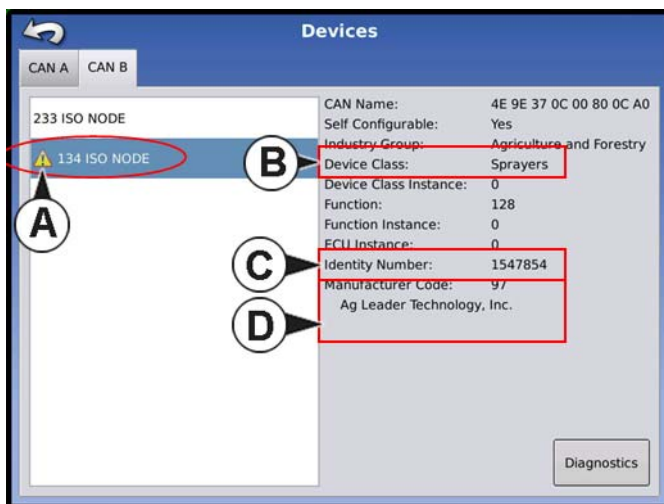
**Note:** Implement functions can not be mapped to Ag Leader switches.

## VT ALARMS AND TROUBLE CODES



If the display receives an active trouble code, the **Virtual Terminal Alarm (A)** will appear in the Status bar at the top of the home screen.

Pressing the alarm will take you to the Devices screen.



The Devices screen displays the following information:

- (A) Caution icon indicates module has active trouble codes (DTCs)
- (B) Equipment Type
- (C) ECU Serial Number
- (D) VT Manufacturer, name and code

**ISO Node Diagnostics**

ECU ID: 5000218\*1547854\*IMPLEMENT\*VT MODULE\*AG LEADER TECHNOLOGY\*

Software ID: ALTECH,VT MODULE;01.00.00.00;VT\_MODULE\_FW; 01.00.00.00;\*

Active Errors:

SPN	FMI	OC
522102	12	1
523666	3	2

Previously Active Errors:

SPN	FMI	OC
522102	12	1
523666	3	2

Clear Prev Active Errors

Pressing the Diagnostics button on the Devices screen brings up the ISO Node Diagnostics screen which shows the following information.

- **SPN**  
“Suspect Parameter Number” = Error Number
- **FMI**  
“Fault Mode Indicator” = Error State.
- **OC**  
“Occurrence Count”
- **DTC**  
Diagnostic Trouble Code

This is a combination of the SPN and the FMI (for example 522102.12).

Cross-reference DTC in equipment manufacturer’s operator manual for description of error.



# GPS

## GPS BUTTON

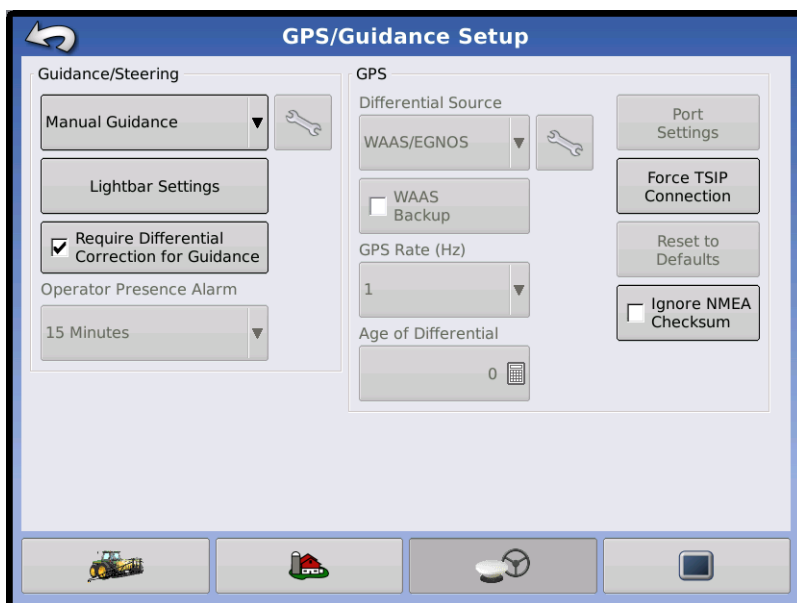


During your field operation, the GPS (satellite) button in the upper left-hand side of the Status Bar should appear as green, which means you are receiving a differential GPS signal. If this icon appears yellow, you are still receiving GPS but are not receiving a differential signal; and if it appears gray then you have lost GPS. In either case, you should check your GPS settings.

## SETUP



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > GPS button



### • Guidance/Steering, Lightbar Settings, and Required Differential Correction for Guidance

For more information, see the Guidance chapter at [“Guidance” on page 73](#).

### • Differential Source

Select choice of WAAS/EGNOS, Satellite (OmniSTAR®) or Beacon (Coast Guard) differential sources.

### • Wrench button

Pressing the Wrench button opens different settings screens, depending on whether you are using OmniSTAR® or Beacon.



**Note:** If using OmniSTAR, see [“OmniSTAR Settings” on page 62](#).

### • GPS Rate (Hz)

The GPS Position Rate drop-down menu represents the cycles per second that the display receives guidance information from viewable satellites. Select one of the available Hz rates from the drop-down menu.

### • Age of Differential

Displays the elapsed time since reception of last differential correction signal. The Age of Differential button is only functional when GPS is connected.

- **Port Settings**

Displays the Serial Port Settings screen, where you can adjust GPS output. For more information, see [“Serial Port Settings” on page 65.](#)

- **Force TSIP Connection**

Forcibly connects to TSIP GPS receiver. Pressing this button will force the port to TSIP communication.

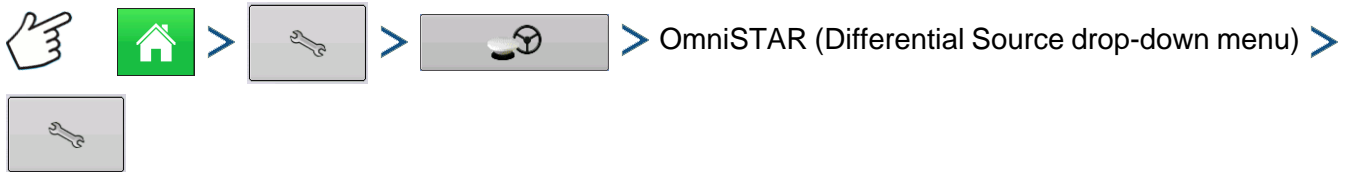
- **Reset to Defaults**

Press the Reset to Defaults button to restore TSIP receiver settings to the factory default. This will remove all custom TSIP settings.

- **Ignore NMEA Checksum**

Check this to ignore intermittent GPS message errors.

## OMNISTAR SETTINGS



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > GPS button > OmniSTAR (Differential Source drop-down menu) > Setup (wrench) button



**Note:** If using the GPS 2500 receiver, see [“OmniSTAR Settings — GPS 2500” on page 63.](#)

The screenshot shows the 'OmniSTAR Setup' screen. It has a blue header with the title 'OmniSTAR Setup'. Below the header, there are two main sections. The left section is titled 'Serial Number' and contains a text input field with the value '0224019369'. Below this is the 'Differential Source' section with three radio button options: 'VBS' (which is selected), 'HP/XP', and 'HP/XP with VBS Backup'. At the bottom of this section is a checkbox labeled 'AutoSeed Fast Restart'. The right section is titled 'Provider Settings' and contains three fields: 'Frequency' with a dropdown menu showing 'Central USA (MSV-C)', 'Custom Frequency' with a text input field containing '1557.835' and a calculator icon, and 'Baud Rate' with a dropdown menu showing '1200'. At the bottom center of the screen is a green checkmark button.



**Note:** The use of OmniSTAR® differential requires purchase of a subscription from OmniSTAR. Settings related to using satellite differential correction vary based upon your geographic location. Setup details are explained on the following pages. More specific information can be obtained by contacting OmniSTAR.

- **Serial Number/OmniSTAR User ID**

This box shows the serial number of your receiver. It may also display your OmniSTAR User ID.



**Note:** You will need to know this number when contacting OmniSTAR in order to set up the receiver.

### • Differential Source

The choices include VBS, HP/XP, and HP/XP with VBS backup. These three options are described below.

- VBS - OmniSTAR VBS (Virtual Base Station) is a "sub-meter" level of service.
- HP/XP - The OmniSTAR XP service is more accurate than VBS, but slightly less accurate than HP. It provides short-term accuracy of a few inches and long term repeatability of better than 20 centimeters. The OmniSTAR HP (High Performance) service is the most accurate of the three options.
- HP/XP with VBS backup - If this option is chosen, and you lose your HP/XP signal, your receiver will automatically switch to VBS.

### • Frequency

In the Frequency drop-down list box, select the geographic region where you are located. If you wish to enter a Custom Frequency, select Custom. Then enter the frequency number in the text box below.



**Note:** The display does not come with custom frequency numbers. Enter a number only if directed to by OmniSTAR.

### • Baud Rate

The baud rate represents the speed at which your receiver obtains information from the satellite.



**Note:** You should always keep the baud rate set at 1200.

### • AutoSeed Fast Restart

Checking this box before the vehicle is shut down allows the receiver to utilize shutdown time to acquire the appropriate satellites in order to ensure a quick and efficient startup. This reduces the time taken for satellite convergence after startup, and thus increases accuracy in the field.



**Note:** To get the most benefit from AutoSeed technology, you should shut down the vehicle in a place where the receiver has a clear view of the sky. Do not move the vehicle before powering up again.

## OMNISTAR SETTINGS — GPS 2500



OmniSTAR (Differential Source drop-down menu) >



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > GPS button > OmniSTAR from Differential Source drop-down menu > Setup (wrench) button



**Note:** The use of OmniSTAR® differential requires purchase of a subscription from OmniSTAR. Settings related to using satellite differential correction vary based upon your geographic location. Setup details are explained on the following pages. More specific information can be obtained by contacting OmniSTAR.

#### • Serial Number/OmniSTAR User ID

This box shows the serial number of your receiver. It may also display your OmniSTAR User ID.



**Note:** You will need to know this number when contacting OmniSTAR in order to set up the receiver.

#### • Differential Source

The choices include VBS, HP/XP, and HP/XP with VBS backup. These three options are described below.

- VBS - OmniSTAR VBS (Virtual Base Station) is a "sub-meter" level of service.
- HP/XP - The OmniSTAR XP service is more accurate than VBS, but slightly less accurate than HP. It provides short-term accuracy of a few inches and long term repeatability of better than 20 centimeters. The OmniSTAR HP (High Performance) service is the most accurate of the three options.

#### • Fast Restart

Checking this box before the vehicle is shut down allows the receiver to utilize shutdown time to acquire the appropriate satellites in order to ensure a quick and efficient startup. This reduces the time taken for satellite convergence after startup, and thus increases accuracy in the field.



**Note:** To get the most benefit from Fast Restart, you should shut down the vehicle in a place where the receiver has a clear view of the sky. Do not move the vehicle before powering up again.

#### • GGA (GLONASS)

Checking this box allows the additional GLONASS satellites to be displayed in the GGA message.

#### • AutoTune Frequency check box

Receiver will automatically select the strongest frequency.

- **Frequency**

In the Frequency drop-down list box, select the geographic region where you are located. If you wish to enter a Custom Frequency, select Custom. Then enter the frequency number in the text box below.



**Note:** The display does not come with custom frequency numbers. Enter a number only if directed to by OmniSTAR.

- **Baud Rate**

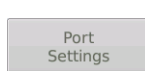
The baud rate represents the speed at which your receiver obtains information from the satellite.



**Note:** You should always keep the baud rate set at 1200.

- **Convergence Threshold**

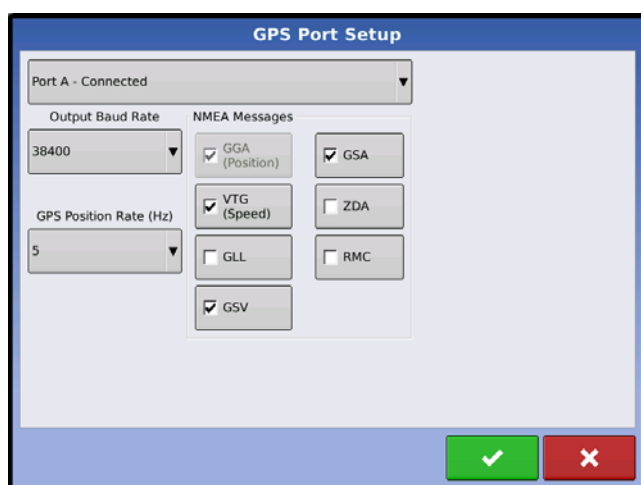
## SERIAL PORT SETTINGS



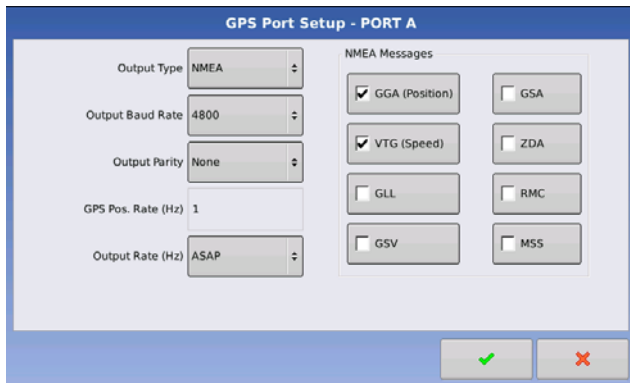
Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > GPS button > Port Settings



The Serial Port Settings screen is the place where you can adjust GPS output. The appearance of the Serial Port Settings screen varies depending upon your model of GPS receiver. Shown to the left is the Serial Port Settings screen as it would appear for an operator of a GPS 1500 antenna.



Shown to the left is the Serial Port Settings screen as it would appear for an operator of a GPS 2500 antenna.



,The appearance of this TSIP receiver GPS Port Setup screen is the same for both Ports A and B.

- **Output Type**

Displays what type of protocol the receiver is using. (NMEA or TSIP).

- **Output Baud Rate**

Displays the speed at which the receiver communicates with the display. For optimal performance, the GPS baud rate should be set at 192000 or higher.

- **Output Parity**

Displays either Odd or None.

- If using TSIP, this setting should be Odd.
- If using NMEA, this setting should be None.




---

**Note:** Parity refers to a technique for checking data integrity after transmission.

---

- **GPS Pos. Rate (Hz)**

Represents the cycles per second (shown in Hz) that the display receives position information from viewable satellites. (This is the same number as shown on GPS Rate (Hz) drop-down list menu located on the General Tab).

- **Output Rate (Hz)**

Represents the cyclical rate (in Hz) at which the receiver sends information to the display. This field shows a value of either 1 or ASAP.

- The default rate is 1 Hz.
- ASAP represents a Hz value of more than 1.

- **NMEA Messages**

These checkboxes represent various communication protocols or formats that have been set by the National Marine Electronics Association (NMEA), and used in information "strings" or sentences output by the GPS Receiver. At present, the display only requires two NMEA Message formats: GGA and VTG.

- GGA: This NMEA message format is the data fix that establishes your position in longitude and latitude.
- VTG: This NMEA message format stands for ground speed (velocity) in area over distance
- GLL, GSV, GSA, ZDA, RMC, MSS: Leave these other NMEA message formats unchecked, unless you are connected to a third-party monitor and have been directed to do so.




---

**Note:** The GSV and GSA settings must be checked in order to view the Satellite Plot.

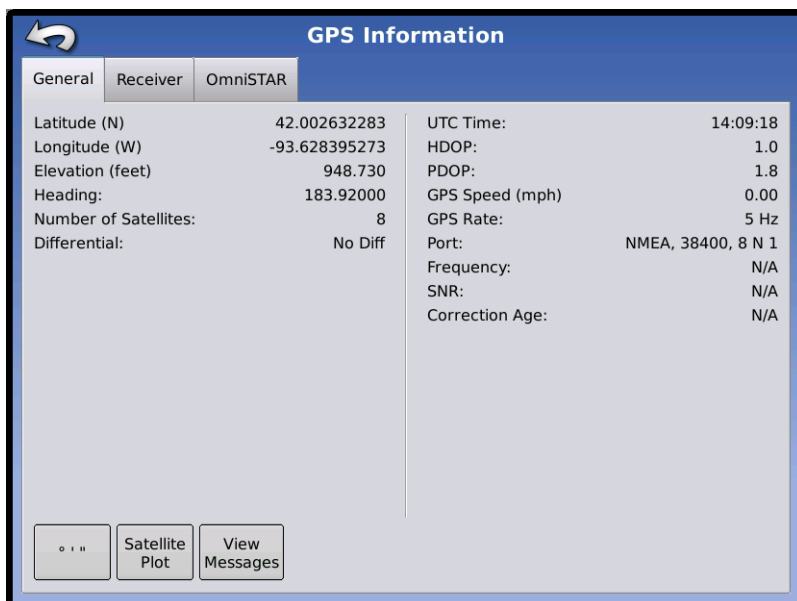
---

# GPS INFORMATION



To access diagnostic information about the GPS signal, press the GPS (satellite) button that appears in the in the upper left-hand side of the Status Bar. GPS Information then appears on General, Receiver, and OmniSTAR tabs. Information on these GPS Information screens is described on the following pages.

## GPS INFORMATION - GENERAL TAB



### • Latitude, Longitude, Elevation

Displays current position (in longitude and latitude) and elevation.

### • Heading

Displays degree heading of travel.

### • Differential

If a TSIP receiver is being used, the differential status will display the differential source, (i.e. WAAS, Beacon or OmniSTAR). This message field will display either Diff On or Diff Off.

- Diff On: Indicates the receiver is receiving a differential GPS signal.

- Diff Off: Indicates the receiver is not receiving a differential GPS signal.

Otherwise, if RTK or NTRIP is being used, the differential status will display one of the following status messages:

- RTK Fixed: The ParaDyme roof module is receiving a Valid RTK differential source.
- RTK Float: The ParaDyme roof module is receiving information from the Base Station, but the signal is not strong enough for an RTK fix.

### • Differential Status

Displays for RTK or NTRIP users. Messages shown are either Ready for Steering or Not Ready for Steering.



### • Change Longitude/Latitude Format

Pressing this button changes the Longitude/Latitude format. These can either be shown in Degrees, Minutes and Seconds; or Decimal Degrees.

### • View Messages

To view the NMEA or TSIP messages coming from the receiver, press the View Messages button.

### • UTC Time

UTC is an acronym for Coordinated Universal Time, a high-precision atomic time standard that defines local time throughout the world. Different versions of universal time use atomic clocks to correct for irregularities in the Earth's rotation and orbit. UTC is used in navigation, astronomy, aviation, Internet broadcasts, and amateur radio. If you are receiving information from the satellite, then the UTC Time should automatically update.

### • HDOP

Horizontal Dilution of Precision (HDOP) indicates the quality of the horizontal GPS position. Lower HDOP numbers are optimal, higher numbers are undesirable.

- **PDOP**

Position Dilution of Precision (PDOP) is a unitless measure indicating when the satellite geometry can provide the most accurate results. When satellites are spread around the sky, the PDOP value is low and the computed position is more accurate. When satellites are grouped close together, the PDOP is high and the positions are less accurate. Lower PDOP numbers are optimal, higher numbers are undesirable.

- **GPS Speed (mph)**

The speed of the vehicle.

- **GPS Rate**

The update rate from the GPS receiver, shown in Hz.

- **Port**

The connection between the display and the GPS as established at a message format and baud rate.

- **Frequency**

The Correction Frequency indicates the GPS satellite frequency used by the receiver.



**Note:** The Correction Frequency diagnostic does not show for WAAS connections.

- **SNR**

If your receiver is using Beacon differential corrections, the frequency and signal to noise ratio (SNR) will be displayed. Signal-to- Noise Ratio (SNR) indicates the strength of the differential correction signal in relation to the amount of background noise that can interfere with signal reception.

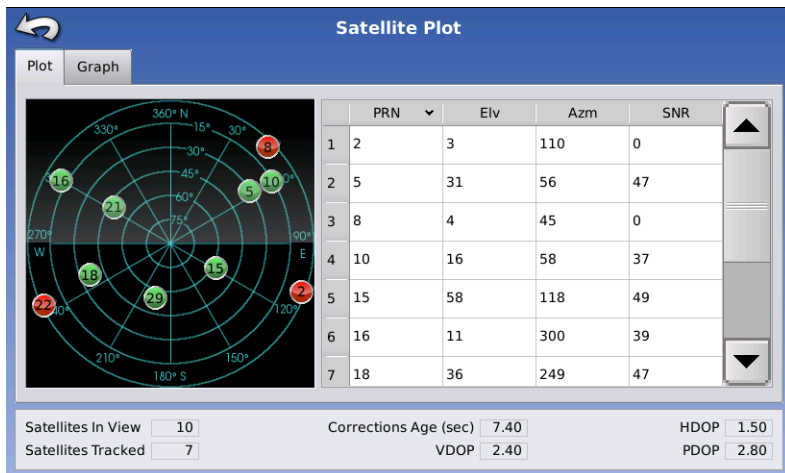
- **Correction Age**

The length of time since the GPS receiver has obtained its last update.



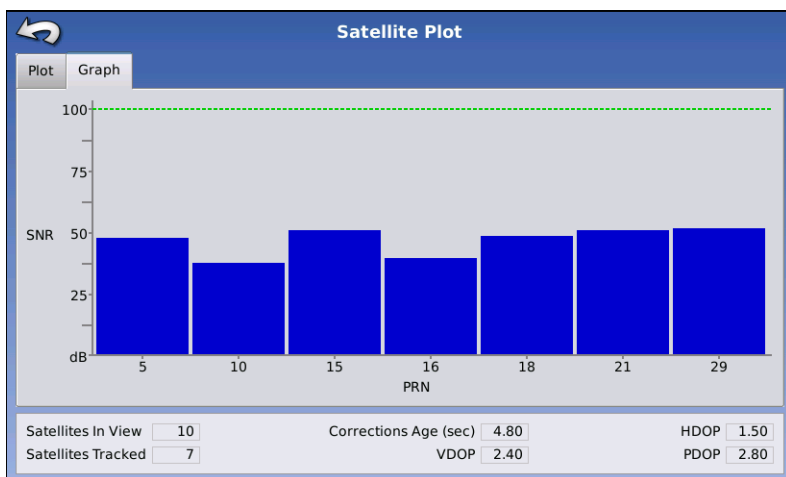
**Note:** The age of the DGPS corrections (as delivered to the GPS receiver) will vary from one second to several seconds, depending on the characteristics of the individual satellite signals.

## Satellite Plot



Press the Satellite Plot button on the General tab of the GPS Information screen, and the Satellite Plot screen appears. The Satellite Plot feature can display either as a plot (as shown to left) or a graph (as shown). The information shown on these screens is used as an advanced diagnostic tool for GPS satellite availability. In the event of GPS availability issues, technical support may request you to view these screens.

Satellite Plot - Graph



**Note:** In order to use Differential GPS, you must have at least four available satellites. In order to use RTK differential sources, you must have at least five available satellites.

## GPS INFORMATION - RECEIVER TAB

GPS Information		
General	Receiver	OmniSTAR
Receiver ID:	GPS 2500	
Firmware Version:	1.5Qx_V9a	
Serial Number:	1802697	
e-Dif Subscription:	ON	
GLONASS:	OFF	

- Receiver ID
- Firmware Version
- Serial Number
- e-Dif Subscription
- GLONASS

## GPS INFORMATION - OMNISTAR TAB



- **HP/XP Expiration Date**
- **HP/XP Time Remaining**
- **VBS Expiration Date**
- **VBS Time Remaining**
- **AutoSeed Fast Restart**
- **AutoSeed Status**
- **Estimated Position Error**

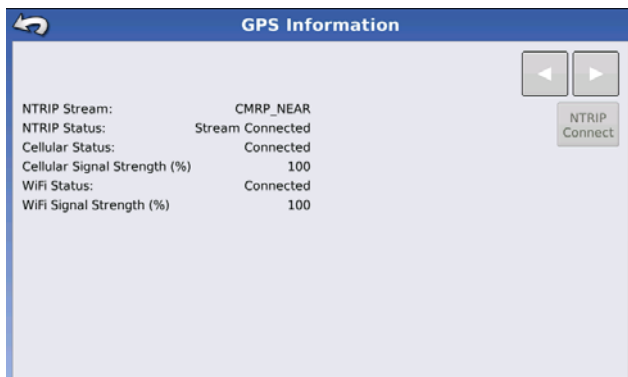
### RTK/NTRIP Information

The following information appears on the second GPS Information screen for users of RTK or NTRIP.

- **Convergence (%)**  
Successful communication between Base Station and ParaDyme Roof Module.
- **Radio Throughput**  
Displays percentage of data received from Base Station.
- **Distance to Base**  
Shows distance to Base Station in miles (kilometers).
- **Base Channel**  
Displays Channel ID of Base Station.
- **NTRIP**  
(Applicable only to NTRIP users). Shows either Connected or Disconnected.

## GPS INFORMATION - NTRIP

Users of the NTRIP guidance system can also view the NTRIP Information screen below, in addition to the GPS Information screens discussed previously.



- **NTRIP Connect**  
Connects the display to the NTRIP correction source.
- **NTRIP Stream**  
Network mount point.
- **NTRIP Status**  
Displays NTRIP connection; either Connected or Disconnected.

- **Cellular Status**

Displays status of ParaDyme cellular modem; either Connected or Disconnected.

- **Cellular Signal Strength (%)**

Displays a number between 0 and 100%.

- **WiFi Status**

Displays status of WiFi router; either Connected or Disconnected.

- **WiFi Signal Strength**

Displays a number between 0 and 100%.



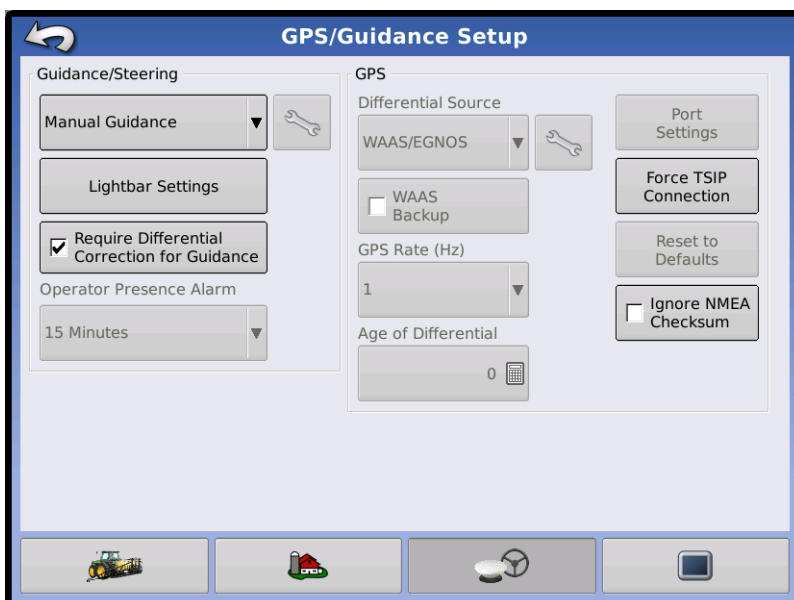
# GUIDANCE

## GUIDANCE/STEERING CONTROL

### SETUP



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > GPS button



#### • Manual Guidance

Select this to perform guidance by lightbar while manually steering the vehicle.

#### • ParaDyme Steering

For more information, see the ParaDyme Insert.

#### • Lightbar Settings

For more information, see [“Lightbar Settings” on page 73](#).

#### • Required Differential Correction for Guidance

When un-checked allows guidance to operate without differential correction.

#### • Operator Presence Alarm

Available for ParaDyme users. The

Operator Presence Alarm disengages guidance control if the operator does not have any interaction with the display for a specified period of time. Use the drop-down menu to specify the period of time before guidance is automatically disengaged.



Pressing the Setup (wrench) button on the Guidance Tab opens the guidance system settings for the selected guidance system.



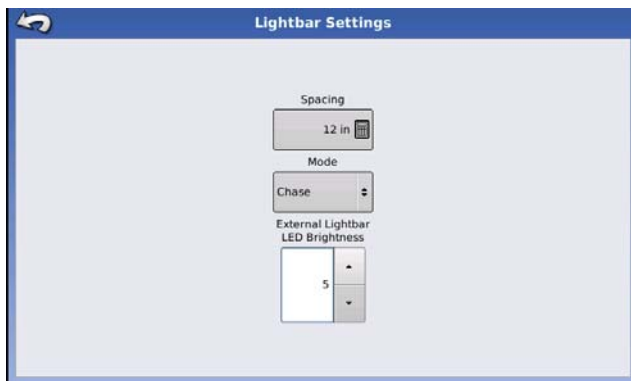
**Note:** In order to use guidance with the display, you must have a GPS receiver capable of a GPS output rate of 5 Hz or more.

## LIGHTBAR SETTINGS

### SETUP



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > GPS button > Lightbar Settings button



To adjust lightbar settings, press the Lightbar Settings button on the GPS Setup screen. The Lightbar Settings screen appears.

- **LED Spacing**

Enter in an amount specifying the distance represented by each square of the lightbar. You can enter in a number ranging between 6 and 72 inches.

- **Mode**

This determines which method to use the GPS information provided on the display's Map screen to center the vehicle on the AB Line. Select either Chase or Pull.

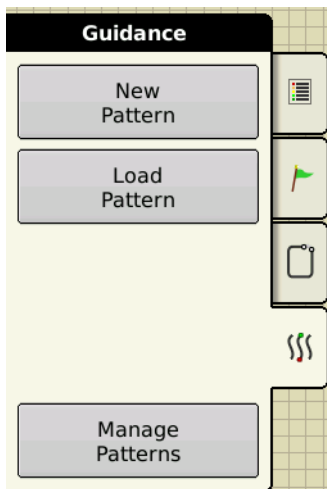
- If you select Chase, then in order to center the vehicle on the AB Line, you must follow the indicator lights on the lightbar.
- If you select Pull, then in order to center the vehicle on the AB Line, you must turn the vehicle in the opposite direction of the indicator lights on the lightbar.

- **External Lightbar LED Brightness**

If applicable, use the up and down arrows to enter in a number specifying the brightness of the LED lights on the optional L160 external lightbar. The number 1 is the dimmest setting and 10 is the brightest; the default setting is 5.

## GUIDANCE TAB ON MAPPING TOOLBOX

The Guidance Tab on the Mapping Toolbox allows you to you can create a new pattern, load an existing pattern, or adjust Guidance Options and Guidance Settings. This tab changes its appearance after you create or load a pattern.



### GUIDANCE TAB - BEFORE ANY PATTERNS CREATED OR LOADED

Before you create any patterns, the map screen's Guidance Tab appears as shown at left.

- **New Pattern**

For more information, see [“New AB Pattern” on page 77](#). Also, see [“About Guidance Patterns” on page 87](#).

- **Load Pattern**

For more information, see [“Load Pattern” on page 82](#).

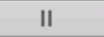
- **Manage Pattern**

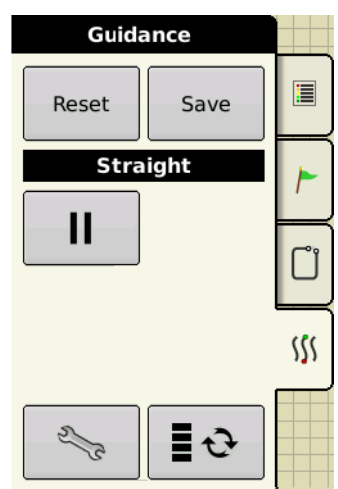
For more information, see [“Manage Patterns” on page 84](#).



## GUIDANCE TAB - NEW A-B PATTERN



After you have pressed New Pattern, the Guidance Tab's appearance changes to that shown at left.

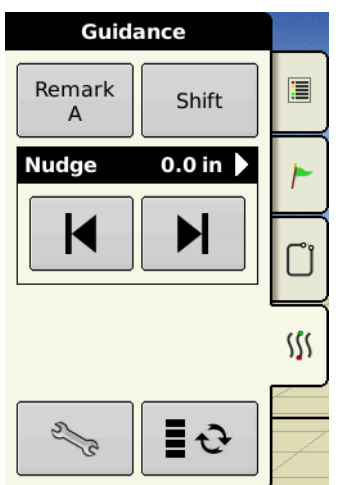
- **Set A**  
Press the Set A button to begin the creation of a pattern.
-  **Pause/Resume**  
Press the Pause/Resume button, appears as two parallel lines, if you wish to interrupt the creation of a pattern. For more information, see ["Pause" on page 85](#).
- **Cancel**  
Press to discontinue the creation of a pattern.



## GUIDANCE TAB- AFTER AB LINE CREATED OR LOADED

Once an AB line has been created, the Guidance Tab changes its appearance to that shown at left.

- **Reset**  
Press to discontinue the current pattern and begin creating another pattern. For more information, see ["Reset Pattern" on page 85](#).
- **Save**  
Press to save the pattern. For more information, see ["Save Pattern" on page 82](#).
-  **Guidance Options**  
Press to adjust Nudge and SmartPath settings. For more information, see ["Nudge" on page 86](#) and also ["SmartPath Guidance Options" on page 81](#).
-  **Menu Toggle**  
Press to toggle between pattern settings and Nudge settings.



## GUIDANCE TAB - NUDGE MENU

If you have specified a Nudge increment at the Guidance Options screen, then you can access Nudge settings by pressing the Menu Toggle button.

- **Remark A**  
The Remark A button "re-marks" the A point by moving it to the current position while maintaining the same heading. For more information, see ["Remark A" on page 85](#).
- **Shift**  
The Shift button moves all of the swaths by a specified distance to the left or right, (including the AB line). The swaths can be shifted by a distance or number of rows. For more information, see ["Load Pattern" on page 82](#).

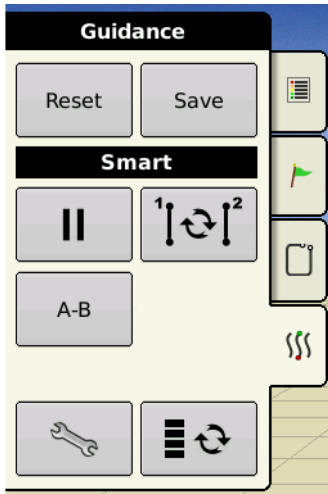
-   **Nudge Settings**

The left and right arrow buttons adjusts the swaths by a specified distance while leaving the AB line in its original spot. This distance then appears in the black bar above the arrows. For information on how to adjust Nudge Settings, see *“Nudge” on page 86*.

## GUIDANCE TAB - AFTER SMARTPATH CREATED OR LOADED



**Note:** For more information on SmartPath, see *“SmartPath” on page 79*.



If you specify SmartPath at the New Pattern screen, then the Guidance Tab will appear as shown at left.

- **Reset button**

For more information, see *“Reset Pattern” on page 85*.

- **Save Pattern**

For more information, see *“Save Pattern” on page 82*.

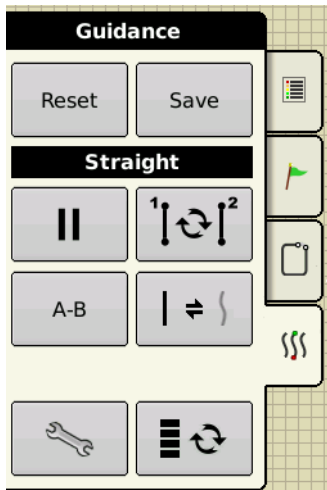
-  **Active Line Cycle button**

Press to cycle between different pattern lines. For more information, see *“Select a Previous SmartPath Pass” on page 80*.

-  **A-B Line button**

Begins the creation of an A-B line within a SmartPath pattern. For more information, see *“Create AB Line Within a SmartPath Pass” on page 80*. and also *“Choose Existing AB Lines Within SmartPath” on page 81*.

## GUIDANCE TAB - AFTER A-B LINE CREATED WITHIN SMARTPATH



If you have created an A-B line within a SmartPath pattern, then the Guidance Tab will appear as shown at left.

-  **A-B/SmartPath Toggle**

Press to cycle between AB lines and SmartPath patterns. For more information, see *“Create AB Line Within a SmartPath Pass” on page 80*.

## NEW AB PATTERN

Use the following procedure to create a new pattern. The following example explains how to create an AB line.



**Note:** Pattern options other than Straight AB are explained in full detail on “About Guidance Patterns” on page 87.

### 1. Press New Pattern

Press the New Pattern button on the Guidance Tab of the Mapping Toolbox.

### 2. Select Pattern

The New Pattern screen appears, as shown.

### 3. Select from the following available guidance patterns:

- **SmartPath**

For more information, see “[SmartPath](#)” on page 79.

- **Straight AB**

- **Pivot**

For more information, see “[Pivot](#)” on page 87.

- **Adaptive Curve**

For more information, see “[Adaptive Curve](#)” on page 88.

- **Identical Curve**

For more information, see “[Identical Curve](#)” on page 89.



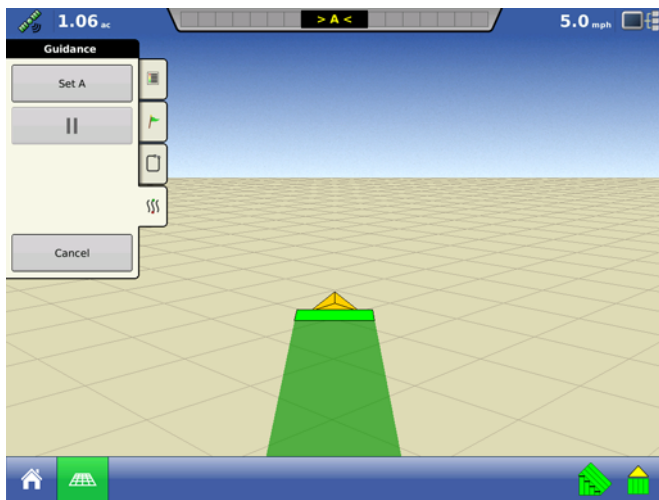
**Note:** If you would like to use an A+ Heading pattern option, check the **Use A+ Heading** check box and use the number pad to enter in the heading (in degrees). For more information, see “[A+ Pattern](#)” on page 87.

### 4. Change Guidance Width (optional)

In addition to these Guidance Options, a default Guidance Width is shown on the upper right-hand side of the New Pattern screen. This Guidance Width is based on the Implement Width that you specified in Implement Configuration. If you wish to change this Guidance Width, enter the new number using the numeric keypad. Press the green check mark button when finished.

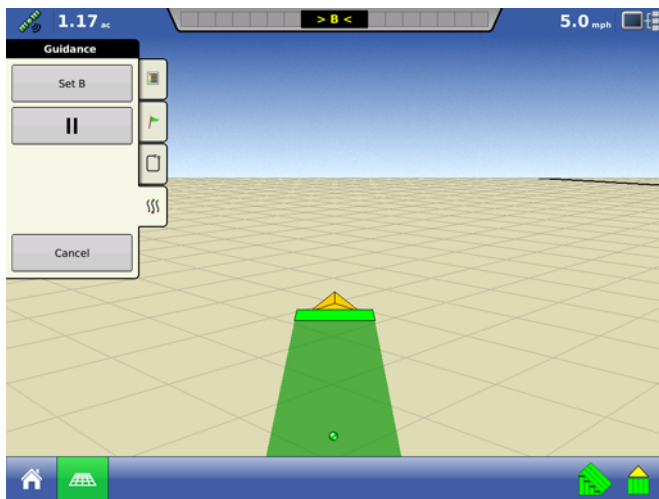


**Note:** Guidance Width allows you to use guidance lines independent of implement width.



### 5. Mark the A Point

The Map screen changes its appearance to Perspective View, as shown. Additionally, the buttons available on the Mapping Toolbox change. Among these new buttons is the Set A button which appears at the bottom of the Mapping Toolbox. Press the Set A button when you wish to mark your A point.

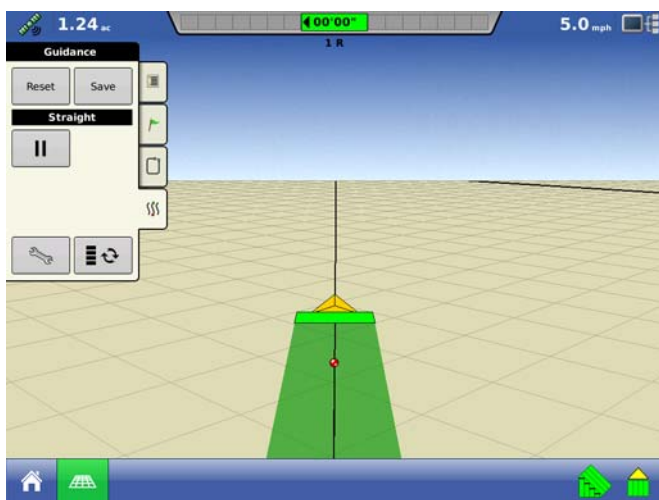


### 6. Drive distance of AB Line

The place where you marked your A point now appears with a green ball, as shown. Additionally, the Set A button now appears as Set B. However the Set B button appears as greyed out, and remains so until you drive a minimum of 100 feet (30 meters).



**Note:** If you are creating a Pivot pattern, you must drive a minimum of 160 feet (49 meters) before marking the B point.



### 7. Mark B Point

Once you have driven a minimum of 100 feet (30 meters), the Set B button appears as a solid text, after which time you can mark a B point. Mark the B point by pressing the Set B button.

### 8. AB Line appears

When you have marked the B point, the AB line appears on the Map screen as shown. The end of the AB line is marked with a red point. At the center of the lightbar, the distance is shown from the current guidance line.

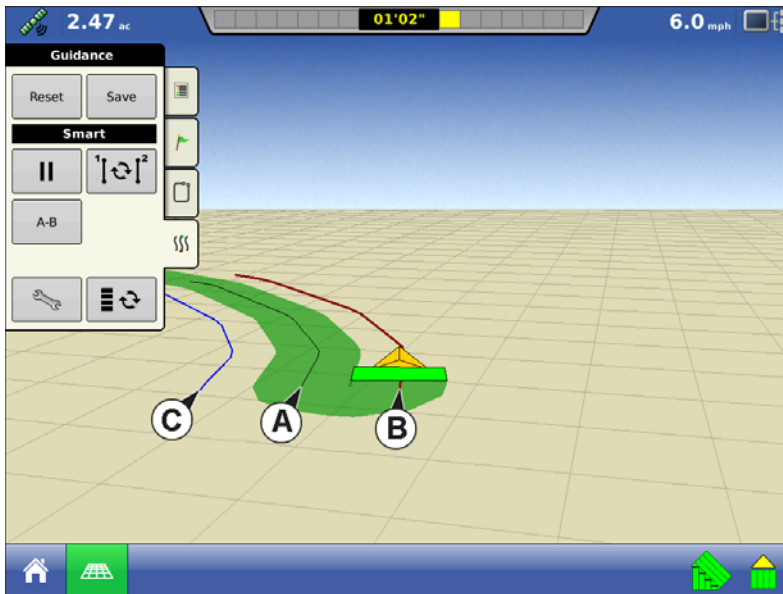
### 9. Create next pass

Turn left or right for the next swath. The next pass is automatically generated. Steer the vehicle so that you center the green lights on the lightbar as you drive forward along the swath.



## 6. Turn Around

After you turn around on your first pass, the system guidance will follow a maroon-colored line parallel to your previously-driven pass. An example is shown in the picture.



As you continue using the SmartPath, the map screen will display three lines:

- **(A) The Base Path**

Appears as a black line, is the initial SmartPath that you created on the first pass.

- **(B) The Followed Path**

Appears as a maroon-colored line, is the path that your vehicle is currently using.

- **(C) The Projected Path**

Appears as a blue-colored line on the opposite side of the Base Path, is an alternate path parallel to the Base Path. The system guidance created this path when you created the Base Path. This is the path that your vehicle would have

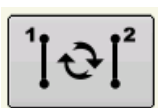
taken if you had turned it in the opposite direction.

- **SmartPath Notes:**

- The Projected Path and Base Path both remain in display memory, unless you press the Reset button without saving the SmartPath pattern.
- Pressing the Save button saves all the SmartPath passes within the display's memory for future use.
- If you drive your vehicle onto the Projected Path, the system guidance uses this as the Followed Path.

## Select a Previous SmartPath Pass

If you have specified SmartPath as your desired pattern, but you are not following an active guidance pattern, the Guidance System automatically begins searching for SmartPath patterns for your use.



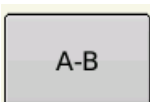
If you wish to use a previously-created SmartPath pattern, you can do so by pressing on the Active Line Cycle button. This button allows you to cycle between available SmartPath patterns.

- **Notes:**

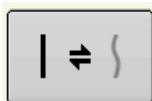
- When the guidance system looks for other available SmartPath patterns, it first displays the nearest-available pass.
- You can adjust the available area in which the Guidance System searches for previously-created SmartPath passes. To do this, adjust the Heading Threshold settings on the Smart Tab of the Guidance Option screen. For more information, see [“SmartPath Guidance Options” on page 81](#).

## Create AB Line Within a SmartPath Pass

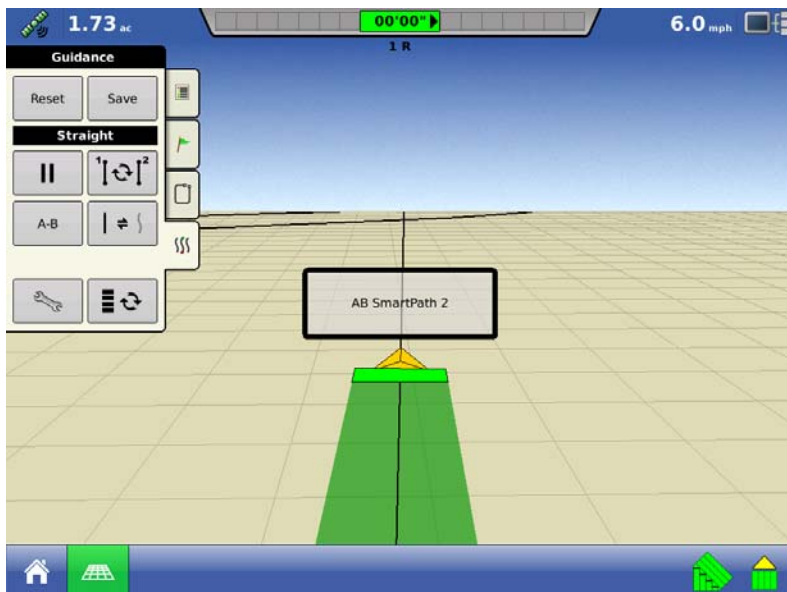
In addition to creating irregular curved passes within SmartPath, you can also create straight AB lines to be used in conjunction with the curved passes. By doing this, you can switch back and forth between a SmartPath and Straight AB pattern.



As you are using a SmartPath pattern, press the AB button. Follow the instructions on creating an AB line as explained in [“New AB Pattern” on page 77](#).



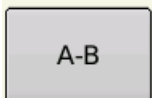
Once the AB line is created, you can switch between the AB line and SmartPath patterns by pressing the AB/SmartPath toggle.



After the Guidance System has switched over to a different path, the name of the currently-followed pattern is shown within a black box on the Map screen, as shown.

### Choose Existing AB Lines Within SmartPath

You can create up to three different AB lines within SmartPath.



Select the desired AB Line by pressing the AB button. The AB Manager screen appears, which shows all AB lines created within a particular field.



An example is shown.



- Highlight the desired AB line, then press the Back button to close the screen.

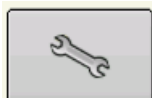
- Press the Add button to add an AB line.

- Press the Load button to load an AB line.

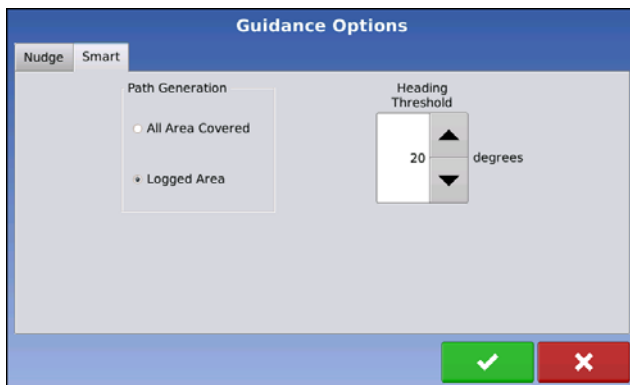
- Press the Edit button to edit the name of an AB line.

- Press the Delete button to delete an AB line.

### SmartPath Guidance Options



SmartPath only creates a SmartPath pass when you are logging data in the field. However, you have the option of using it to create SmartPath passes continually during all field operations.

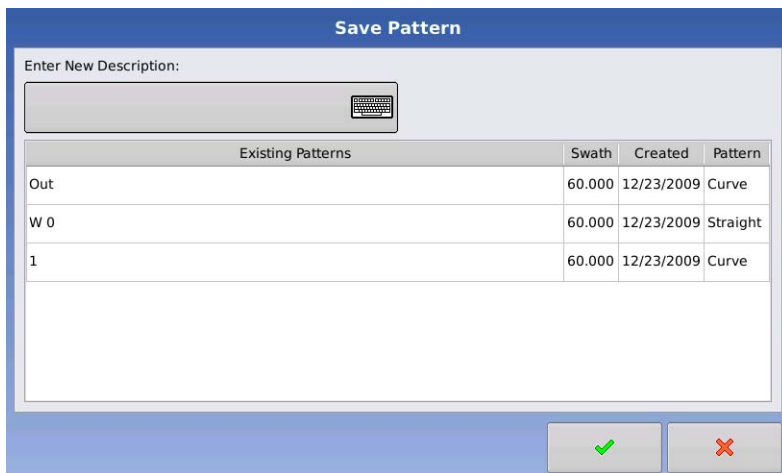


To adjust this setting, press the Guidance Options button on the Guidance Tab. The Guidance Options screen appears. Press the Smart Tab.

- The default setting is **Logged Area**. This setting only creates passes while you are logging field data.
- By selecting **All Area Covered**, you can create SmartPath passes even when not logging field data.
- The **Heading Threshold** setting is the available area that the Guidance System uses to search for previously-created SmartPath passes. The default setting is 20 degrees.

## SAVE PATTERN

You can save a pattern (.pat file) to the display's internal memory to the current field by using the following procedure.



### 1. Press Save Pattern

The Save Pattern screen appears, as shown.



when there is an active pattern.

**Note:** The Save Pattern button will appear

### 2. Name the pattern

Press the keyboard button and enter a unique pattern name. When finished, press the green check mark button.

#### • Notes:

- To verify that the pattern is saved, you can open the Save Pattern screen again by pressing the Save Pattern button. Your newly-saved or named pattern should now appear in the Save Pattern screen.
- You may remove all of the patterns by pressing the Remove All button. A warning appears, stating "All guidance patterns will be permanently erased from memory." If you wish to do this, press the green check mark button to continue.

## LOAD PATTERN

You can load a pattern from the display's internal memory to the current field by using the following procedure.

### 1. Press Load Pattern

Press the Load Pattern button on the Guidance screen.

## 2. Select a Pattern

The Load Pattern screen appears, as shown. Select and highlight the desired pattern. If the pattern you selected was an AB Line, that pattern now appears on the Map Preview. Press the green check mark button to continue.

Name	Swath	Created	Pattern
Out	60.000	12/23/2009	Curve
W 0	60.000	12/23/2009	Straight
1	60.000	12/23/2009	Curve

## 3. Select Guidance Method (optional)

If you have chosen to load a curved pattern, the Autosteer screen appears. Select either Identical Curve or Adaptive Curve.

- (A) Map Preview



**Note:** For more information on Adaptive Curve, see “Adaptive Curve” on page 88.

## 4. Enter Guidance Width (optional)

The Shift Pattern screen appears. The default Guidance Width is shown, based on the Implement Width that you specified in Implement Configuration. If you wish to change this Guidance Width, enter the new number using the numeric keypad. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 5. Select Shift Pattern

The Shift Pattern screen appears, as shown.

- If you have chosen the **Shift by Distance** option, use the numeric keypads to select the distance, in feet and inches, that you wish to shift the pattern. Use the bottom drop-down menu to enter the direction, (either left or right), which you wish to shift the pattern relative to the AB Line. When finished, press the green check mark button.

- If you have chosen the **Shift by Rows** option, use the first numeric keypad to select the number of rows you wish to shift. Next, use the second numeric keypad to select the

row spacing in inches that you wish to shift the pattern. Use the bottom drop-down menu to enter the direction, (either left or right), which you wish to shift the pattern relative to the AB Line. When finished, press the green check mark button.



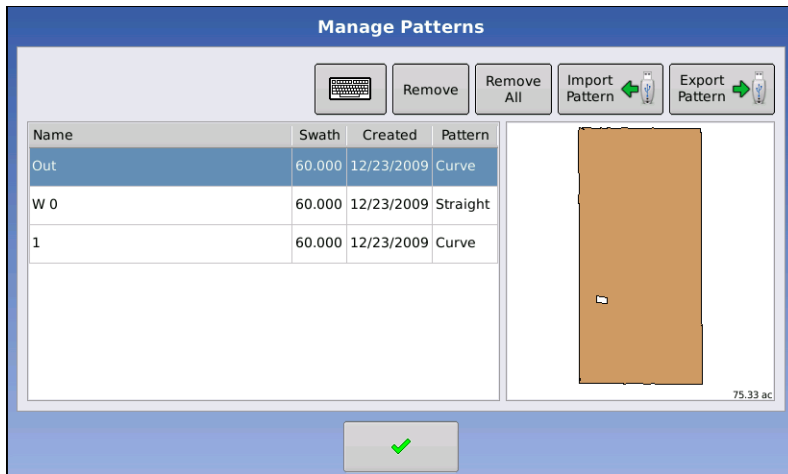
**Note:** For an illustration of the **Shift by Rows** option, see “Pivot” on page 87.

# MANAGE PATTERNS

The Manage Pattern button, located on the Guidance Tab of the Mapping Toolbox, opens the Manage Patterns screen. You can use the Manage Patterns screen to import pattern files, export pattern files, remove pattern files, or edit pattern names.



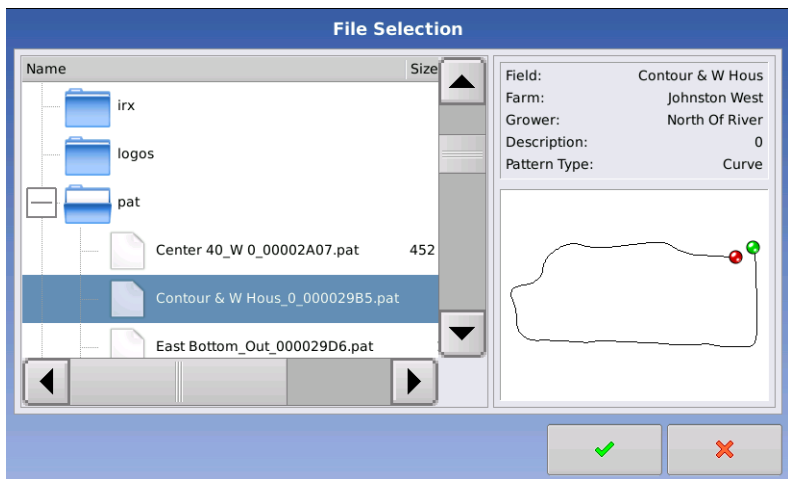
**Note:** You can also import and export patterns at the External Storage Operations button on the Home screen. For more information, see “External Storage Operations” on page 43. If you import or export patterns from the External Storage Operations screen, you will be asked to specify a Grower, Farm and Field.



The Manage Pattern button can be accessed when you are not actively using a guidance pattern.

Press the **Manage Patterns** button, and the Manage Patterns screen appears, as shown at left.

## Import Pattern



To import a pattern (.pat) file from the USB Flash Drive, use the following steps:

### 1. Press Manage Pattern

Press the Manage Pattern button, and the Manage Patterns screen appears, as shown above left.

### 2. Press Import Pattern

Press the Import Pattern button, and the File Selection screen appears, as shown left. Highlight the correct file on the USB Flash Drive. Use the scroll bar to locate the appropriate file folder. Press the green check mark button when finished.

## Export Pattern

To export a pattern to the USB Flash Drive, first press the Manage Patterns button on the Guidance Tab of the Mapping Toolbox. At the Manage Patterns screen, press the Export Pattern button. The Copy to Card screen notifies you that a pattern is being copied. When this process is complete, the Copy Log Files screen informs you that the file has been successfully copied.

## Edit Pattern



If you wish to rename a pattern, first press the Manage Patterns button on the Guidance Tab of the Mapping Toolbox. At the Manage Patterns screen, press the Edit Pattern on-screen keyboard button, as shown at left. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a name for the pattern. The new pattern name now appears in the pattern list of the Manage Patterns screen.

## Remove Pattern/Remove All Patterns

To remove a pattern from the display memory, first press the Manage Patterns button on the Guidance Tab of the Mapping Toolbox. At the Manage Patterns screen, press either:

- the **Remove** button if you wish to delete one pattern file; or
- the **Remove All** button if you wish to delete all of them for the current field.

## PAUSE

The Pause button allows your display to stop logging points along an AB Line. Once this button is pressed, a Resume button will take its place at the Guidance Options screen until you press this button and Pause reappears.



**Note:** If you are using the display to follow a set AB Line and wish to temporarily deviate from this line, you can use the **Pause** button to pause the display's guidance logging activity. This feature could be used, for example, by a vehicle operator who must refill a sprayer. When paused, the display will continue to give the distance back to the original pause point position.

- **Press Pause button.**

Press the Pause button on the Guidance screen. When you do so, the place where you paused appears on the Map screen as a yellow ball.



**Note:** You can pause a pattern even if you have not set the "B" point yet. If you do so, the message in the lightbar will read "Need B." If you pause the pattern after you have set your AB Line, then the lightbar will indicate the distance your vehicle must travel to return to the pause point.

- **Press Resume button.**

To resume your pattern, press the Resume button to resume logging on your AB Line.



**Note:** If you press the Resume button before you have returned to the original AB Line, your display will select the closest AB Line to your vehicle.

## RESET PATTERN

If you have been using an already-saved pattern, and wish to switch over to a different pattern in the same field, you can use the Reset Pattern feature by following the steps below.

### 1. Press Reset

Press the Reset button on the Guidance screen.

### 2. Confirm Reset

The Guidance screen appears, asking you to reset the current guidance pattern. Press the green check mark button to continue.

### 3. Create new pattern (optional)

The pattern is now reset. You may now create a new pattern, if desired.

## REMARK A

If you chose Straight AB or A+ Heading as your pattern option at the New Pattern screen, the Remark A button appears on the Guidance Options screen. The Remark A button "re-marks" the A point by moving it to the current position while maintaining the same heading. A brief message appears in the on-screen lightbar, stating "Point A Remarked."

# SHIFT

For an explanation of the Shift Pattern feature, see [“Load Pattern” on page 82](#).

# NUDGE



Nudge settings allow you to adjust the swaths by a specified distance while leaving the AB line in its original location. You can view the Nudge left and right arrows on the Map screen’s Guidance Tab by pressing the Menu Toggle button, as shown at left. The Menu Toggle button allows you to switch between pattern settings and Nudge settings.



The Nudge screen is where you can make adjustments to Nudge settings. To go to the Nudge screen, press the Guidance Options button on the Guidance Tab.



The Nudge screen appears, as shown.

- Use the numeric keypad to enter an increment distance that the swaths will move with each successive press of the left or right arrows buttons on the Guidance Tab.
- To clear out the adjustment and go to the original position, press **Clear Nudge**.



**Note:** The Nudge setting is only available with SmartPath, AB, A+ and Pivot patterns.

# ADAPTIVE CURVE

If you chose Adaptive Curve as your pattern option at the New Pattern screen (see [“New AB Pattern” on page 77](#), and also [“Adaptive Curve” on page 88](#)) then the Adaptive Curve button appears on the Guidance Options screen. This button opens the Adaptive Pattern Options screen. At this screen, you can choose pattern options that tell the system where to log a new pass. These options include:

- **New Pass**

This sets the conditions for the display to log a new pass. Select either Area Count or Heading Change.

- Area Count generates the next pass, based on coverage area of the previous pass. The display must be logging coverage data in order to generate the next pass.
- Heading Change logs the next pass when the vehicle turns past the heading threshold.

- **Heading Threshold**

Enter in the degree of turning angle that your vehicle will need to make before creating another pass.



**Note:** You should always set the Heading Threshold number past 90 degrees. The default number is 110 degrees.

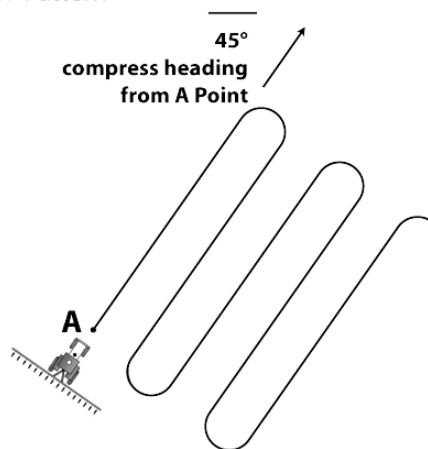
## ABOUT GUIDANCE PATTERNS

The following pages define available guidance pattern other than a SmartPath or a Straight AB Line.

- For a description of a Straight AB line, see [“New AB Pattern” on page 77.](#)
- For a description of SmartPath, see [“SmartPath” on page 79.](#)

### A+ Pattern

A+ Pattern



Similar to an AB line, an A+ line is also a straight line. It is defined by a single point on the line (the A point) and the heading of the line. Use this pattern when you wish to make a straight line based on a compass heading. The A+ line extends 1 mile (1.6 km) before and after the A point.

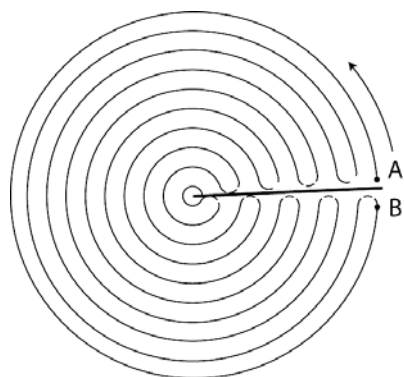
1. At the Guidance screen, press the New Pattern button. Choose Straight AB, and enter a swath width. Press the Use A+ Heading check mark box and enter in a degree number. Press the green check mark button when finished. You will automatically return to the Map screen.

2. To map the start of the first swath, map Point A. The heading of the AB line equals either the previous AB heading of the manually-entered heading (if the current vehicle is within plus or minus 90 degrees of the AB heading). Otherwise, the A+ heading is in the

opposite direction.

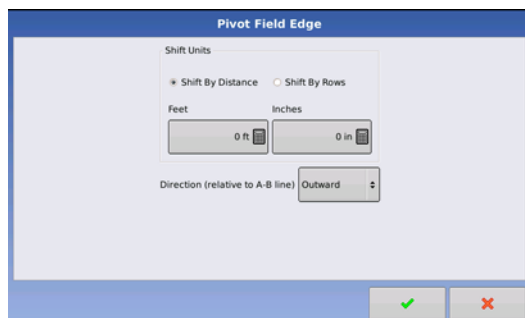
3. Follow the AB line for guidance down the first swath.
4. Turn left or right for the next swath. The next swath is automatically selected.
5. Steer the vehicle so that you center the green lights in the lightbar as you drive forward along the swath.

### Pivot

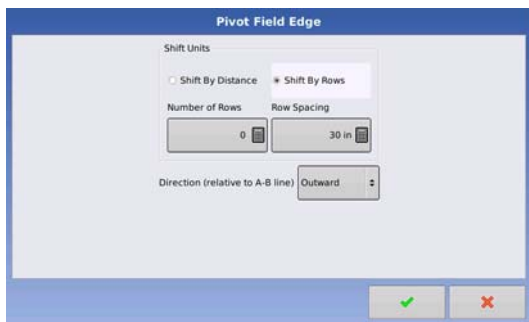


Pivot Pattern

Use the Center-pivot pattern for a field that is irrigated using a center-pivot. With this pattern, you can drive concentric circles around the center-pivot. The display will calculate the center point based on where you have driven. Otherwise, you can enter in the latitude and longitude of the center point, if known.



1. Position one wheel of the vehicle in a pivot wheel rut, with the rear of the vehicle to the pivot arm.
2. To start the pivot, set Point A.
3. Drive around the field. Keep the vehicle wheel in the rut. The lightbar does not yet provide guidance.
4. When you are almost back to the pivot arm or the edge of the field, set Point B.



5. Next, you must set the Field Edge. You may do this when the Pivot Field Edge window appears on your display, as shown left.

From here, you may choose one of three options:

- **Shift By Distance**

This sets the field edge as the distance and direction in relation to the AB Line created. In the Pivot Field Edge Distance portion of the window, enter the distance in feet and inches.

- **Shift By Rows**

This sets the field edge as the number of crop rows multiplied by the number of spacing. In the Pivot Field Edge Distance portion of the window, enter the Number of Rows and Row Spacing.

- **Cancel**

The vehicle uses the driven pass as the AB Line.

6. If you chose **Shift by Rows** in the previous step, use the numeric keypads to enter the **Number of Rows** and **Row Spacing**. Choose the direction relative to the AB Line (either Outward or Inward), and press the green check mark button to continue.

7. Turn left or right for the next swath. The next swath is automatically selected.

8. Steer the vehicle so that you center the green lights in the lightbar as you drive forward along the path.

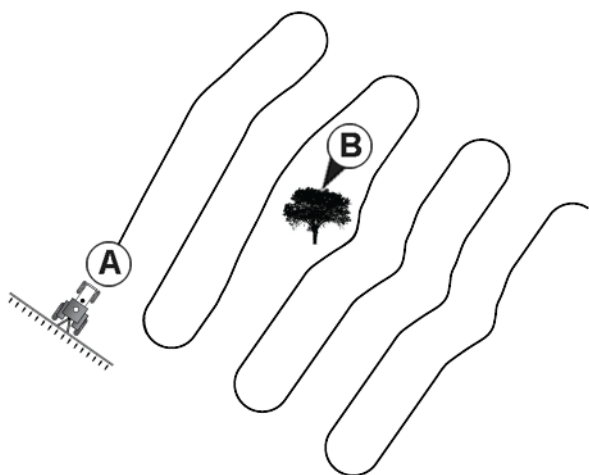


**Note:** To work from the center of the field outwards, the initial pivot must have:

- A radius of at least two swath widths.
- An arc length of at least two swath widths.

9. Press **Engage**.

## Adaptive Curve



Use the Adaptive Curve pattern to follow gentle contours in the field, or when you need to avoid **obstacles (B)**. This pattern provides guidance based on the last curve driven.

1. At the Guidance screen, press the **New Pattern** button. Choose **Adaptive Curve**, and enter a swath width. Press the green check mark button when finished. You will automatically return to the Map screen.

2. At the start of the first swath, **map Point (A)**.

3. Drive the initial curve. At the other end of the first swath.

4. Turn left or right for the next swath. The next swath

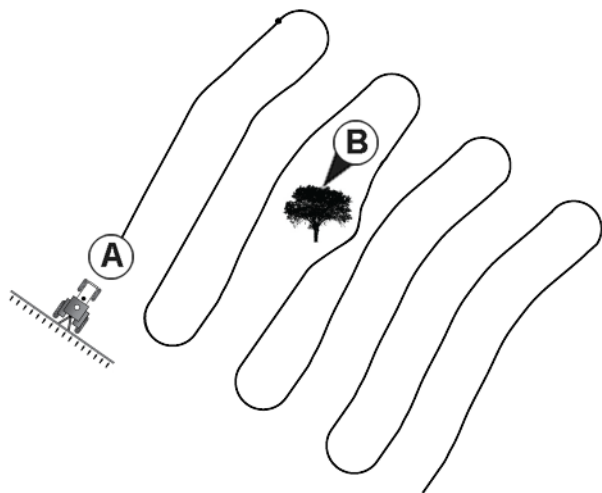
is automatically selected.

5. Steer the vehicle so that you center the green lights in the lightbar as you drive forward along the swath.

## Notes:

- Guidance extends beyond the end of curved swaths. This makes it possible to get LED guidance back onto the swath if the vehicle drives past the end of a swath. The extended swath lines do not appear on screen.
- You can adjust the degree heading at which the system generates the next pass by doing the following: Go to the Guidance screen and press the **Options** button. The Guidance Options screen appears; press the **Adaptive Curve** button. At the New Pass drop-down menu, select **Heading Change**, then use the numeric keypad to enter in the degree number of your Heading Threshold.

## Identical Curve



1. At the Guidance screen, press the **New Pattern** button. Choose **Identical Curve**, and enter a swath width. Press the green check mark button when finished. You will automatically return to the Map screen.
  2. At the start of the first swath, **map Point( A)**.
  3. Drive the initial curve. At the other end of the first swath, map Point B.
  4. Turn left or right for the next swath. The next swath is automatically selected.
  5. Steer the vehicle so that you center the green lights in the lightbar as you drive forward along the swath.
- **(B) Obstacle**



**Note:** Guidance extends beyond the end of curved swaths. This makes it possible to get LED guidance back onto the swath if the vehicle drives past the end of a swath. The extended swath lines do not appear on screen.



# TILLAGE

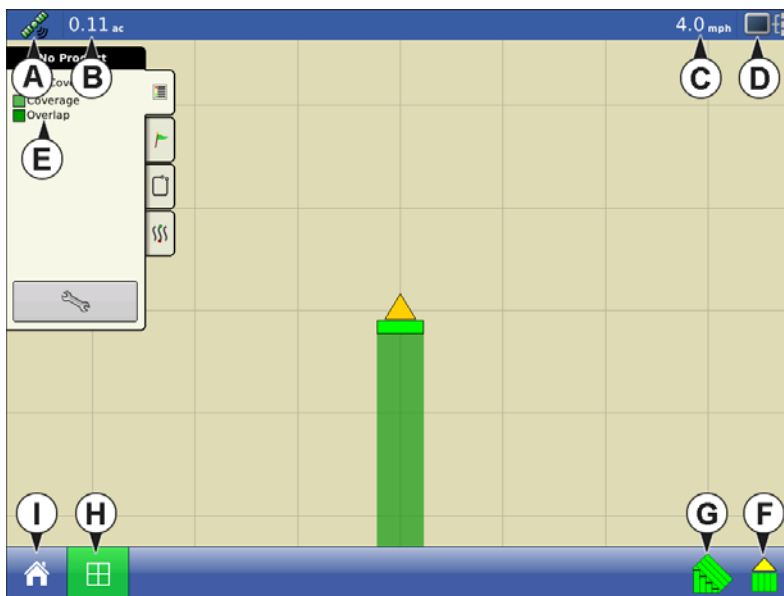
## RUN TIME ENVIRONMENT: MAP SCREEN

The screen shown below is for a Tillage configuration. In order for you to view the Map screen, you must first set up a Season, Grower, Farm, and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23*. Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen. Press the Map View button, and the map screen appears, as shown.



**Note:** Pressing the Map View button will cycle between the available map screen views, and the appearance of the Map View button changes. For additional information on Map screen items, see *“Run screens” on page 27*.

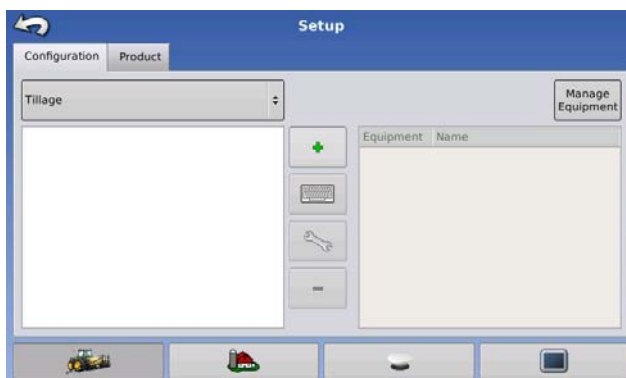
## ABOUT TILLAGE CONFIGURATIONS



- (A) GPS Status
- (B) Total Field Acres
- (C) Ground Speed
- (D) Diagnostics button
- (E) Map Legend
- (F) Logging Status button
- (G) AutoSwath
- (H) Map View button
- (I) Home button



To set up a Tillage Operating Configuration, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen.



1. Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Tillage Configuration. A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a Vehicle and Implement.
2. Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23*.



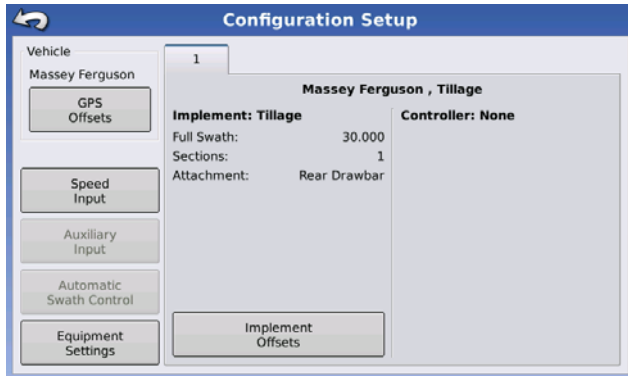
**Note:** You can also use the **Manage Equipment** button to specific vehicles and implements.

## CONFIGURATION SETUP



After creating an operating configuration that includes a vehicle and implement, you must go to Configuration Setup and enter information for your specific operating configuration.

Highlight your particular Operating Configuration in the configuration list shown on the Setup screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button.



The Configuration Setup screen appears. An example is shown; the appearance of this screen will vary depending upon your particular operating configuration.

Depending upon your particular configuration, this process may include the following tasks:

**1. Adjust Implement Switch Settings (if using an implement switch)**

For more information, see *“Implement Switch Settings (for Area Logging)” on page 26.*

**2. Speed Input Setup**

For more information, see *“Speed Input Settings” on page 47.*

**3. Calibrate Distance**

For more information, see *“Calibrate Distance” on page 48.*

**4. AutoSwath settings (if using AutoSwath)**

For more information, see *“AutoSwath” on page 50.*

**5. GPS Offsets**

For more information, see *“GPS Offsets” on page 51.*

**6. Swath Section Offsets**

For more information, see *“Swath Section Offsets” on page 52.*

# CONFIGURATION

## CREATE CONFIGURATION



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > Add (+) button > Planting button

A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a vehicle, implement and controllers. Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23*



**Note:** You can also use the **Manage Equipment** button to view a list of specific vehicles and implements.

## SETUP CONFIGURATION

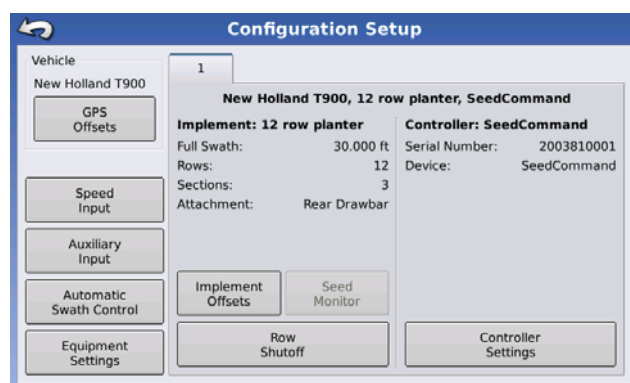


Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button



**Note:** You can also use the **Manage Equipment** button to view a list of specific vehicles and implements.

The Configuration Setup screen appears.



An example is shown; the appearance of this screen will vary depending upon your particular operating configuration. Depending upon your particular configuration, this process may include the following tasks:

### 1. Equipment Settings

- Adjust Equipment Settings (for Rate Control). Users of SeedCommand configurations should adjust settings at the Equipment Configuration Settings screen. For more information, see *“Equipment Configuration Settings for Rate Control” on page 26*.

### 2. Speed Input Setup

For more information, see *“Speed Input Settings” on page 47*.

### 3. Calibrate Distance

For more information, see *“Calibrate Distance” on page 48*.

#### **4. AutoSwath Settings (if using AutoSwath)**

For more information, see [“AutoSwath” on page 50](#). Also see [“Fixing Overplanting and Underplanting in AutoSwath”](#) below.

#### **5. GPS Offsets**

Adjust GPS offsets for the Antenna Tab and the Hitch Tab. For more information, see [“GPS Offsets” on page 51](#).

#### **6. Swath Section Offsets**

For more information, see [“Swath Section Offsets” on page 52](#).

- For information on the Auxiliary Input Settings (Switch Mapping) feature, see [“Auxiliary Input” on page 48](#).

# AUTOSWATH

## ROW SHUTOFF

By configuring your display with Row Shutoff, you can start and stop seed flow and control planter sections row-by-row, allowing AutoSwath Control to automatically turn planter row units on and off based on your planting map.

### ROW SHUTOFF CONFIGURATION SETUP



To set up a Planting Operating Configuration, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen.

#### 1. Create Planting Configuration



Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Planting Configuration. A wizard will guide you through the process of creating a vehicle.

#### 2. Add Implement

After you have completed the vehicle configuration, the Implement Attachment Wizard appears. Press the Add button to add a new implement,

#### 3. Select Implement Options

Use the drop-down menu to select the planter monitor type. Check the Planter Section Row Shutoff checkbox to enable Row Shutoff functionality. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

#### 4. Enter Number of Rows and Spacing

Use the up and down arrows to enter the number of rows and spacing, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

#### 5. Enter Number of Implement Section(s)

Use the up and down arrows to enter the number of clutch sections, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

Notes:

- Do not enter the number of individual rows. Enter the number of swath sections that can be independently turned on and off.
- The Clutch Module Configuration must match the actual number of row sections on the planter. Otherwise, if you try to load a Field Operation at the Field Operation Wizard, you will see a message stating that "The number of detected module outputs does not equal the number of planter sections."

#### 6. Enter Section Widths from Left to Right

The Enter Section Widths from Left to Right screen appears. This screen shows the number of sections and number of rows in your configuration. From here you can:

- Press the blue right-arrow button to continue, or
- Highlight the section number, and use the numeric keypad to change the section row numbers; then press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** The implement is divided up into equal section sizes by default. To modify the sections, press the keypad button for each section that needs to be changed.

## 7. Enter Distance from Hitch to Application Point.

Use the numeric keypad to enter the distance from the implement hitch to the application point (from front to back). When finished, press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 8. Enter Implement Name

Use the numeric keypad to enter a name for the implement, and press the check mark button.

## 9. Select Operation Type

Choose Rate Logging/Control. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 10. Select Controller

Select a controller from the drop-down list, or press the Add button to add a new controller.



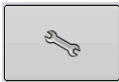
**Note:** You must add a new controller if configuring a **Hydraulic Seed Control** or **Stepper Seed Control** operating configuration.

## 11. Complete the Operating Configuration

The wizard walks you through the final steps of the configuration, in which you can add additional equipment, select a ground speed source, and edit the suggested name for the configuration.

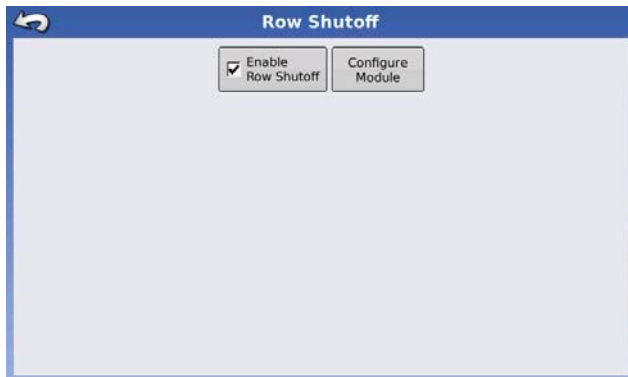
## ROW CLUTCH SETUP

Once you have completed the Operating Configuration, the new configuration appears on the Setup Configuration Tab. The row clutches should be configured correctly. However, if you cannot get a Row Shutoff Operating Configuration to load on the Field Operation Wizard, or if your vehicle does not appear on the Map screen, you may wish to check if the row clutches have been correctly set up in Implement Setup. Use the following procedure to enable Seed Row Shutoff and/or configure the Clutch Module.



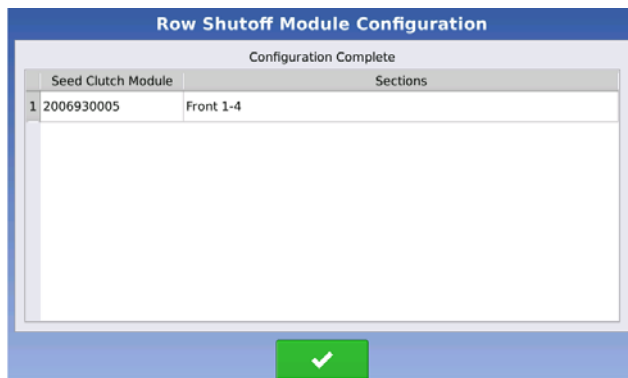
1. At the Setup Configuration Tab, highlight the Operating Configuration name and press the Setup (wrench) button

2. Press the **Row Clutch Setup** button, and the Row Clutch Setup screen appears.



3. If you created an operating configuration with Row Shutoff, the **Seed Row Shutoff** check box should be selected. If it is not selected, press the **Seed Row Shutoff** check box to enable clutches.

4. If you still cannot get the Row Shutoff Operating Configuration to load on the Field Operation Wizard, you may wish to configure the clutch module. Press the **Configure Module** button.



5. The Row Shutoff Module Configuration screen appears. This screen shows the number of Row Shutoff Modules and the sections that each module controls.

## ROW SHUTOFF LOOK-AHEAD NUMBERS

This table references the Turn-On Look-Ahead and Turn-Off Look-Ahead numbers for both Electric Clutch and Air Row Shutoff Modules.

Planter Unit Seed Meter Type	On/Off	Electric Clutch	Air Clutch
Finger Units	Turn On	0.9	1.1
	Turn Off	0.3	0.3
Vacuum	Turn On	0.9	1.1
	Turn Off	0.4	0.4



**Note:** Using the above settings will produce accurate field results. However, always take the time to check for proper seed placement in the field and make system setting adjustments as needed. Do not rely solely upon the appearance of the On-Screen map. The on screen map will not show gaps and overlaps caused by incorrect GPS Offsets or AutoSwath Look-Ahead settings.

## CHECKING AUTOSWATH PERFORMANCE FOR ROW SHUTOFF

The settings given in the above AutoSwath look-ahead table shown previously have been tested with each clutch and seed meter combination to work for your planter. However, always take the time to check for proper seed placement in the field and make system setting adjustments as needed. Do not rely solely upon the appearance of the On-Screen map. The on screen map will not show gaps and overlaps caused by incorrect GPS Offsets or AutoSwath Look-Ahead settings. Verify settings with the following procedure:

1. Stop the planter within 20 feet of the planted headland.
2. Select one row unit from each planter swath section to observe.
3. Remove the down pressure from the closing wheel of each selected row unit.
4. Hold the closing wheels off the ground by attaching a chain or strap from the hopper support panel to the closing wheel arm. (This prevents the closing wheels from closing the seed trench).  
Securing these closing wheels up allows you to observe the planted seed in the trench so that you can observe when the AutoSwath is turned off and on during the seed application.
5. Resume planting in your normal fashion, then stop when you are 20 feet out of the headland of the next pass.
6. Stop the planter and observe the AutoSwath shutting off and turning on to see if the results are acceptable.
  - If the results are correct, then return the closing wheels to their previous operational state. Close the seed trench on the observed rows and return to planting.
  - If you suspect the results are incorrect, then adjust the appropriate look-ahead setting one-tenth (.1) second per trial. When making changes to the look-ahead settings, make sure to adjust these settings only one-tenth (.1) second per trial. Larger adjustments can cause unintentional large changes in the AutoSwath's performance. When adjusting the look-ahead numbers from the suggested settings, it is recommended that you observe multiple trials to confirm the operations' accuracy.
  - If you encounter overplanting or underplanting problems, see ["Fixing Overplanting and Underplanting in AutoSwath" on page 98.](#)

# FIXING OVERPLANTING AND UNDERPLANTING IN AUTOSWATH

## AutoSwath Function — Turn Off Look Ahead

Problem — Overplanting

Recommended Action — Increase look-ahead number

Result — The AutoSwath anticipates headlands sooner and turns the planter off sooner.

Problem — Underplanting

Recommended Action — Decrease look-ahead number

Result — The AutoSwath anticipates headlands later and turns the planter off later.

## AutoSwath Function — Turn On Look Ahead

Problem — Overplanting

Recommended Action — Decrease look-ahead number

Result — The AutoSwath anticipates headlands later and turns the planter on later.

Problem — Underplanting

Recommended Action — Increase look-ahead number

Result — The AutoSwath anticipates headlands sooner and turns the planter on sooner.

# RATE CONTROL

## HYDRAULIC SEED RATE CONTROL

The Hydraulic Seed Control Module allows operators to control up to three hydraulic motor drives with the display. Configure the Hydraulic Seed Rate Control module in the following order.

### 1. Configure Hydraulic Seed Rate Control module

See *“Hydraulic Seed Rate Control Configuration” on page 99.*

### 2. Enter Controller Settings

Include the Max Meter Speed, Gear Ratio and Minimum Allowable Ground Speed. See *“Controller Settings for Hydraulic Seed Rate Motor Drives” on page 100.*

### 3. Prime the Hydraulic Seed Meter

This fills the seed meter with seed, and thus allows you to avoid skips in your field. See *“Priming Seed Rate Meters” on page 109*

### 4. Meter Calibration

- a. Enter Meter Calibration Number. This number, representing seeds per revolution, is set according to the number of seed dropped per one revolution of the seed meter. For more information, *“Calibrating Seed Rate Meters” on page 109*
- b. Perform a Seed Meter Calibration (not always required). A new calibration should be performed if your as-applied seed rate does not match the actual population planted. For more information, *“Calibrating Seed Rate Meters” on page 109*

## HYDRAULIC SEED RATE CONTROL CONFIGURATION



To set up a Planting Operating Configuration using a Hydraulic Seed Rate Control, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen.

### 1. Create Planting Configuration



Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Planting Configuration. A wizard will guide you through the process of creating a vehicle.

### 2. Add Implement

After you have completed the vehicle configuration, the Implement Attachment Wizard appears. Using the drop-down box, select the implement you would like to use in this configuration. If there are no implements in the list, press the Add button. Use the wizard to add a new implement, and select the implement attachment method.

### 3. Select Operation Type

Select the Rate Logging/Control operation type. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Select Controller

Press the Add button and use the Controller Setup Wizard to create a controller.

### 5. Select Device and Seed Command Type

After pressing the Add button, the Controller Setup Wizard appears. Use the drop-down menus to select SeedCommand as your device. Use the bottom drop-down menu to select Hydraulic Seed Control as the SeedCommand Type. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 6. Enter number of drives

Use the up and down arrows to enter in the number of hydraulic drives on your planter. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 7. Enter suggested controller name

A suggested controller name appears. If necessary, use the on-screen keyboard to edit the name of the controller.

## 8. Complete the Operating Configuration

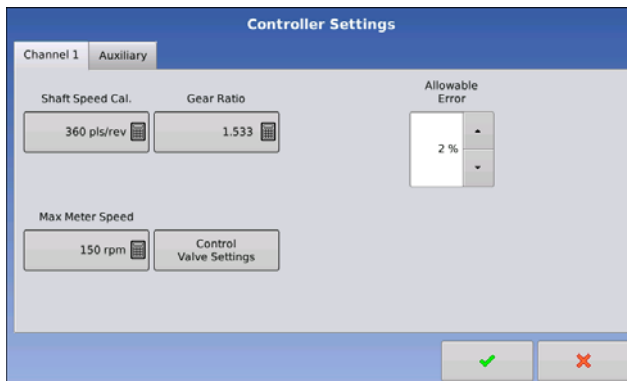
The wizard walks you through the final steps of the configuration, in which you can add additional equipment, select a ground speed source, and edit the suggested name for the configuration.

# CONTROLLER SETTINGS FOR HYDRAULIC SEED RATE MOTOR DRIVES



After creating an Operating Configuration for the Hydraulic Seed Meter Controller, you may make settings changes in the Controller Settings screen, which shows valve settings for hydraulic flow and pulses per revolution. To access the Controller Settings screen, highlight your configuration in the Configuration Tab, and press the Setup (wrench) button. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Controller Settings button. The Controller Settings screen consists of at least two tabs: the Channel Tabs, shown for each channel that you are controlling; and the Auxiliary Tab, which is described at *“Auxiliary Tab settings” on page 101*.

## Channel Tab settings



### • Shaft Speed Cal

Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the hydraulic motor.

### • Max Meter Speed

Setting determines the maximum RPM of the seed meter.

### • Gear Ratio

Ratio of the revolutions of the hydraulic drive as compared to one revolution of the seed meter.

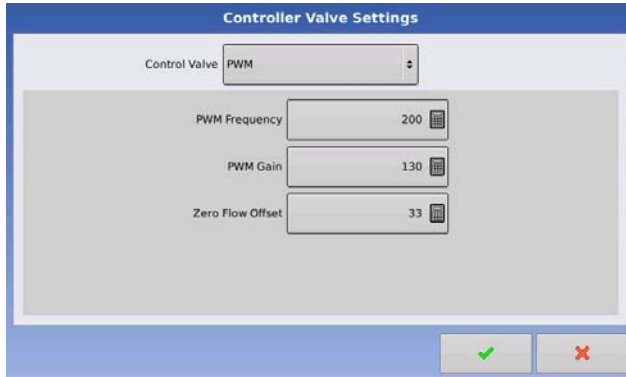
### • Allowable Error

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes.

### • Control Valve Settings

This button summons the Control Valve Settings screen. The appearance of the Control Valve Settings screen varies, depending upon whether your planter’s control valves are PWM Valves or Servo Valves. If your planting configuration uses a PWM valve, see *“Control Valve Settings - PWM”* shown below; if your planting configuration uses a Servo valve, see *“Control Valve Settings - PWM” on page 101*.

### Control Valve Settings - PWM



• **PWM Frequency**

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve.

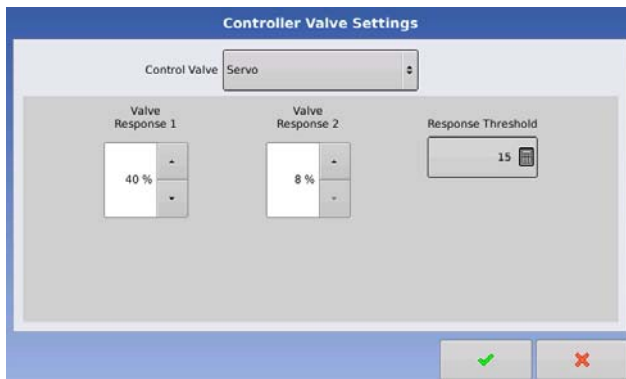
• **PWM Gain**

Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate change adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.

• **Zero Flow Offset**

Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a **Zero Flow Offset** value can cause the product control system to not properly control flow rates. See the PWM valve manufacturer's information for recommended settings.

### Control Valve Settings - Servo



• **Valve Response 1**

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting.

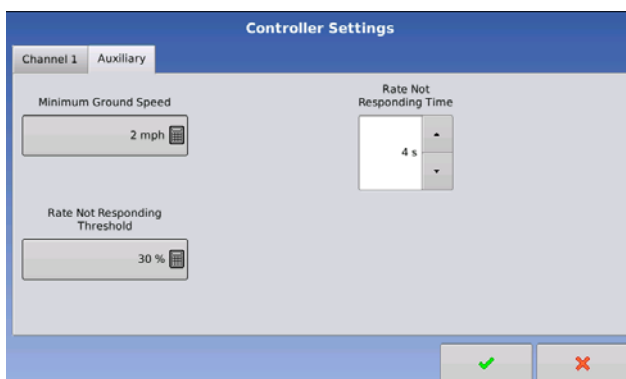
• **Valve Response 2**

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting.

• **Response Threshold**

Determines the system responsiveness to rate change.

### Auxiliary Tab settings



• **Minimum Ground Speed**

The Minimum Ground Speed performs two functions: It determines the speed at which the motion detection sensor disengages; and also determines the target speed meter RPM when the motion detection sensor is active.

• **Rate Not Responding Threshold**

The percentage of seed rate error that triggers the alarms.

• **Rate Not Responding Time**

The amount of time that the error occurs before the alarm sounds.

# HYDRAULIC SEED CONTROLLER SETTINGS FOR SPECIFIC PLANTERS

## John Deere Planters

- Control Valve Configuration — PWM
- PWM Frequency — 175
- PWM Gain — 110
- Zero Flow Offset — 40
- Gear Ratio
  - (chain drive) — 2.374
  - (ProShaft) — 2.417
- Pulses/Rev. — 360

## White Planters

- Control Valve Configuration — PWM
- PWM Frequency — 200
- PWM Gain — 90
- Zero Flow Offset — 30
- Gear Ratio — 5.5
- Pulses/Rev. — 360

## Case IH Planters

- Control Valve Configuration — PWM
- PWM Frequency — 100
- PWM Gain — 95
- Zero Flow Offset — 40
- Gear Ratio — 6.803
- Pulses/Rev. — 360

## HYDRAULIC SEED METER CALIBRATION NUMBERS

Prior to calibrating the Hydraulic Seed Meter, the numbers that appear in the Meter Calibration box in the Planter Control window should be similar to the numbers that appear below. If they are not, then your seed meter may be working incorrectly, or you may have set the Gear Ratio incorrectly. In these cases, contact Technical Support for further assistance.



**Note:** Check your operator's manual for more specific information on other seed disk options.

---

Planter brand and type	Corn	Soy-beans	Cotton Standard Rate	Sorghum
<b>John Deere</b>				
Vacuum: Standard	30	108	64	45
Vacuum: ProMAX™	40			
Vacuum: Precision Planting eSet®	30			
Vacuum: VenHuizen AccuVac Kit	40			
Mechanical: Finger	12			
Mechanical: Brush Meter		56		
<b>Case IH</b>				
Vacuum	48	130	80	80
Cyclo®	36	240		
<b>KINZE</b>				
EdgeVac®	39	60	54	60
Mechanical: Finger	12	56	48	60
<b>White</b>				
	30	60		
<b>Great Plains</b>				
Mechanical: Standard	12	110	120	102
Mechanical: Twin Row	6	100		135

## STEPPER SEED RATE CONTROL

The Stepper Seed Control module allows Rawson ACCU-RATE Variable Rate Controller users to control up to three hydraulic motor drives via the display. If you have purchased the Stepper Seed Rate Control module, you should configure it in the following order.

**1. Configure Stepper Seed Rate Control module**

See *“Stepper Seed Rate Control Configuration” on page 104.*

**2. Enter Controller Settings**

Included the Max Meter Speed, Gear Ratio and Minimum Allowable Ground Speed. See *“Controller Settings for Stepper Seed Rate Motor Drives” on page 104.*

### 3. Prime the Stepper Seed Meter

This fills the seed meter with seed, and thus allows you to avoid skips in your field. See *“Priming Seed Rate Meters” on page 109.*

### 4. Meter Calibration

- a. Enter Meter Calibration Number. This number, representing seeds per revolution, is set according to the number of seeds dropped per one revolution of the seed meter. See *“Calibrating Seed Rate Meters” on page 109.*
- b. Perform a Seed Meter Calibration (not always required). A new calibration should be performed if your as-applied seed rate does not match the actual population planted. See *“Calibrating Seed Rate Meters” on page 109.*

## STEPPER SEED RATE CONTROL CONFIGURATION



To set up a Planting Operating Configuration using a Stepper Seed Rate Control, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen.

### 1. Create Planting Configuration



Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Planting Configuration. A wizard will guide you through the process of creating a vehicle.

### 2. Add Implement

After you have completed the vehicle configuration, the Implement Attachment Wizard appears. Using the drop-down box, select the implement you would like to use in this configuration. If there are no implements in the list, press the Add button. Use the wizard to add a new implement, and select the implement attachment method.

### 3. Select Operation Type

Select the Rate Logging/Control operation type if you are using the Hydraulic Seed Control Module or the Stepper Seed Control option. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Select Controller

Press the Add button and use the Controller Setup Wizard to create a controller.

### 5. Select Device and Seed Command Type

After pressing the New button, the Controller Setup Wizard appears. Use the drop-down menus to select SeedCommand as your device. Use the bottom drop-down menu to select Stepper Seed Control as the SeedCommand Type. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 6. Enter number of drives

Use the up and down arrows to enter in the number of hydraulic drives on your planter. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 7. Enter suggested controller name

A suggested controller name appears. If necessary, use the on-screen keyboard to edit the name of the controller.

### 8. Complete the Operating Configuration

The wizard walks you through the final steps of the configuration, in which you can add additional equipment, select a ground speed source, and edit the suggested name for the configuration.

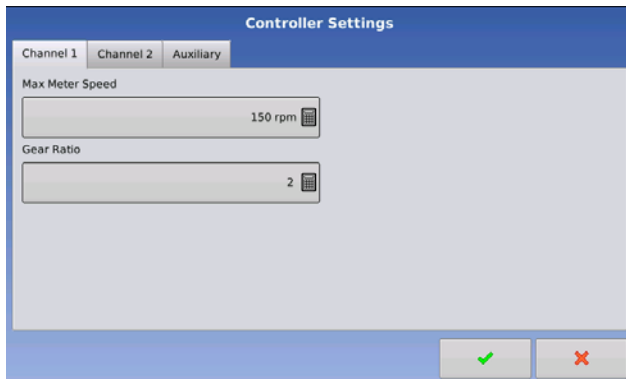
## CONTROLLER SETTINGS FOR STEPPER SEED RATE MOTOR DRIVES



The Controller Settings used by operators of the Stepper Seed Rate Control feature should be set before entering a meter calibration number or performing field operations. To begin, go to the Controller Tab and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Controller Configuration

screen opens, press the Controller Settings button. The Controller Settings screen appears, as shown. Each channel is displayed with its own tab, and the Auxiliary Tab is where you adjust the Minimum Allowable Ground Speed.

## Channel Tabs



- **Max Meter Speed**

This number represents the maximum recommended RPM of the seed meter, and is specified by the manufacturer. A warning informs you if this threshold is exceeded.

- **Gear Ratio**

The ratio of the revolutions of the hydraulic drive to turn the seed meter one revolution.

## Auxiliary Tab



- **Minimum Allowable Ground Speed**

The display will simulate this specified ground speed when you press the Jump Start switch. This fixed ground speed setting compensates for delays in acquiring an initial ground speed when starting from a standstill.

# GEAR RATIO CALCULATIONS FOR SEED RATE MOTORS

The Gear Ratio is a setting that appears on the Controller Tab to users of the Stepper Seed Meter Motor Drive. It is the ratio of the revolutions of the hydraulic drive as compared to one revolution of the seed meter. This setting is used to determine how fast the Stepper Seed Rate Motor should operate to achieve the proper RPM of the seed meter during planting operations.

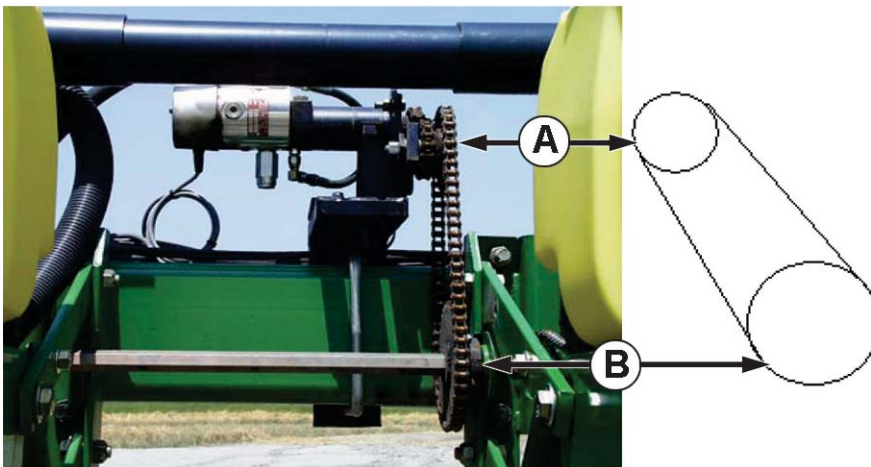
SeedCommand users (such as those using the Stepper Seed Rate Controller) who are required to manually enter in a Gear Ratio in the Controller Settings window should calculate this Gear Ratio based on information provided below and on the following page. The Gear Ratio number is calculated by multiplying all the gear ratio combinations, from the Seed Rate Drive Motor to the Seed Meter.



**Note:** Gear Ratio number is the number of revolutions of the motor to turn the seed meter one revolution.

## Gear Ratio Drawing - For Single Motor Drive

Seed Rate Drive Setting (Calculating drive gear ratio)



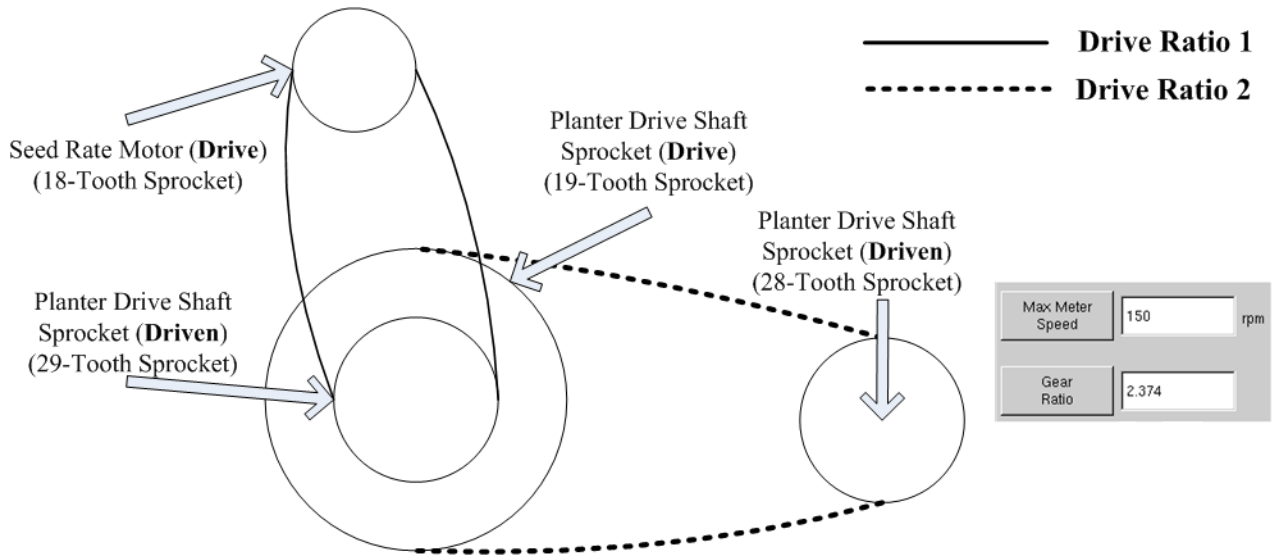
- (A) Seed Rate Motor (Drive) 18 Tooth Sprocket
- (B) Planter Drive Shaft Sprocket (Driven) 29 Tooth Sprocket

$$\frac{\text{\# of Teeth on the Driven Sprocket}}{\text{\# of Teeth on the Drive Sprocket}} = \text{Gear Ratio}$$

\*Each drive combination (Driven/Drive) from Seed Rate Motor Drive to Seed Meter shaft sprocket needs to be factored for the Total Gear Ratio.

### Gear Ratio Drawing - For Multiple Drive Combinations

Seed Rate Drive Setting (Calculating a Gear Ratio for Multiple Drive Combinations)



$$\frac{29}{18} \times \frac{28}{19} = \frac{812}{342} = 2.4$$

Driven/Drive 1    X    Driven/Drive 2                      = Gear Ratio

$$\frac{\text{Planter Drive Sprocket}}{\text{Seed Rate Motor}} \times \frac{\text{Seed Meter Shaft}}{\text{Planter Drive Shaft}} = \text{Gear Ratio}$$

Driven/Drive 1    X    Driven/Drive 2

Carry the Decimal place to the nearest 0.001 for accurate results.

### Seed Ratio Calculation Example Procedure

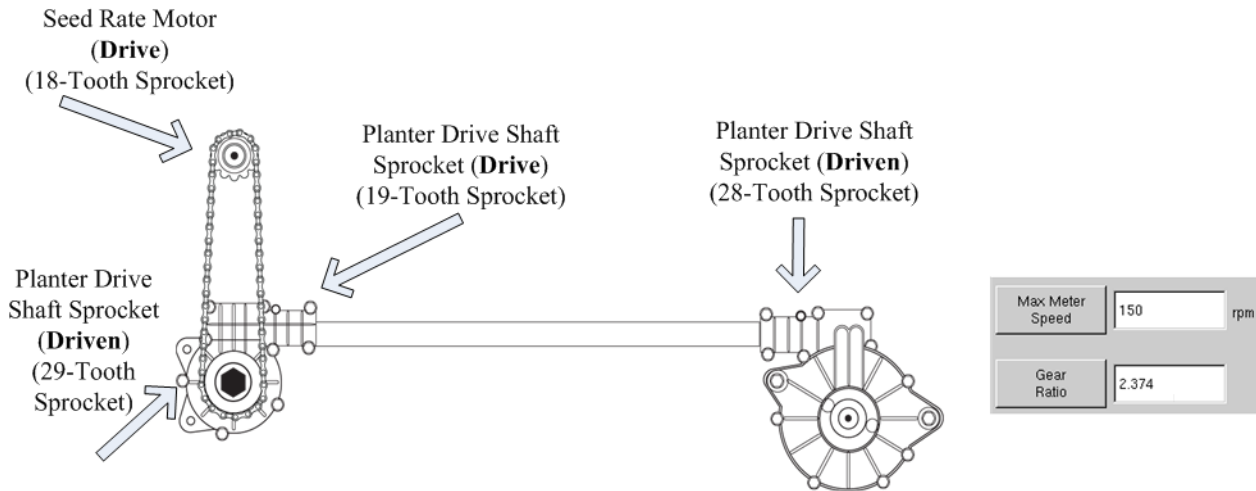
The example outlined below assumes that you have a single planter drive motor. Step 5 notes that this process has multiple steps if you have more than one Stepper Seed Motor Drives.

1. Beginning with the Seed Rate Motor, count the number of teeth on the drive sprocket. Then count the number of teeth on the driven sprocket.
2. Divide the number of teeth on the driven sprocket by the number of teeth on the drive sprocket. This is the ratio of the Seed Rate motor.
3. Repeat the process for each sprocket combination in the drive system back to the meter.
4. Take the ratio of the Seed Rate Motor and multiply it by the ratio of the other sprocket combinations.
5. Repeat this process if you have multiple hydraulic drives. Enter the gear ratio for each motor under the appropriate tab on the InSight display.

**Note:** If you have additional motor drives on the planter and these motor drives have the same total gear ratio, enter that number into the other channels.

# Gear Ratio Drawing - For John Deere Pro-Shaft™ Drives

## Seed Rate Drive Setting (Calculating a Gear Ratio for John Deere Pro-Shaft Drives)



$$\frac{29}{18} \times \frac{28}{19} = \frac{812}{342} = 2.4$$

Driven/Drive 1 X Driven/Drive 2 = Gear Ratio

$$\frac{\text{Planter Drive Sprocket}}{\text{Seed Rate Motor}} \times \frac{\text{Seed Meter Shaft}}{\text{Planter Drive Shaft}} = \text{Gear Ratio}$$

Driven/Drive 1 X Driven/Drive 2

Carry the Decimal place to the nearest 0.001 for accurate results.

### Seed Ratio Calculation Example Procedure - for Pro-Shaft™ Drives

The example outlined below assumes that you have a single planter drive motor. Step 5 notes that this process has multiple steps if you have more than one Stepper Seed Motor Drives.

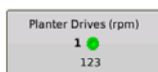
1. Beginning with the Seed Rate Motor, count the number of teeth on the drive sprocket. Then count the number of teeth on the driven sprocket.
2. Divide the number of teeth on the driven sprocket by the number of teeth on the drive sprocket. This is the ratio of the Seed Rate motor.
3. Repeat the process for each sprocket combination in the drive system back to the meter. On the Pro-Shaft Drive, the number of teeth on the driven sprocket is always **28**, and the number of teeth on the drive sprocket is always **19**.
4. Take the ratio of the Seed Rate Motor and multiply it by the ratio of the other sprocket combinations.

5. Repeat this process if you have multiple hydraulic drives. Enter the gear ratio for each motor under the appropriate tab on the InSight display.



**Note:** If you have additional motor drives on the planter and these motor drives have the same total gear ratio, enter that number into the other channels.

## PRIMING SEED RATE METERS



The Seed Meter Prime is used to charge the seed meter when filling with seed. To begin, go to the Map screen and press the Meter RPM button, as shown at left. The Seed Rate Planter Control screen appears, as shown.



### 1. Press Seed Meter Prime

Press the **Seed Meter Prime** button.

### 2. Seed Meter Prime in Progress.

A message displays, stating “Seed Meter Prime in Progress.” While this message displays, the seed meter will turn one (and only one) revolution automatically. When complete, you will return to the Seed Rate Planter Control screen.

## CALIBRATING SEED RATE METERS

The Meter Calibration number allows the seed meter to communicate the correct seed population to the display. Assuming the Controller Settings are correct for the seed rate, this Meter Calibration number, which is based on the number of cells on the seed meter, should not need to be adjusted. However, you may wish to recalibrate before changing seed types and treatments. You should also recalibrate if the as-applied seed rate does not match the population shown on the planter monitor.

Notes:

- The stepper seed rate meter calibration does not recalibrate any previously-logged planting data.
- This recalibration number applies to a specific crop type, i.e., corn. Normally, you should not need to recalibrate when switching varieties within the same crop type.
- Before beginning a calibration, make sure that you have primed the seed meter. For more information, See *“Priming Seed Rate Meters”* above.



1. To begin, go to the Map screen and press the Meter RPM button, as shown.



2. The Seed Rate Planter Control screen appears, as shown at left. Press the **Calibrate** button.



### 3. Acknowledge the Warning

Acknowledge this warning by pressing the check mark button.



### 4. Select Drive to Calibrate

The Meter Calibration Wizard appears, as shown at left. Select the drive that you wish to calibrate. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 5. Enter Simulated Ground Speed

Enter the simulated ground speed for the calibration procedure. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 6. Enter Simulated Target Rate

Enter the simulated target rate of the calibration procedure. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 7. Press Start

Press the green-colored Start button to begin dispensing the seed.

### 8. Dispensing Seed

The seed meter turns for five revolutions. As the seed meter dispenses seed, the button will change its color to red, and a message informs you that the seed dispensation is in process.

### 9. Seed Dispensing Complete

When the meter is finished dispensing seed, the button will change back to its original green color, and will once again display the word Start. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 10. Enter Number of Dispensed Seeds

Use the numeric keypad to enter the number of dispensed seeds that you counted in Step 8. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** The meter calibration will be calculated from the actual seed amount dispensed.

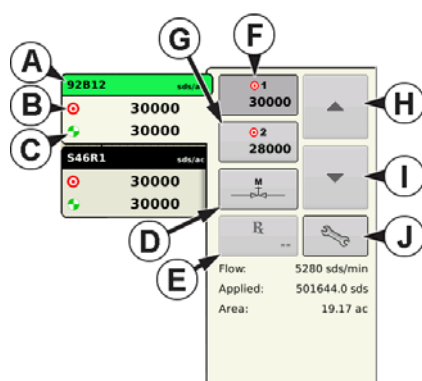
# RATE CONTROL: MAP SCREEN



The map screen shown below displays a two-section SeedCommand configuration running a Variable Rate Control configuration that includes two Hydraulic Seed Meters, and also Row Shutoff with AutoSwath. Because the configuration is for a split-planting operation with two varieties, these two varieties are shown with different colors on the map.

**Note:** The Rate buttons in the Product Control Toolbox at top right are explained in “Product Control Toolbox” on page 111.

# PRODUCT CONTROL TOOLBOX



During SeedCommand Run Time operations, the Product Tabs are shown in the upper right-hand side of the Map screen. Press the Product Tabs, and an extended view shows the Rate buttons, Manual Valve Control button, Prescription button, Rate increase and decrease arrows, and the Rate Setup button, all of which are described below.

• **(A) Variety**

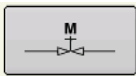
The Product Control Toolbox can show rates for multiple varieties, depending upon your particular planting configuration. Press the area of the box that shows a particular variety, and a green bar highlights that variety. The Rate 1 and Rate 2 are then shown on the Rate buttons.

• **(B) Target Rate**

• **(C) Actual Rate**

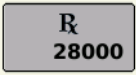
Two items, Target Rate and Actual Rate, appear on each Product Tab shown in the Product Control Toolbox. The **Target Rate** is the amount of seeds that you wish to plant. The **Actual Rate** is communicated by the shaft rotation sensor.

**Note:** In some conditions, the Actual Rate may increment slower than the Target Rate, or its numeric values may vary before matching the Target Rate.



- **(D) Manual Valve Control**

The Manual Valve Control button allows operators to specify the position of the control valve. Operators use this option to clean out equipment at the end of the day.



- **(E) Prescription button**

For more information, see [“Loading Prescriptions” on page 113](#).



- **(F) Rate 1 button**

- **(G) Rate 2 button**

These only appear on Hydraulic Drive or Stepper Seed Meter configurations. The Rate 1 and Rate 2 settings represent preset planting rates that allow operators to quickly change between desired planting rates for each individual product. The active rate button appears with a gray background behind it. In the example above, Rate 1 is active.

- **(H) Rate Increase arrow**

- **(I) Rate Decrease arrow**

Pressing once on the Rate Increase or Rate Decrease arrow increments the rate according to the amount you specify on the Rate Control Settings screen.



- **(J) Rate Setup button**

The Rate Setup button opens the Rate Control Settings screen, described at [“Rate Control Settings” on page 112](#).

## RATE CONTROL SETTINGS



The Rate Control Settings screen is where you can adjust the Rate 1 and Rate 2 settings shown at the Product Control Toolbox on the Map screen, as well as import planting prescriptions. To access the Rate Control Settings screen, press the Rate Setup button on the Product Control Toolbox.



The Rate Control Settings screen appears, as shown.

- The top drop-down menu is where you can select a specific variety for your rate control field operation. This drop-down menu shows all of the varieties that you entered in Product Setup. For more information, see [“Product tab” on page 13](#).

- The **Rate 1** and **Rate 2** settings represent preset application rates that allow operators to quickly change between desired target rates for each individual product. Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired amount.

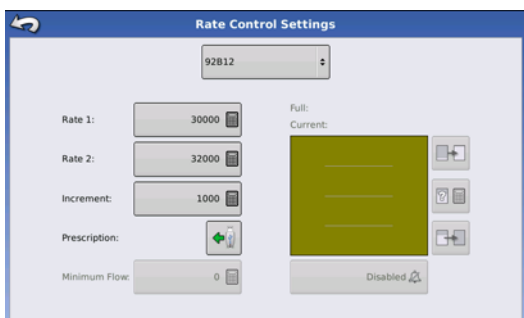
- The **Increment** button allows operators to specify the increase or decrease amounts for a specified rate by using the Rate Increase and Rate Decrease arrows on the Product Control Toolbox. Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired increment.

- To load a map-based prescription file, press the **Prescription** button. For more information, see [“Loading Prescriptions” on page 113](#).

# LOADING PRESCRIPTIONS



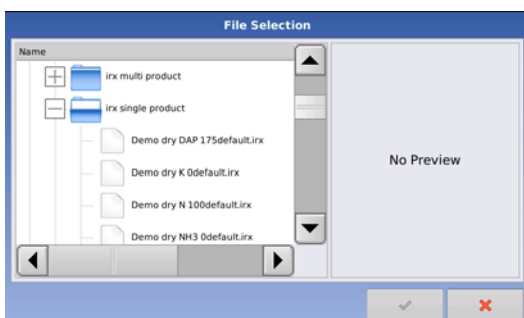
To load a map-based prescription file, press the Rate Setup button on the Product Control Toolbox.



The Rate Control Settings screen appears, as shown.

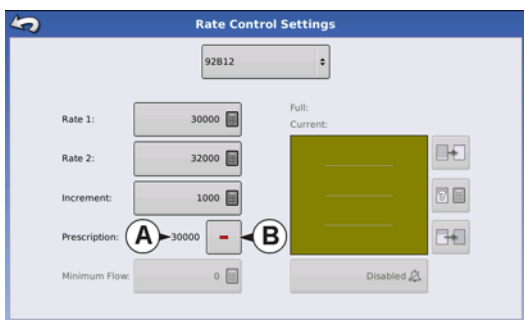


1. Press the Load Prescription button.



2. The File Selection screen appears.

3. Highlight the correct .irx (prescription) or .shp (shape) file and press the green check mark button.



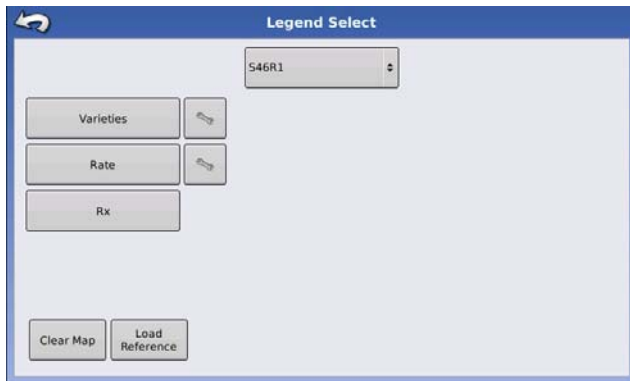
4. When you return to the Rate Control Settings screen, the **Prescription rate (A)** is now shown on the screen. The Load Prescription button has disappeared and in its place is the **Remove Prescription button (B)**, which resembles a minus sign. Press the Remove Prescription button if you wish to remove the prescription from the field.

5. When you return to the Map screen, the prescription is now shown on the map, as illustrated in *"Showing Prescriptions on the Map Screen"* on page 113.

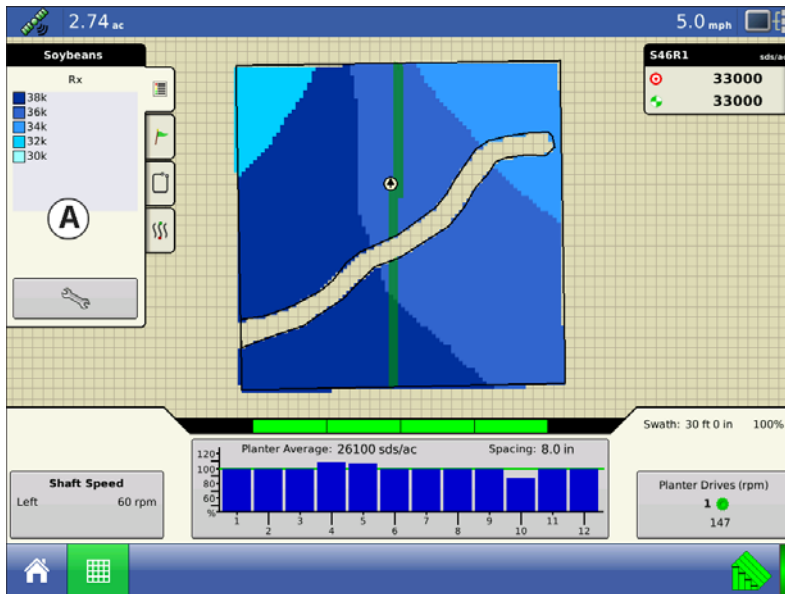
## SHOWING PRESCRIPTIONS ON THE MAP SCREEN



On the Map screen's Mapping Toolbox, press the Legend Setup (wrench) tool and the Legend Select screen appears, as shown. Notice that the Rx (prescription) button appears at this screen.



1. Press the **Rx** button to show a legend of the prescription rate.



2. After pressing the **Rx** button, when you return to the Map screen, the prescription rate appears on the Legend. This legend is not editable.

• **(A) Prescription Rate Legend**

## TROUBLESHOOTING

The Troubleshooting Section consists of the following pages:

- *“Fixing Overplanting and Underplanting in AutoSwath” on page 98.*
- *“Hydraulic Seed Control: Zero Flow Offset Variation” on page 114.*
- *“Stepper Seed Control Meter Alarms” on page 115.*
- *“Alarms on KINZE Planter Monitor” on page 139.*

### HYDRAULIC SEED CONTROL: ZERO FLOW OFFSET VARIATION

Zero flow offset is an operator-entered setting. Zero Flow Offset represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero Flow Offset value can cause the product control system to not properly control low rates. Zero flow offset may vary somewhat by system and by operating conditions. On the tables on the following pages, problems and causes relating to Zero Flow Offset are listed. Use the Confirmation Techniques to determine if you have this problem; and then follow the appropriate solution.

**Error Message:** Drive is slow to begin turning.

**Possible Cause:** Zero Flow Offset is set too low.

**Conformation Technique:**

- a. Turn the Master Switch off. Enter a manual ground speed and enter a new region.
- b. From the Run screen, open the product application rate window, and highlight the appropriate product. Select Manual control mode.
- c. Switch the Master Switch on.
- d. Press the up button one time. Now press the down button one time. If the drive is not turning, the Zero Flow Offset is likely to be too low.

**Solution:**

- a. Turn the Master Switch off. Enter a manual ground speed and create a new region.
- b. Increase Zero Flow Offset by 2.
- c. From the Run screen, open the product application rate window, and highlight the appropriate product. Select Manual control mode.
- d. Switch the Master Switch on.
- e. Press the up button one time. Now press the down button one time. The drive should be turning. If not, repeat this procedure starting with Step 2.

## HYDRAULIC SEED CONTROL: ZERO FLOW OFFSET VARIATION

**Error Message:** Hydraulic drive not shutting off properly, or minimum controllable speed is greater than specified.

**Possible Cause:** Zero Flow Offset is set too high.

**Conformation Technique:**

- a. Turn the Master Switch off. Enter a manual ground speed and create a new region.
- b. From the Run screen, open the product application rate window, and highlight the appropriate product. Select Manual control mode.
- c. Switch the Master Switch on.
- d. Press the up button one time. Now press the down button three times. If the drive is still turning, the zero flow offset is likely to be too high.

**Solution:**

- a. Turn the Master Switch off. Enter a manual ground speed and enter a new region.
- b. Reduce Zero Flow Offset by 2.
- c. From the Run screen, open the product application rate window, and highlight the appropriate product. Select Manual control mode.
- d. Switch the Master Switch on.
- e. Press the up button one time. Now press the down button three times. The drive should not be turning. If it is, repeat this procedure, starting with step 2.



**Note:** Zero Flow Offset should never be less than 25. If 25 still seems as if this number is too high, there must be some other problem. Contact Technical Support for further assistance.

## STEPPER SEED CONTROL METER ALARMS

**Error Message:** “Drive Out of Synch Error Drive #”

**Possible Cause:** Not enough hydraulic fluid is flowing to the seed meter.

**Solution:** Examine the stepper seed drive’s hydraulic components for restrictions. Make sure the tractor’s hydraulic outlet is turned on. Make sure the hydraulic flow settings are correct.

**Error Message:** “Drive Stalled Drive #”

**Possible Cause:** The hydraulic drive motor has stopped rotating.

**Solution:** Check the stepper seed motor to see if it is restricted from turning, and that the hydraulic drive is working.

**Error Message:** "Meter Not Moving - Drive #"

**Possible Cause:** Either the Seed Meter Calibration failed, or the Seed Meter Prime failed

**Solution:** Make sure that the tractor's hydraulic outlet is turned on.

**Error Message:** "Seed Drive at Maximum RPM Drive #"

**Possible Cause:** If you start the priming routine and the hydraulic motor is not on

**Solution:** - Slow the planter unit's ground speed. - Reduce the Planting Target Rate.

# MONITORING

## SEED TUBE MONITOR MODULE

### SEEDCOMMAND MAP SCREEN EXAMPLES

On this and the following page are shown two examples of SeedCommand operating configurations during Run Time Operations. The screen to the left is a Seed Tube Monitor Module (STMM), with Row Shutoff and three Stepper Motor Drives.

- **(A) Mapping Toolbox**

- **(B) Seed Tube Monitor bar graph**

Bars represent row units. Each bar's row height represents that row's population in comparison with the target rate which you specified on the Product Control Toolbox.

- **(C) Section Indicators**

Shown at the top of the Equipment Tab when the Map screen is shown in Zoom to Extent. When the Map screen is shown in the Zoom Details view or Perspective View, the section indicators are shown as a bar that appears behind the vehicle icon.

- **(D) Product Control Toolbox**

- **(E) Meter RPM button**

Appears at the bottom right hand side of the Map screen, displays the number of stepper seed motors and their speed, shown in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). Pressing the Meter RPM button summons the Seed Rate Planter Control screen, where you can calibrate and prime the seed meters. For more information, see *"Priming Seed Rate Meters" on page 109* and *"Calibrating Seed Rate Meters" on page 109*.

- **(F) AutoSwath**

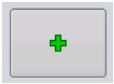
The Seed Tube Monitor Module provides population monitoring for DICKEY-john® seed tube sensors used on several different brands of planters. If you have purchased the Seed Tube Monitor Module, you should configure it in the following order.

1. STMM Configuration procedure. See procedure below.
2. Adjust Sensor Configuration and Alarms. Press the **Seed Monitor Setup** button on the Configuration Setup screen. This summons the Seed Monitor Setup window. For more information, see *"Seed Monitor Options" on page 120*; as well as *"Seed Tube Sensor Configuration" on page 120* and *"Seed Monitor Alarms" on page 122*
3. Adjust Seed Monitor Options on the Equipment Tab of the Map screen. See *"Seed Monitor Options" on page 120*.

## SEED TUBE MONITOR MODULE CONFIGURATION



To set up a Planting Operating Configuration using a Seed Tube Monitor Module, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen,



## 1. Create Planting Configuration

Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Planting Configuration. Select an existing Vehicle from the drop-down menu, or press the Add button and create a new vehicle with the Vehicle Setup Wizard. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 2. Select Implement

Press the Add button to create a new implement.

## 3. Select Planter/Seeder Type and Attachment Method

From the top drop-down menu, select the Planter/Seeder Type setting. Then use the bottom drop-down menu to select an appropriate Attachment Method. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 4. Select Implement Options

Under the Planter Monitor drop-down menu, select Seed Monitor Module.

- Split Rows Enabled - Check this box to enable the display to log data from the planter's Split Row units. (For split row-enabled planters, you will need to create separate implement configurations for Split Row and non-Split Row operations).
- Planter Section Row Shutoff - Check the Planter Section Row Shutoff check box if you are using Row Shutoff.

## 5. Enter Number of Rows and Spacing.

Use the up and down arrow keys to enter the number of rows and spacing. When finished, press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



---

**Note:** Do not enter the number of individual rows. Enter the number of swath sections that can be independently turned on and off.

---

## 6. Enter Number of Implement Sections

Use the up and down arrow keys to enter the number of implement sections, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 7. Enter Distance from Hitch to Application Point

Use the numeric keypad to enter the distance from the implement hitch to the application point (from front to back). When finished, press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 8. Enter Implement Name

Use the keyboard button to enter an Implement Name, then press the green check mark button.

## 9. Select Operation Type

The Operating Configuration Wizard reappears, under which you must select an operation type. Select Rate Logging/Control.

## 10. Complete the configuration procedure

Continue through the wizard by making selections regarding controllers, additional equipment, and Ground Speed Source that is particular to your planting operation.

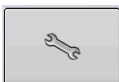


---

**Note:** After completing this configuration, in order for it to become active, you must adjust Seed Monitor settings in Seed Monitor Setup. For more information, see below and also ["AutoConfig Procedure" on page 119.](#)

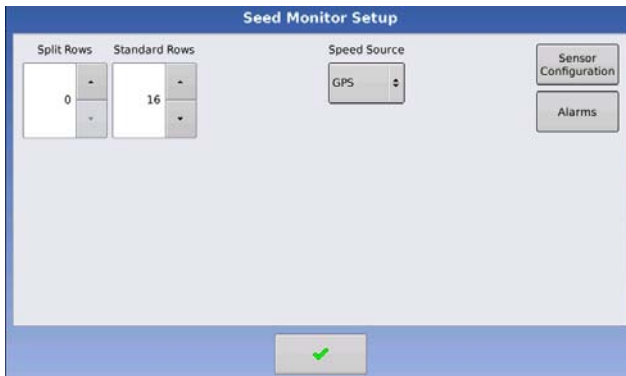
---

## SEED MONITOR SETUP



After completing a Seed Tube Monitor Module configuration, as described above, you must adjust Seed Monitor Settings, including entering in the number of rows, choosing a speed source, and performing an AutoConfig procedure. First go to the Home screen and press the

Setup (wrench) button. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Seed Monitor Setup button. The Seed Monitor Setup screen appears, as shown.



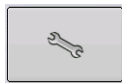
- The **Split Rows** and **Standard Rows** settings show the number of rows found on the planter that the Seed Tube Monitor Module supports. Use the up and down arrows to enter the total number of rows found on the planter.
- The **Speed Source** shows the selected Ground Speed Source input for the Seed Tube Monitor Module. Press the **Sensor** to summon the Sensor Configuration window, which shows which rows are assigned to the individual pins on the Seed Tube Monitor Module.



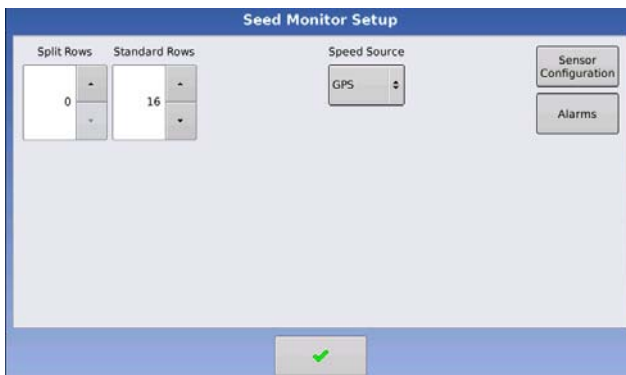
**Note:** Press the Sensor to perform the AutoConfig procedure, which is necessary for a Seed Tube Monitor Module configuration to become active. For more information, see “AutoConfig Procedure” on page 119.

- Press the **Alarms** button to summon the Seed Monitor Alarms screen, which shows each row and the alarm threshold for that row. For more information, see “Seed Monitor Alarms” on page 122.

## AutoConfig Procedure

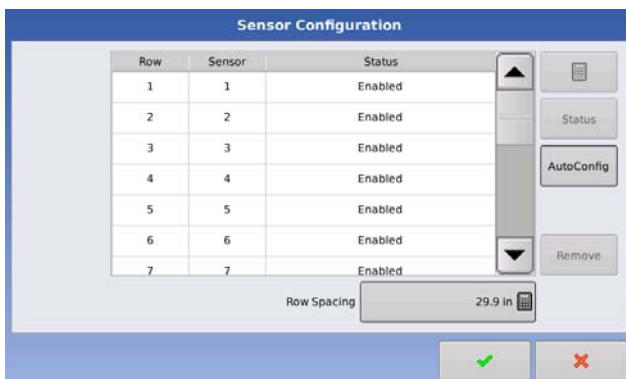


The AutoConfig procedure assigns individual rows to the appropriate pins on the Seed Tube Monitor Module. To perform an AutoConfig procedure, first go to the Home screen and press the Setup (wrench) button.



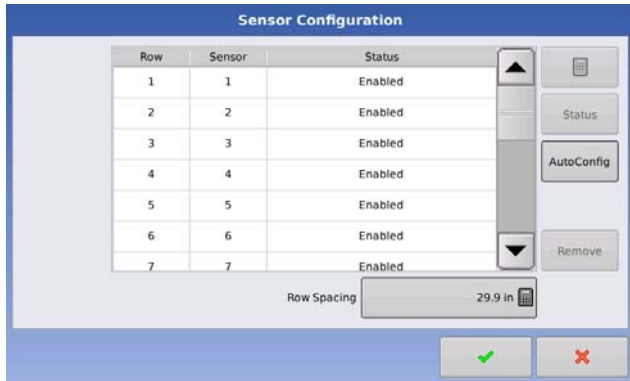
At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Seed Monitor Setup button. The Seed Monitor Setup screen appears.

1. Press the **Sensor** to open the Sensor Configuration screen.



2. The Sensor Configuration screen opens, as shown at left. Press the **AutoConfig** button to start the AutoConfig procedure.

# SEED TUBE SENSOR CONFIGURATION



The Sensor Configuration screen shows which rows are assigned to the individual pins on the Seed Tube Monitor Module.

- The **numeric keypad** moves the sensor to a different location, in case you need to make configuration changes for custom planting operations.



**Note:** To return to the default, press the AutoConfig button.

- The **Status** button enables and disables a Seed Tube sensor.



**Note:** A row with a failed sensor can be ignored until a replacement sensor is installed.

- The **AutoConfig** button sends the planter settings to the Seed Tube Monitor Module.



**Note:** After creating a Seed Tube Monitor Module configuration, in order for it to become active you must perform an AutoConfig procedure.

- The **Remove** button removes an individual Seed Tube sensor.
- The row spacing keypad is where you must enter in the row spacing that your planter will use during planting operations.

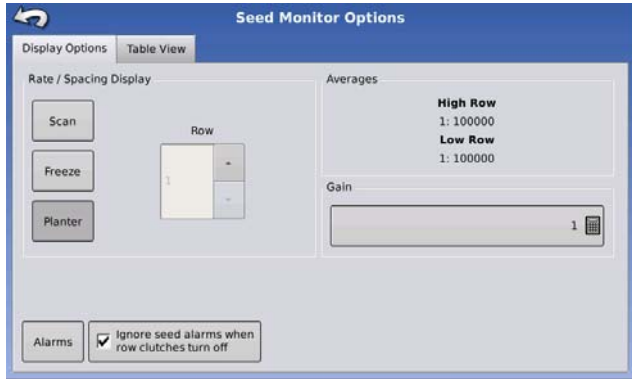
## STMM Split-Row Configurations

- If you specified a split-row planting configuration in the drop-down list shown on the Seed Monitor Setup screen (see [“Seed Monitor Setup” on page 118](#)), then the Selection window will appear after the first time that you press the Sensor on the Seed Monitor Setup window. Choose between Standard Row or Split Row, and press the green check mark button.
- Split-row users must configure the Seed Tube Monitor Module for both Standard Row configurations and Split Row Configurations. Both configurations are then saved in the display, and settings for each planting configuration are automatically applied when you specify the machine configuration at the Field Operation Configuration Wizard.

## SEED MONITOR OPTIONS

Press the Seed Tube Monitor Bar Graph on the Equipment Tab of the Map screen, and the Seed Monitor Options screens open, as shown. Here you can make changes to the bar graph’s rate/spacing display, as well as make alarm settings adjustments. The Seed Monitor Options screens consist of two tabs: Display Options and Table View.

## Display Options



### • Scan

Mode specifies the Rate/Spacing on a row-by-row scan on all the planter's row units, displayed in sequence from left to right.

### • Freeze

Mode specifies that the Rate/Spacing Display continuously shows only one specified row chosen by the operator. Use the up and down arrow buttons to specify which row to "freeze".

### • Planter

Mode is the default setting for the Rate/Spacing Display. This mode specifies the instantaneous average population and seed spacing for the entire planter.

### • Alarms

button summons the Seed Monitor Alarms window, which shows each individual row and the alarms threshold for that row. For more information, see *"Seed Monitor Alarms" on page 122*.

### • Ignore Seed Alarms when row clutches turn off

checkbox disables the seed alarms when the planter clutches turn off during row turns (as an example). This box is checked by default; uncheck if desired.

### • Averages

shows the individual row number and planting rate of the row with the highest and lowest planting rate.

### • Gain

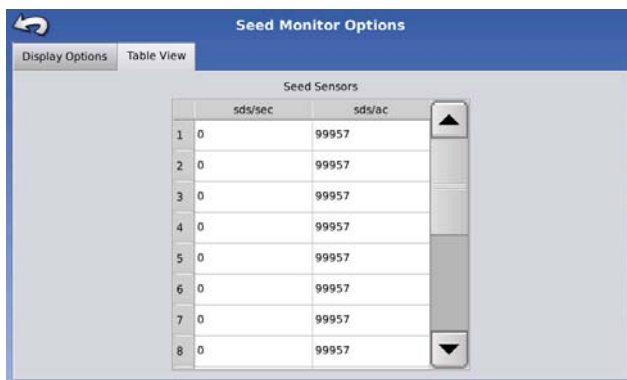
shows the population adjust value used to adjust the population if the seed tube is not sensing the actual seed population.

- For the correct Gain setting for your operation, please refer to your planter's operator manual.



**Note:** For corn, do not change the default Gain setting of 1.

## Table View



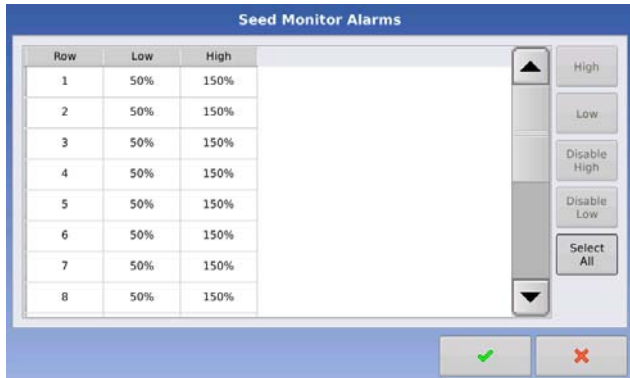
The **Table View** Tab shows row data from rows monitored by the Seed Tube Monitor Module, including the following:

- Row unit seeds per second
- Row unit seeds per acre



**Note:** This can also be accessed on the CAN device list under Diagnostics.

## SEED MONITOR ALARMS



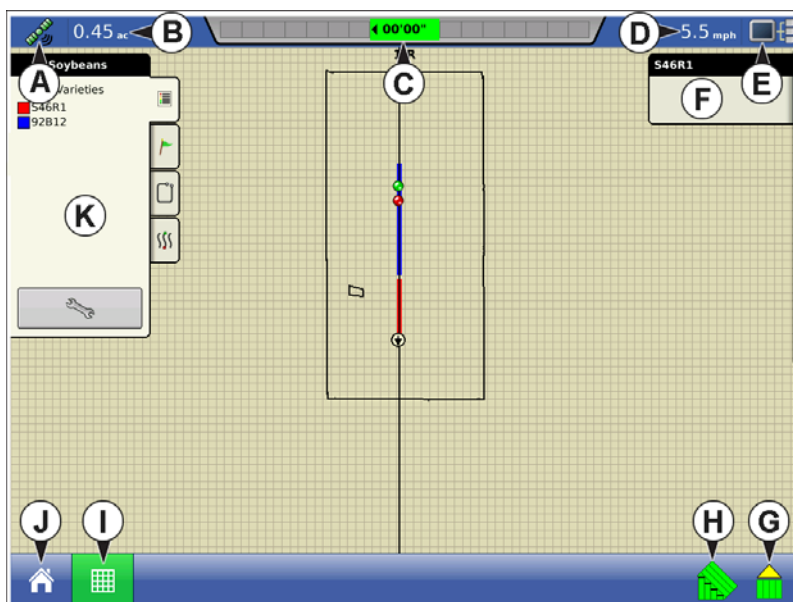
The Seed Monitor Alarms screen is where you can adjust Seed Tube Monitor Module alarm thresholds. This screen can be accessed in one of two ways:

- Pressing the Alarms button at the Seed Monitor Option screen.
- Pressing the Alarms button at the Seed Monitor Setup screen.

**High** and **Low** buttons assign a percentage of error that will trigger the rate alarm.

- The **Disable High** and **Disable Low** buttons deactivate the respective high or low rate alarms.
- The **Select All** button selects all rows so that you may change the alarm threshold for the entire group.

## PLANTING MAP SCREEN - ZOOM TO EXTENT



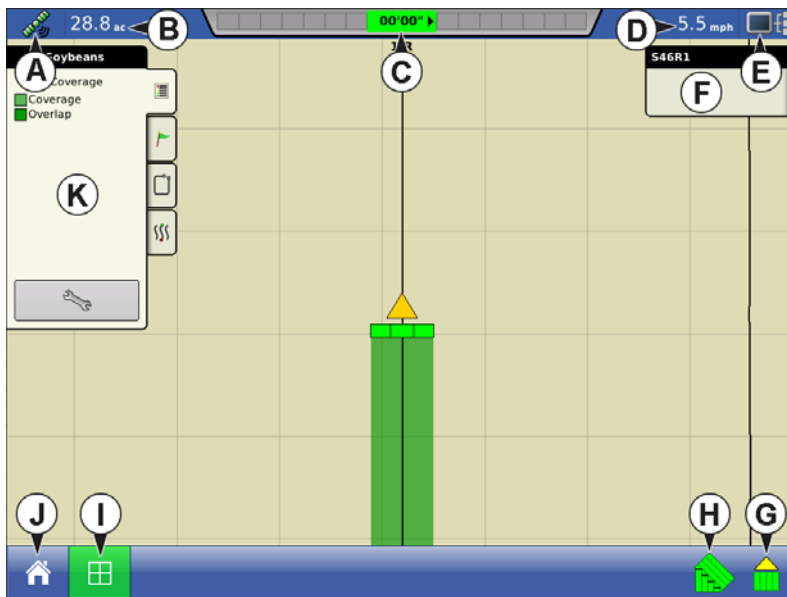
- (A) GPS Status
- (B) Total Field Acres
- (C) On-screen Lightbar
- (D) Ground Speed
- (E) Diagnostics button
- (F) Productivity tab (Variety)
- (G) Logging Status button
- (H) AutoSwath
- (I) Map View button
- (J) Home button
- (K) Map Legend (Varieties)

Notes:

- Pressing the Map View button will cycle between the available map screen views, and the appearance of the Map View button changes.
- At the Zoom to Extent map view, the Map Legend shows varieties.
- For an explanation of display items not listed above, see *"Task and Status bars"* on page 27.

When the Map screen is shown in Zoom Detail, the Vehicle Icon appears as a gold triangle, rather than an arrow. The map screen below is shown for a typical Variety Tracking Planting Configuration which does not include any Rate Control or Row Shutoff features. This planter includes three sections, and these sections are shown as individual boxes on the Implement Icon behind the Vehicle Icon.

## PLANTING MAP SCREEN - ZOOM DETAIL



- (A) GPS Status
- (B) Total Field Acres
- (C) On-screen Lightbar
- (D) Ground Speed
- (E) Diagnostics button
- (F) Productivity tab (Variety)
- (G) Logging Status button
- (H) AutoSwath
- (I) Map View button
- (J) Home button
- (K) Map Legend (Coverage)



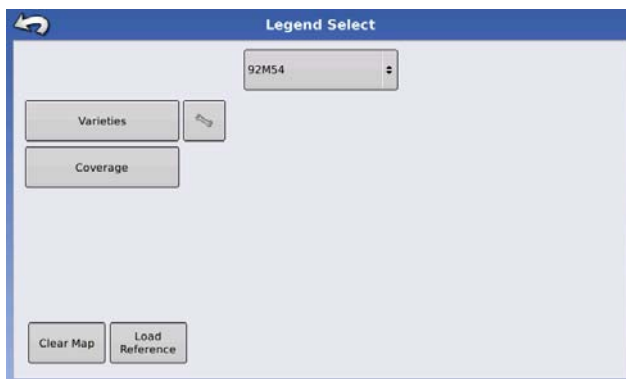
**Note:** For information on Map screen items that are standard for all operations, see “Task and Status bars” on page 27.

## LEGEND SELECT

During Planting operations, the Map screen displays two types of items in the Legend: Coverage and Varieties. The Variety Legend is only accessible in the Zoom to Extent view.



The Legend Setup button on the Map Legend Tab of the Mapping Toolbox opens the Legend Select screen, as shown.



From the Legend Select screen, you can use the drop-down menu at the top to select your product. Additionally, you can choose from the following items:

- Press **Coverage** to show the area that you have already planted.
- Press **Varieties** to show a Variety Map of the field which shows where specific varieties are planted. The colors shown on the Variety Map can be edited. For more information, see “Legend Setup” below.
- If you are using a SeedCommand (rate control) configuration, press **Rate** to show the Rate Legend in the

Mapping Toolbox. The rate map displays the actual rate being applied. This legend is editable. For more information, see “Legend Settings” on page 32.

- Press **Clear Map** to permanently remove all logged data from the active field operation
- Press **Load Reference** to load a list of maps of previous operations performed in that field.

## Legend Setup



To change the colors of the varieties that appear on the Run screen map, press the Varieties button on the Legend Select screen and the Legend Setup screen appears, as shown. A list of the varieties shown on the Run screen map appears on the left-hand side of the Legend Setup screen. To change the color of one of these varieties, highlight that variety and then press a color on the color palette at right. Press the green check mark button when finished.

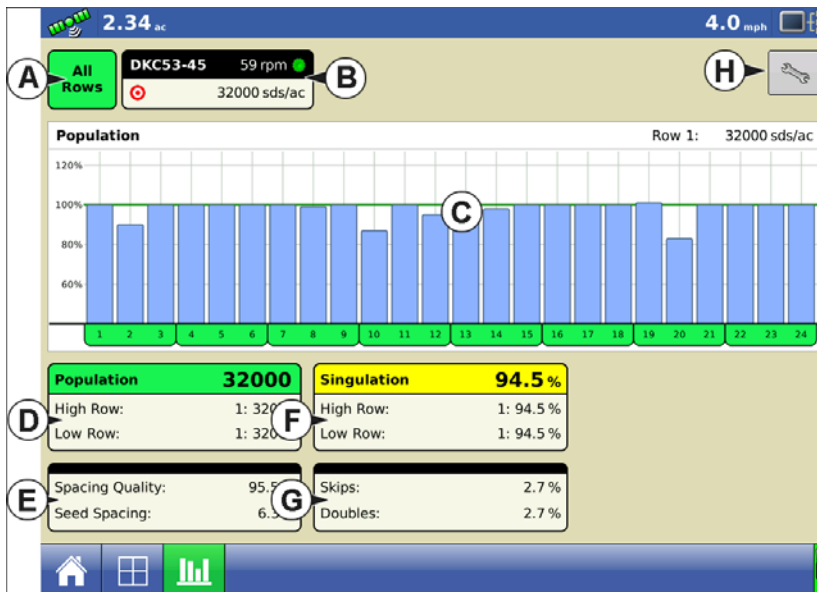
## ADVANCED SEED MONITORING



Advanced Seed Monitoring button

Press button to view Planter Performance screen and Row Performance screen.

## PLANTER PERFORMANCE SCREEN



- (A) All Rows
- (B) Hydraulic Drive
- (C) Bar Graph
- (D) Population
- (E) Spacing Quality
- (F) Singulation
- (G) Skips/Doubles
- (H) Seed Monitor Options

Advance Seed Monitoring provides planter performance monitoring of seed meter singulation, skips/doubles and spacing quality, along with population and spacing information for all rows when corn planting.

Display provides a full-screen planter performance view that includes display items and bar graphs for population, singulation, skips/doubles and spacing quality. In addition, Advanced Seed Monitoring

automatically determines and displays the rows operating at the highest and lowest levels for singulation and population.

The Planter Performance screen displays planter averages for population, spacing quality, singulation, and skips/doubles. The screen also shows the averages for specific drive sections.

Bar graph can show individual row information for the averages shown on buttons (D-G).

- **(A) All Rows**

Displays the planter average for the four display items (D), (E), (F) and (G) at the bottom of the screen.

- **(B) Hydraulic Drive**

Displays the drive status, drive RPM, and target population for the hydraulic drive. There can be up to three displayed. Pressing the hydraulic drive channel will show the average of that section of the planter for the four display items at the bottom of the screen.

- **(C) Bar Graph**

Displays population, singulation, spacing quality, skips, and doubles, as selected by the operator.

- **(D) Population**

Displays the average population for the planter, or sections of the planter, along with the highest and lowest population row.

- **(E) Spacing Quality**

Displays the average spacing quality for the planter, or selected sections of the planter, along with the highest and lowest.

- spacing quality is a measure of the percent of seeds being properly placed so that the spacing is as expected in the seed trench.

- **(F) Singulation**

Displays the average Singulation for the planter, or selected sections of the planter, along with the highest and lowest rows.

- singulation is a measure of the percent of seeds being properly metered so that one and only one seed drops from each seed cell of the seed meter.

- **(G) Skips/Doubles**

Displays the average skips and doubles for the planter

- skips are a measure of the percentage of seed expected to be planted that do not due to a seed not being dropped by the seed meter.
- doubles are a measure of the percentage of seed expected to be planted individually but instead two or more are dropped by the seed meter.

- **(H) Seed Monitor Setup**



Pressing this button brings up Seed Monitor Options screen.

# SEED MONITOR OPTIONS SCREEN



The Seed Monitor Options screen adjust Seed Tube Monitor Module alarm thresholds.

- **Gain** shows the population adjust value used to adjust the population if the seed tube is not sensing the actual seed population.

- For the correct Gain setting for your operation, please refer to your planter’s operator manual.
- For Corn Gain values should be set to 1.

- **Advanced Thresholds**

- Double Seed threshold
- Poor Spacing threshold

- **Singulation Alarm**

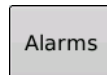
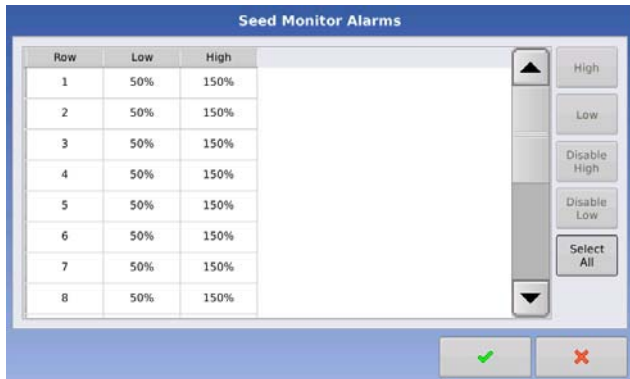
- **Spacing Alarm**

- **Alarms button**

Press to access the Seed Monitor Alarms screen, explained below.

- **Ignore seed alarms when row clutches turned off check box**

# SEED MONITOR ALARMS SCREEN



Press the Alarm button on the Seed Monitor Option screen, above, to access the Seed Monitor Alarms screen.

**High** and **Low** buttons assign a percentage of error that will trigger the rate alarm.

- The **Disable High** and **Disable Low** buttons deactivate the respective high or low rate alarms.

The **Select All** button selects all rows so that you may change the alarm threshold for the entire group.

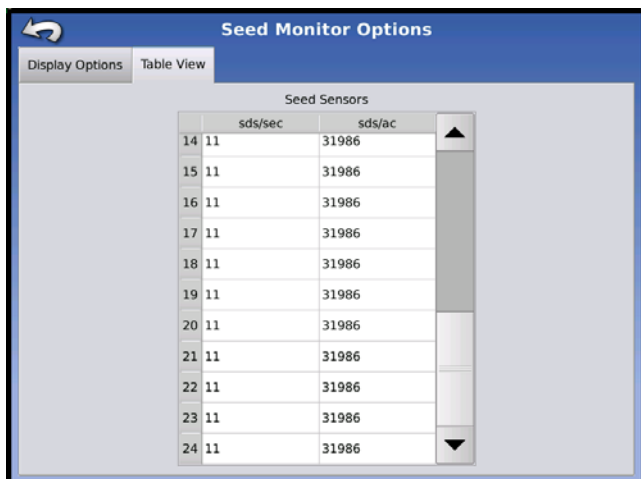
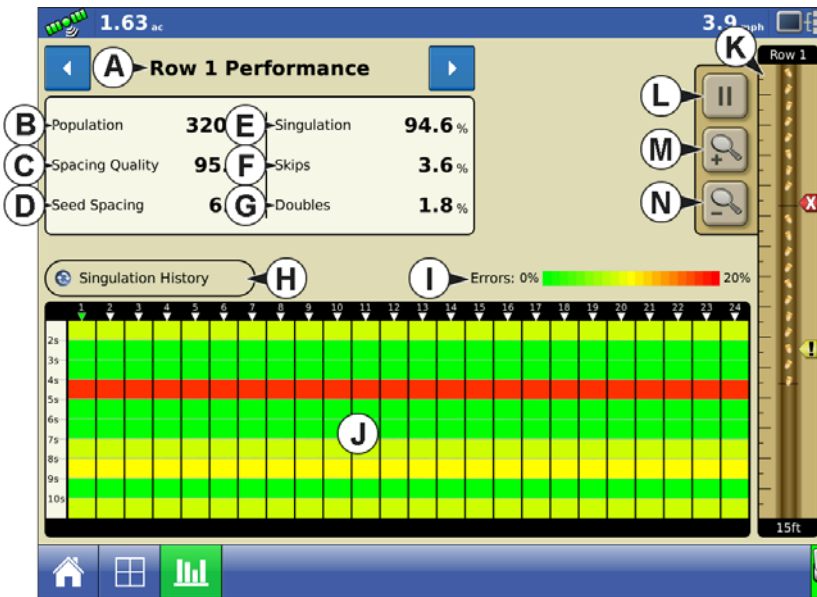


Table View tab shows seeds per acre and seeds per second for each row.



Press button to view Advance Seed Monitoring screen with seed trench.

Row Performance screen



- (A) Row Indicator
- (B) Population
- (C) Spacing Quality
- (D) Seed Spacing
- (E) Singulation
- (F) Skips
- (G) Doubles
- (H) Singulation History/Spacing Quality History toggle
- (I) Errors
- (J) Bar Graph
- (K) Virtual Seed Trench
- (L) Play/Pause button

- (M) Zoom In
- (N) Zoom Out

The Row Performance screen displays information on specific rows.  
The user can toggle through the rows using the arrow buttons.



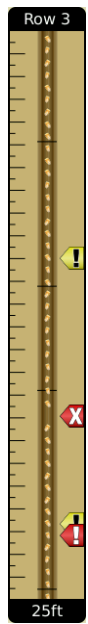
Previous Row button









Next Row button

The Singulation History/Spacing Quality History bar graph gives a 10 second for each row.

## VIRTUAL SEED TRENCH



The virtual seed trench shows the placement of each seed of a problematic row to help determine if the problem is in the seed meter or seed tube. The yellow and red indicators show where there are seeding errors. The display does not log this information

-  **Double**
-  **Skip**
-  **Poor Spacing**
-  **Play/Resume button**
-  **Pause button**
-  **Zoom In button**

-  **Zoom Out button**

# KINZE

## KINZE PLANTER MONITOR MODULE

The KINZE Planter Monitor Module is a feature that displays planting data from a KINZE Population Monitor on the Map screen.



**Note:** Steps 1-4 must be performed by everyone who has purchased a KINZE Planter Monitor; steps 5-6 are performed by customers who have purchased those specific features.

### 1. KINZE Planter Monitor Module Configuration

This creates a configuration that is used for KINZE Planter Monitor operations. For more information, see [“KINZE Planter Monitor Module Configuration”](#) below and on the following page.

### 2. Monitor Module setup

Included front and rear unit settings, Shaft RPM sensor settings, and row spacing settings. This step allows the display to detect the physical KINZE Planter devices. For more information, see [“KINZE Planter Monitor Setup”](#) on page 130.

### 3. Sensor detection process

This allows the display to detect the proper number of muxbus sensors on the row units. For more information, see [“Muxbus Sensor Detection \(for KINZE Planter Monitor\)”](#) on page 133.

### 4. Set alarm thresholds

This allows you to determine the level at which the seed monitor alarms will sound. For more information, see [“Alarms on KINZE Planter Monitor”](#) on page 139.

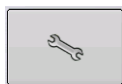
### 5. Calibrate the Magnetic Pickup Coil

This step, which is performed by customers who have purchased the Magnetic Pickup Coil Speed Sensor allows the Monitor Module to receive data from this sensor, which measures the ground speed of the planter. For more information, see [“KINZE Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor Calibration”](#) on page 135.

### 6. EdgeVac® calibration

This step, which is performed by customers who have purchased the EdgeVac® seed meters, allows the display to receive accurate data from the meters. For more information, see [“KINZE EdgeVac Calibration”](#) on page 136.

## KINZE PLANTER MONITOR MODULE CONFIGURATION



To set up a Planting Operating Configuration using a KINZE Planter Monitor Module, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen.



### 1. Create Planting Configuration

Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Planting Configuration. Select an existing Vehicle from the drop-down menu, or press the Add button and create a new vehicle with the Vehicle Setup Wizard. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 2. Select Implement

Press the Add button to create a new implement.

### 3. Select Planter/Seeder Type and Attachment Method

From the top drop-down menu, select the Planter/Seeder Type setting. Then use the bottom drop-down menu to select an appropriate Attachment Method. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Select Implement Options

Under the Planter Monitor drop-down menu, select KINZE Planter Monitor Module.

- **Split Rows Enabled**

Check this box to enable the display to log data from the planter's Split Row units. (For split row-enabled planters, you will need to create separate implement configurations for Split Row and non-Split Row operations).

- **Planter Section Row Shutoff**

Check the Planter Section Row Shutoff check box if you are using Row Shutoff.

### 5. Enter Number of Rows and Spacing

Use the up and down arrow keys to enter the number of rows and spacing. When finished, press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** Do not enter the number of individual rows. Enter the number of swath sections that can be independently turned on and off.

### 6. Enter Number of Implement Sections

Use the up and down arrow keys to enter the number of implement sections, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 7. Enter Distance from Hitch to Application Point

Use the numeric keypad to enter the distance from the implement hitch to the application point (from front to back). When finished, press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 8. Enter Implement Name

Use the keyboard button to enter an Implement Name, then press the green check mark button.

### 9. Select Operation Type

The Operating Configuration Wizard reappears, under which you must select an operation type. Select Rate Logging/Control if you are using the Hydraulic Seed Control Module or the Stepper Seed Control option.

### 10. Complete the configuration procedure

Continue through the wizard by making selections regarding controllers, additional equipment, and Ground Speed Source that is particular to your planting operation

## KINZE PLANTER MONITOR SETUP



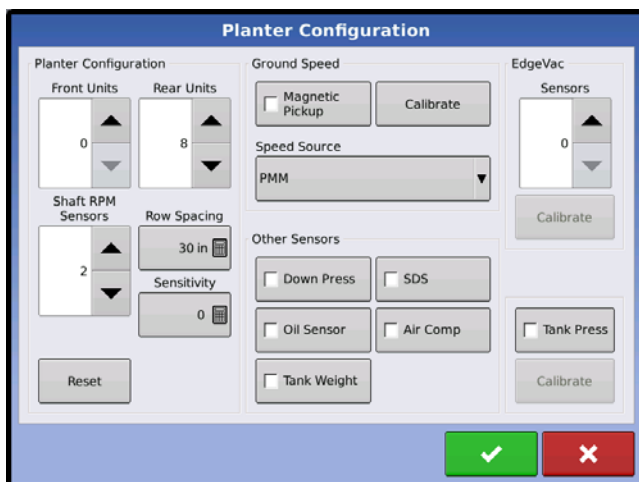
After creating an Operating Configuration, you must adjust settings for the Planter Configuration, Sensor Configuration, and Alarms. To do this, go to Configuration Setup and press the Seed Monitor Setup button. The KINZE Planter Monitor Setup screen appears, as shown.

- The **Planter** opens the Planter Configuration screen. For more information, see [“KINZE Planter Configuration”](#) below.

- The **Sensor** shows the Sensor Configuration screen, shows the status of each row, as well as other sensor information. For more information, see *“KINZE Sensor Configuration” on page 132.*
- The **Alarms** button pulls up the Seed Monitor Alarms screen, where the operator can set a threshold for the alarm. For more information, see *“Alarms on KINZE Planter Monitor” on page 139.*

## KINZE Planter Configuration

### Planter Configuration Settings



#### • Front Units and Rear Units

Use the up and down arrow keys to adjust the number of front and rear planting units, if necessary.

#### • Shaft RPM Sensors

Use the up and down arrows to adjust the number of Shaft RPM Sensors, if necessary.

#### • Row Spacing

Shows the minimum row spacing of the planter. Use the numeric keypad to adjust the Row Spacing.

#### • Seed Size Filter

The Seed Size Filter drop-down box should be left at the default setting.

#### • Reset

Returns settings to factory defaults, which allows operator to run Muxbus Sensor Detention again.

### Ground Speed Settings

#### • Magnetic Pickup

Check the Magnetic Pickup check box only if the planter is equipped with the Magnetic Pickup Sensor. This setting should then be left unchanged. For information on calibrating the Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor, see *“KINZE Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor Calibration” on page 135*



**Note:** Customers who do not have the magnetic pickup sensor who check this box will see a window stating *“Bad Configuration: No Magnetic Pickup sensor currently found.”*

#### • Speed Source

The Speed Source drop-down box selects the type of speed source for the planter monitor. Choose between GPS, AUX (Auxiliary Input Module) and PMM.



**Note:** This speed selection only affects the PMM. The ground speed source must still be selected.

### Other Sensors

Other check boxes on the Planter Configuration window include:

#### • Down Pressure

Check this box if the planter has pneumatic down pressure.

#### • Oil Sensor

Leave this box unchecked.

- **SDS Sensors**

Check this box if the planter has a mechanical Seed Distribution System (SDS) installed.

- **Air Compressor**

Check this box if the planter has an air compressor installed.

- **Tank Weight**

Check this box if the planter has a tank weight sensor install.

- **EdgeVac Sensors**

Use the arrows to enter the number of EdgeVac® sensors on your planter. You will also need to calibrate the EdgeVac sensors once per year. To start this process, press the Calibrate button.

- **Tank Pressure**

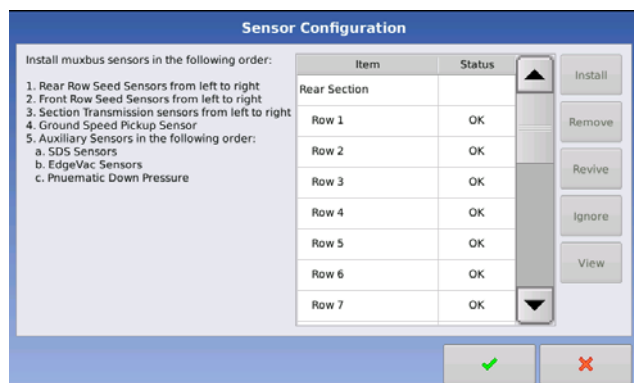
Check the box only if the planter is equipped with tank pressure sensor. You will also need to calibrate the sensor once per year. To start this process, press the **Calibrate** button.

## EdgeVac

Use the arrows to enter the number of EdgeVac® sensors on your planter.

You will also need to calibrate the EdgeVac sensors once per year. To start this process, press the Calibrate button. For more information, see *“KINZE EdgeVac Calibration” on page 136.*

## KINZE Sensor Configuration



The Sensor Configuration screen is for system maintenance of the KINZE Population Monitor.

- The **Install** button installs a row sensor.



**Note:** Upon your initial configuration of the KINZE Planter Monitor, you must complete the Sensor Muxbus Detection process. For more information, see *“Muxbus Sensor Detection (for KINZE Planter Monitor)” on page 133.*

- **Remove button**

Removes the highlighted sensor of any type.

- **Revive button**

Allows the display to reattempt communication with the highlighted sensor of any type.

- **Ignore button**

Tells the display to cease communications with a row sensor.

- **View button**

Shows the Sensor Information screen. For more information, see *“Sensor Information (for KINZE Planter Monitor)” on page 134.*

## Muxbus Sensor Detection (for KINZE Planter Monitor)

Upon your initial configuration of the KINZE Planter Monitor, you must complete the Sensor Muxbus Detection process. This process allows the muxbus to detect each sensor on the planter. In order for the display to show the correct Planter Monitor information, you must complete the detection process for each muxbus sensor.



**Note:** Be sure that all of your sensors are unplugged before you begin the Muxbus Detection process. If any of your sensors are still plugged in, the Muxbus Detection process will abort. If this occurs, unplug the remaining sensors and retry the procedure.

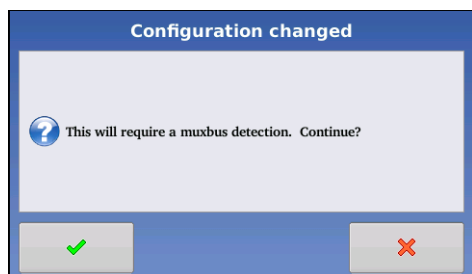
1. To start the Sensor Muxbus Detection process, make any settings changes necessary at the Planter Configuration screen and then press the green check mark button. For more information on these settings, see [“KINZE Sensor Configuration” on page 132](#).



**Note:** The Muxbus detection process will only start if you have changed the sensor configuration. If you have not changed your configuration, it will not repeat the muxbus detection process.

### 2. Disconnect planter sensors from planter harness

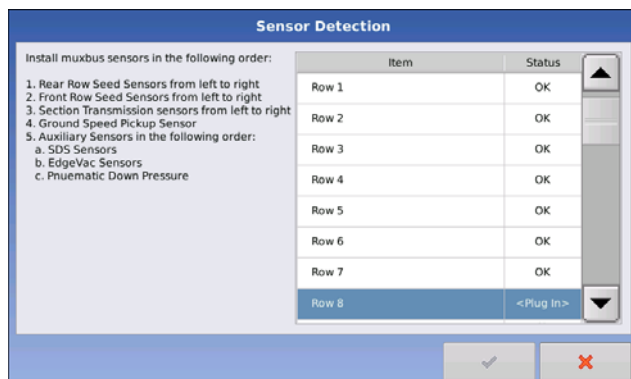
Make certain all planter sensors are disconnected from the planter harness.



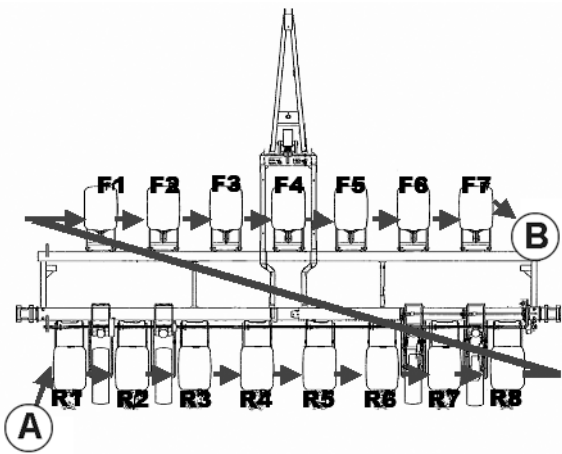
### 3. Accept the Muxbus Detection

A screen appears, informing you that your configuration has changed and that it will require a muxbus detection. Once all sensors are disconnected, press the green check mark button on the Configuration Changed screen. The Muxbus Detection Process then begins.

### 4. Detect individual row units



Plug in each physical sensor plug into the muxbus wiring harness on the planter (from left to right), and press Accept for each one. Follow the on-screen instructions, as shown.



## Order of Muxbus Sensor Installation

Install the muxbus sensors in the following order:

- Rear Row Seed sensors from left to right.
- Front Row Seed sensors from left to right.
- As shown above from (A) to (B).
- Section Transmission sensors from left to right.
- Ground Speed Pickup Sensor.
- Auxiliary Sensors in the following order:
  - a. SDS Sensors.
  - b. EdgeVac® Sensors.
  - c. Pneumatic Down Pressure.
  - d. Seed Scale Sensor, Air Compressor Sensor, and ASD Sensor.



**Note:** When the row unit sensor is plugged in, the display will beep once and show the status as “Calibrating.” When calibration is complete, the display will beep again and display either “OK” or “Slow”.

## 5. Resolve Any Possible Errors

When the Muxbus Detection Process begins, each row unit will display “N/A” (Not Available) underneath the status. But as the Muxbus Detection process takes place, each row unit should state “Calibrating” for a time, then should indicate “OK”. After calibration, the sensor status displays either one of two different states:

- **OK** - The sensor is working and is communicating at 9600 baud.
- **Slow** - The sensor is working, but is communicating at 2400 baud.



**Note:** Some older KPM I, II, and III systems have slower sensors with black connectors, that communicate at a 2400 baud rate. The KPM I, II and III systems with blue connectors communicate at a 9600 baud rate. A slower baud rate does not result in decreased performance.

6. The display beeps once when the row unit sensor is plugged in, and will beep again when calibration is complete.

## 7. Detect Complete

When the Muxbus Detection process is complete, a message displays, stating “All sensors found”.

## Sensor Information (for KINZE Planter Monitor)

Sensor Information	
ID:	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Serial Number:	<input type="text" value="5678"/>
Model Number:	<input type="text" value="1234"/>
Baud Rate:	<input type="text" value="9600"/>

The Sensor Information screen displays hardware information for each seed tube sensor and also each seed sensor. Technical support may request that you look at this window for help in diagnosing a problem.

To view the Sensor Information screen, press the Sensor on the KINZE Planter Monitor Setup screen. When the Sensor Configuration window appears, highlight the row you wish to view and press the View button.

- **ID**  
a unique number for each sensor on the muxbus.

- **Serial Number**

varies for each individual unit of seed sensor and seed tube sensor.

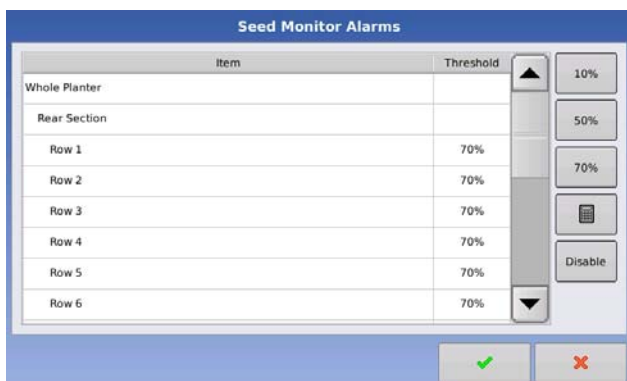
- **Model Number**

shared by each unit of the same model of seed tube sensor.

- **Baud Rate**

the speed of transmission between the muxbus sensor and the PMM module.

## KINZE Seed Monitor Alarms



To view the Seed Monitor Alarms screen, press the Alarms button on the KINZE Planter Monitor Setup screen. Here you can change the alarm threshold for each individual row unit, or for an individual section, or the whole planter. To change the threshold of an alarm, highlight the row unit, then press either a given percentage number (10%, 50%, 70%, or use the numeric keypad to create your own value). The alarm will then sound only when the population drops below that numeric threshold value.

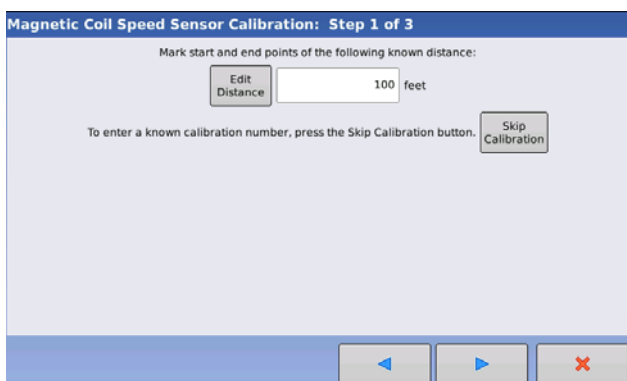
Notes:

- The default alarm setting is at 50%.
- If you wish to turn the threshold of the alarm to zero, press the **Disable** button.

## KINZE Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor Calibration

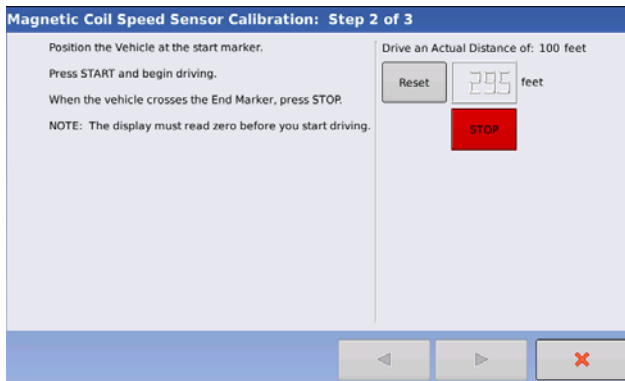
KINZE Planter Monitor customers who have a magnetic coil speed sensor must check the Magnetic Pickup check box on the Planter Configuration screen when they first enter a configuration. This setting should then be left unchanged. For reference, see *“KINZE Planter Configuration” on page 131.*

These customers will need to calibrate the Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor at least once per season. To do this, press the Planter on the KINZE Planter Monitor Setup screen. When the Planter Configuration screen appears, press the Calibrate button located next to the Magnetic Pickup check box. The Magnetic Coil Speed Sensor Calibration wizard appears, as shown.



### 1. Enter distance of calibration

The default distance for calibrating the magnetic coil speed sensor is 100 feet (50 meters). If you wish to calibrate at another distance, enter the new distance. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

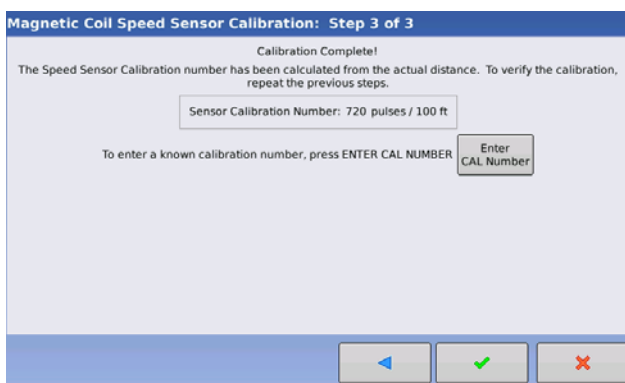


## 2. Drive from start to end points

Position the vehicle at the start marker. Press the green-colored Start button and drive the vehicle for the predetermined distance.



**Note:** The display must be set on 0.0 before you begin driving the calibration distance.



## 3. Stop at end of calibration distance

When the vehicle crosses the end marker of the predetermined distance, press the red-colored Stop button. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue to final step.

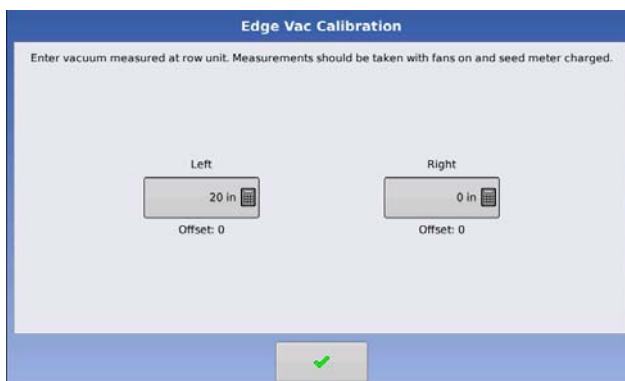
## 4. Calibration complete

The speed sensor calibration number has been calculated from the actual distance driven. Press FINISH to complete calibration and store the calculated value.

### Notes:

- Calibration settings can be manually adjusted if desired by pressing Enter CAL Number and making small changes to the setting.
- To verify the calibration, repeat the previous steps.

## KINZE EdgeVac Calibration



Customers who have purchased the EdgeVac® seed meters should perform an EdgeVac Calibration once a year to make sure that it is correct. To do this, press the Planter on the KINZE Planter Monitor Setup screen. When the Planter Configuration screen appears, press the Calibrate button located below the EdgeVac sensor box. The EdgeVac Calibration screen appears, as shown. Use the numeric keypad to enter the actual value taken from the hand-held calibration sensor at the seed sensor.

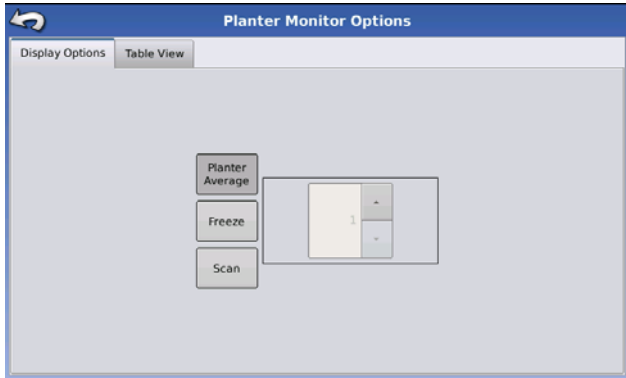


**Note:** The appearance of this screen varies, depending upon whether you have one or two EdgeVac sensors. The example above shows the EdgeVac Calibration screen for two sensors.

# KINZE PLANTER MONITOR OPTIONS

The Planter Monitor Options window, which appears when you press the Bar Graph on the Map screen, is where you can make changes to the bar graph's rate/spacing display. Options include Planter Average, Freeze and Scan, explained below.

## Display Options



- **Planter**

Mode is the default setting for the Rate/Spacing Display. This setting specifies that the Rate/Spacing Display shows the instantaneous average population and seed spacing for the entire planter.

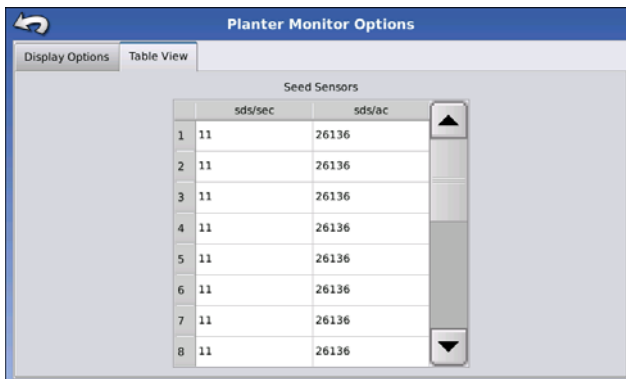
- **Scan**

Mode specifies that the Rate/Spacing Display shows an automatic row-by-row scan on all the planter's row units, displayed in sequence from left to right.

- **Freeze**

Mode specifies that the Rate/Spacing Display continuously shows only one specified row chosen by the operator. Use the up and down arrow buttons to specify which row to "freeze".

## Table View



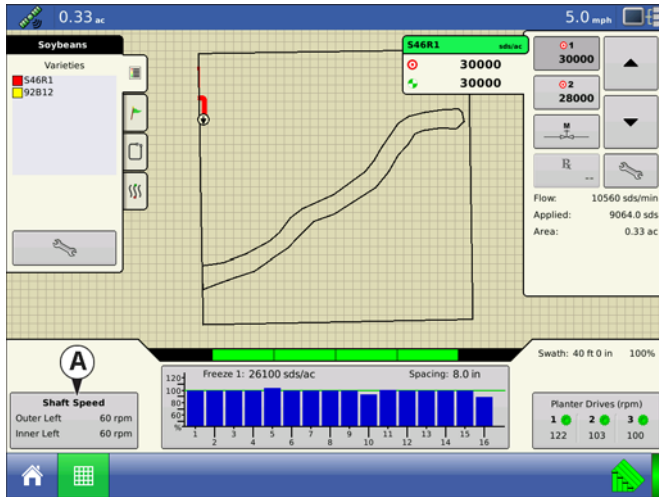
The Table View Tab shows row data from rows monitored by the KINZE Planter Monitor Module, including the following:

- Row unit seeds per second
- Row unit seeds per acre



**Note:** This can also be accessed on the CAN device list under Diagnostics.

# KINZE DISPLAY ITEMS ON EQUIPMENT TAB



The left-hand side of the Map screen's Equipment Tab includes a number of display items that will vary depending upon your particular KINZE Planter Monitor Module configuration. Press the **Shaft Speed button (A)** to cycle through these display items.

- **Shaft Speed**

The speed of the planter drive shafts, in RPM.

- **Tank Weight**

The weight of seed in each tank.

- **Tank Area Left**

The number of acres (hectares) that can be planted with the amount of seed remaining in the tanks.

- **Tank Pressure**

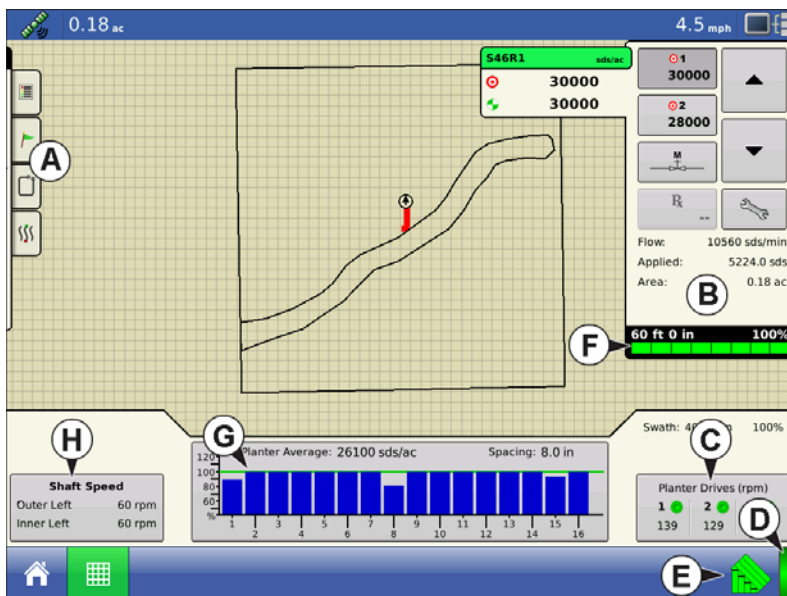
The air pressure level for the Air Seed Delivery (ASD) system.

- **EdgeVac Level**

Measure of seed meter vacuum. This measurement, shown in inches of water, is displayed for each vacuum fan.

- **Pneumatic Down Pressure**

Measure of down force the air bag places on the row unit.



Shown is an example of a KINZE Planter Monitor Module (PMM) with Row Shutoff and three Hydraulic Seed Control drives.

- **(A) Mapping toolbox**

- **(B) Product Control toolbox**

- **(C) Meter RPM button**

Appears at the bottom right hand side of the Map screen, displays the number of hydraulic seed control motors and their speed, shown in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM). Pressing the Meter RPM button summons the Seed Rate Planter Control screen, where you can calibrate and prime the seed meters. For more information, see [“Priming Seed Rate Meters” on page 109](#) and [“Calibrating Seed Rate Meters” on page 109](#).

- **(D) Master Switch Status**

- **(E) AutoSwath indicator**

- **(F) Section Indicators**

Shown at the top of the Equipment Tab when the Map screen is shown in Zoom to Extent. When the Map screen is shown in the Zoom Details view or Perspective View, the section indicators are shown as a bar that appears behind the vehicle icon.

- **(G) Population Monitor Bar Graph**

Shows the number of row units as well as the instantaneous percentage planter average of seeds being distributed on each row unit.

- **(H) Shaft Speed**

Displays the speed of the planter drive shafts, in RPM. Other KINZE PMM Map screen items are described at *“KINZE Planter Monitor Options” on page 137* and also *“KINZE Display Items on Equipment Tab” on page 138*.

## TROUBLESHOOTING

### ALARMS ON KINZE PLANTER MONITOR

KINZE Planter Monitor users who see the Active Alarms window (as shown) can use the scroll bar on the right hand side to locate the row units where the alarm is occurring. Acknowledge the alarm by pressing the green check mark button. After you have dismissed the alarm, you may continue planting, however, the alarm will continue showing in the title bar. You may also review the alarm information underneath the CAN device list shown underneath CAN Diagnostics.

The table below describes various alarms that may occur at system startup. The following pages describe errors that could occur during field operations.

**Error Message:** “Sensors calibrating wait for calibration”

**Possible Cause:** PMM startup

**Solution:** Wait for Planter Monitor Module (PMM) to finish before beginning operation.

**Error Message:** “(Row #) sensor not detected”.

**Possible Cause:** Population sensor did not begin communicating with the PMM.

**Solution:** Acknowledge the error by pressing OK. Check the LED on the sensor to see if it is working properly. If it has failed, then replace the sensor. Refer to the KINZE Planter Operator’s manual for further instructions.

**Error Message:** “Clean or replace sensor (Row #) as necessary”.

**Possible Cause:** Population sensor dirty.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. Then clean the sensor and restart the system.

**Error Message:** “(Row #) mux bus data line short to mux bus ground”.

**Possible Cause:** Population sensor’s mux bus signal wire is shorted to ground.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the wire at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** (Row #) mux bus data line short to mux bus power”.

**Possible Cause:** Population sensor’s mux bus signal wire is shorted to power wire.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the wire at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** “(Row #) mux bus data line short to mux bus ground”.

**Possible Cause:** Population sensor's mux bus signal wire is shorted to ground.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the wire at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** (Row #) mux bus data line short to mux bus power".

**Possible Cause:** Population sensor's mux bus signal wire is shorted to power wire.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the wire at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** "(Row #) communication lost".

**Possible Cause:** Seed tube sensor stops communicating with the PMM.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the sensor at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** "(Inner or Outer; Right, or Left) Shaft Communication Lost"

**Possible Cause:** Transmission sensor stops communicating with the PMM.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the sensor at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** "(Left or Right) Edge- Vac sensor communication lost".

**Possible Cause:** Edge-Vac sensor stops communication with the PMM.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the sensor at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** "(Left or Right) SDS shaft sensor communication lost".

**Possible Cause:** SDS shaft sensor stops communicating with the PMM.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. The display then replaces the message window with an alarm text on the header bar at the top of the Run screen. This alarm text continues until the wire is fixed or the sensor is disabled. Inspect the sensor at the first opportunity.

**Error Message:** "Low hydraulic oil level".

**Possible Cause:** Hydraulic oil level drops.

**Solution:** Check oil level on the planter, add as necessary.

**Error Message:** "High hydraulic oil temperature"

**Possible Cause:** Hydraulic oil temperature level rises

**Solution:** Stop planter in order to cool down oil temperature. Inspect for cause of overheating.

**Error Message:** "Voltage Error Alarm".

**Possible Cause:** Occurs if the battery voltage drops below 10 volts, or rises above 15 volts.

**Solution:** Check tractor's electrical system.

**Error Message:** "(Row #) Seed Rate Alarm".

**Possible Cause:** The seed rate of one or more rows is less than the alarm threshold setting and the corresponding transmission shaft sensor detects rotation.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. If the alarm state is still present, the graph will state the rows where the errors are occurring, and the Title Bar will flash the type of alarm. Inspect row units to confirm that each has seed, and that all mechanical drive shaft parts are working properly.



**Note:** *If desired, the alarm threshold for the row unit may be set to 0%, which will silence the seed rate alarm. However, the bar graph will continue to operate and the row will still be calculated in the planter average population. For instructions on changing the alarm threshold, see "KINZE Seed Monitor Alarms" on page 135.*

---

**Error Message:** "Low Down Force Air Pressure"

**Possible Cause:** Low pressure in the pneumatic down pressure system.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. Check for air leaks and compressor failure.

**Error Message:** "Left (or Right) Tank Seed Level Low."

**Possible Cause:** The Seed Scale weight has dropped below the user-entered threshold.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. Refill the tank to clear the error completely.

**Error Message:** "Seed Tank Pressure Too Low."

**Possible Cause:** The minimum air flow for seed delivery is not present.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. Check fan on the ASD system.

**Error Message:** "Air Compressor Sensor Too Low."

**Possible Cause:** The minimum air compressor tank pressure is not present.

**Solution:** Press **OK** to dismiss the error. Check the air compressor.



# LIQUID RATE CONTROL

DirectCommand allows the variable rate application of single or multiple liquid products. Follow the procedure below to create an operating configuration.

## CREATE CONFIGURATION



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > Add (+) button > Application button

A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a vehicle, implement and controllers.

Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#)



**Note:** You can also use the **Manage Equipment** button to view a list of specific vehicles and implements.

## Add a Product



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Product tab > Add (+) button > Application Product button

## Add a Mix



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Product tab > Add (+) button > Mix/Blend button

## Tank Mix Setup

A tank mix can contain up to seven individual components.

1. Select **Tank Mix** from the list box and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.
2. Enter a Base Amount and Units.



**Note:** The Base Amount is the total volume of all the components of the tank mix. The Base Amount does not need to match the actual volume of product that will be sprayed, but is used only to establish the ratio of all products to the total volume.

3. Press the Add button to start the process of adding components to the tank mix. Select a desired mix component from the list box (or press Add to set up the product). Enter the Amount of the mix component.
4. Repeat this process for the second mix component, if necessary.
5. Add a product carrier and an amount for that carrier by following the steps shown in the wizard.

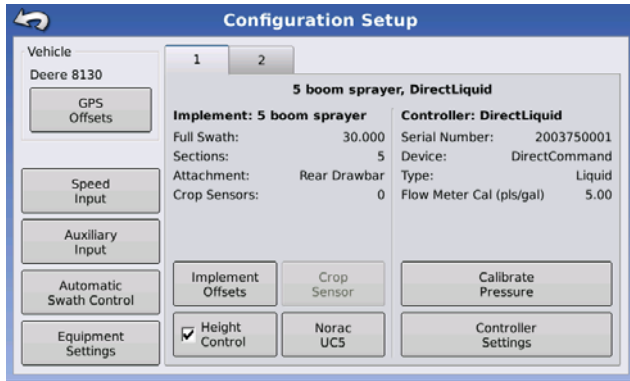


6. Last, enter a unique name for the tank mix. The new mix will appear in the Product List. The mix name will appear next to a blue and cream-colored “Tao” symbol (a circle with a curved line through it), as shown at left.

## SETUP CONFIGURATION



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button



The Configuration Setup screen appears. Screen will vary depending upon your particular operating configuration. This process may include the following tasks:

Configuration Settings:

- **Adjust Implement Switch Settings (for area logging)**

If using an implement switch in a area logging planting operation, you will need to adjust the Implement Switch Settings. For more information, see [“Implement Switch Settings \(for Area Logging\)” on page 26](#).

- **Adjust Equipment Settings (for Rate Control)**

Users of DirectCommand configurations should adjust settings at the Equipment Configuration Settings screen. For more information, see [“Equipment Configuration Settings for Rate Control” on page 26](#).

- **Speed Input Setup**

For more information, see [“Speed Input Settings” on page 47](#).

- **Calibrate Distance**

For more information, see [“Calibrate Distance” on page 48](#).

- **AutoSwath settings (if using AutoSwath)**

For more information, see [“AutoSwath” on page 50](#).

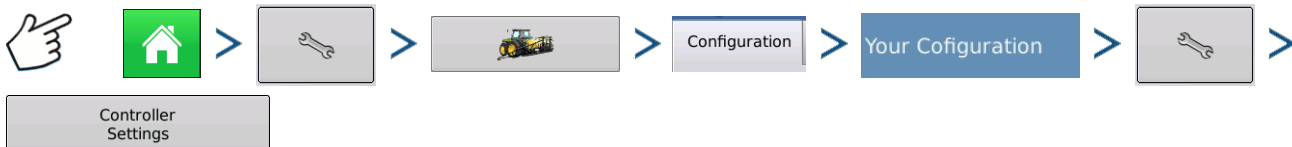
- **GPS Offsets**

Adjust GPS offsets for the Antenna Tab and the Hitch Tab. For more information, see [“GPS Offsets” on page 51](#).

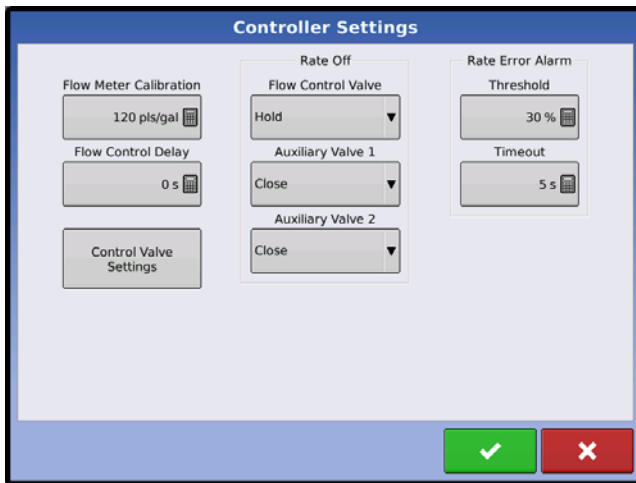
- **Swath Section Offsets**

For more information, see [“Swath Section Offsets” on page 52](#).

## LIQUID APPLICATION CONTROLLER SETTINGS



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Controller Settings button



The Controller Settings screen appears, as shown.

At this screen, you can make the following settings adjustments:

- **Flow Meter Calibration**

Calibration value representing the number of pulses that equal one-gallon of product flow through the controlling system.

- **Flow Control Delay**

Setting that specifies a period of time from master switch on and the start of product application to the first flow control correction. This setting can be used to eliminate unwanted correction of flow control at the start of each pass. Typical setting values are 1 –2 seconds for liquid application control.

- **Control Valve Settings**

Opens the Control Valve Settings screen, which displays control valve settings for PWM, Servo, Calibrated Reflow and Ramsey Valve Controls. For more information, see below or for more settings see [“Control Valve Settings - Servo, Calibrated Reflow and Ramsey Valve” on page 146](#).

- **Close Flow Control Valve When Rate Off**

When this is selected, the controlling system shuts down when there is either a zero rate in the field or when entering an already-applied area. When unchecked, the controlling system remains in the last known state when the sections are shut off.

- **Auxiliary Valve 1 & 2**

When all boom sections are off, this setting closes or opens an auxiliary valve. You can choose settings for up to two auxiliary valves.

- **Allowable Error**

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes.

- **Threshold**
- **Timeout**

## Control Valve Settings - PWM

- **PWM Frequency**

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve. Typical settings range from 100-125 Hz.



**Note:** See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **PWM Gain**

Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate change adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.

- **Zero Flow Offset**

Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero Flow Offset value can cause the product control system to not properly control low rates. See the PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **PWM Standby**

This is a user-defined setting that determines the percent duty cycle the system uses when the booms are all off. The setting must be greater than the Zero Flow Offset.



**Note:** The current PWM Duty Cycle can be viewed at the Liquid Diagnostics screen. For more information, see “Liquid Application Diagnostics” on page 156

## Control Valve Settings - Servo, Calibrated Reflow and Ramsey Valve

- **Valve Response 1**

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting. The default for this setting is 100%. Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower. Valve Response 1 represents the fast speed of the servo valve.

- **Valve Response 2**

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting. The default for this setting is

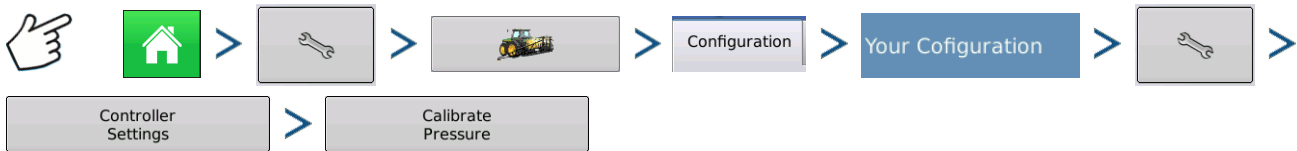
24%. Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower. Valve Response 2 represents the slow speed of the servo valve.

**• Response Threshold**

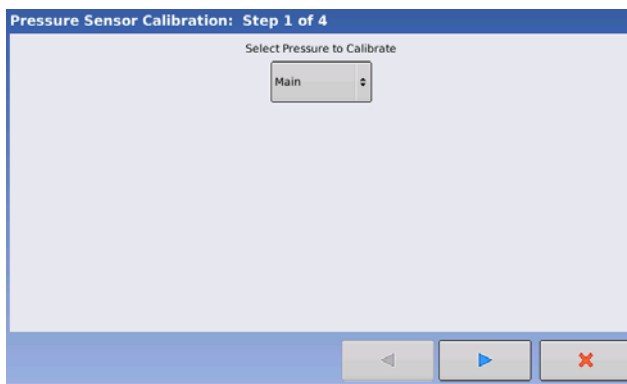
Determines where the control channel switches between using Valve Response 1 and Valve Response 2 speed settings. The default setting is 3. Leaving all other valve control settings at the default value and making a small adjustment to this setting is usually all that is required to fine-tune system performance.

- Decreasing this value will have the overall effect of speeding up servo valve response.
- Increasing this value will have the overall effect of slowing servo valve response.

**Calibrate Pressure**



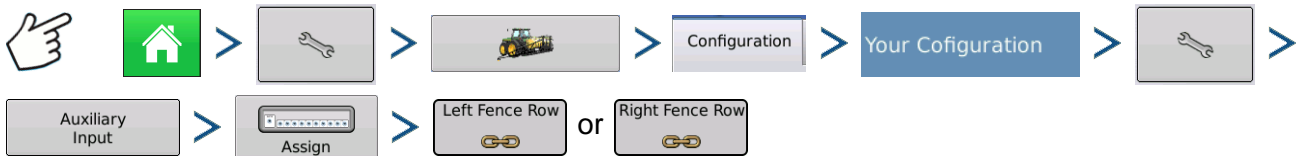
Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Controller Settings button > Calibrate Pressure button



Pressure Sensor Calibration screen appears, as shown. Choices for Calibration include Main, Agitation or Aux. Choose which pressure sensor you wish to calibrate and press the blue right-arrow button. From this point, a wizard walks you through the calibration process.

**FENCE ROW NOZZLE INDICATORS**

You can control fence row nozzles through the DirectCommand system by mapping the switches in Auxiliary Input Settings. The fence row nozzles can be mapped to any switch.



**Note:** For more information on Auxiliary Input Settings, see "Auxiliary Input" on page 48.



After specifying Fence Row Nozzle settings at the Auxiliary Input Assignment screen, the **Fence Row Nozzle Indicators (A)**, which are shaped like triangles, appear on either side of the sections behind the vehicle icon.

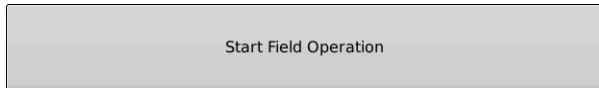
**Notes:**

If a switch is selected as a Left or Right Fence Row Nozzle, the system sends power out of Boom Pin 11 for the left fence row, and Boom Pin 12 for the right fence row.

The boom sections next to the fence row nozzles must be turned on before the fence row nozzle can be turned on.

## LOAD CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Start Field Operation

Select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23.*



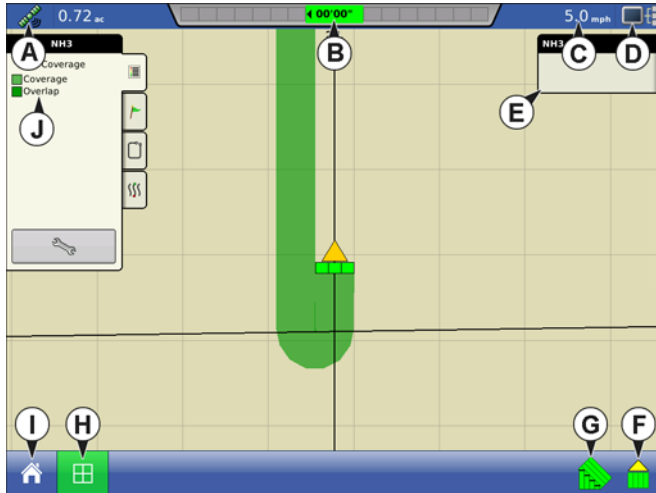
Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen.

## RUN CONFIGURATION



Press the Map View button to see the Map screen. The map below is displayed in Zoom to Detail view.

## APPLICATION MAP SCREEN - ZOOM TO DETAIL

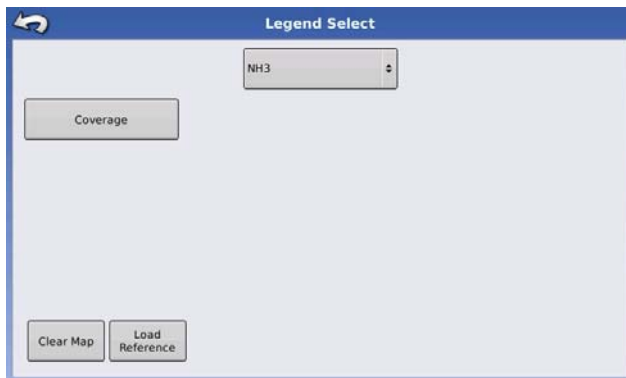


- (A) GPS Status
- (B) On-screen Lightbar
- (C) Ground Speed
- (D) Diagnostics button
- (E) Product tab
- (F) Logging Status button
- (G) AutoSwath
- (H) Map View button
- (I) Home button
- (J) Display Legend (Coverage)

## LEGEND SELECT



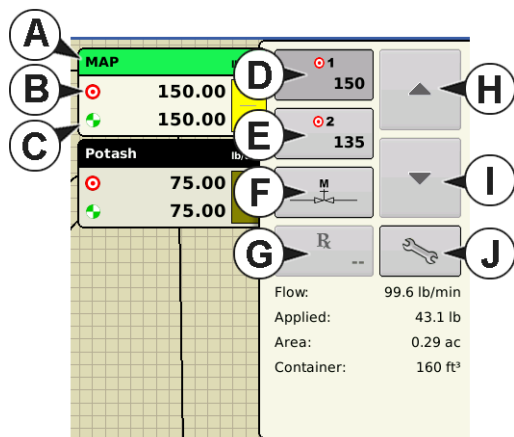
During Area Logging Application operations, the Map screen displays coverage in the Legend. The Legend Setup button on the Map Legend Tab of the Mapping Toolbox opens the Legend Select screen, as shown.



From the Legend Select screen, you can use the drop-down menu at the top to select your product. Other items at this screen include:

- Press **Coverage** to show the area where you have already applied a product.
- If you are using a DirectCommand or rate logging configuration, press **Rate** to show the Rate Legend in the Mapping Toolbox. The rate map displays the actual rate being applied. This legend is editable. For more information, see [“Legend Settings” on page 32](#).
- Press **Clear Map** to permanently remove all map data from the active field operation
- Press **Load Reference** to load a map from a previous operation performed in that field to view as a background map.

# RATE CONTROL: PRODUCT CONTROL TOOLBOX



During DirectCommand Run Time operations, the Product Tabs are shown in the upper right-hand side of the Map screen. Press the Product Tabs, and an extended view shows the Rate buttons, Manual Valve Control button, Prescription button, Rate Increase and Rate Decrease arrows, and the Rate Setup button, all of which are described below.

- (A) Product
- (B) Target Rate
- (C) Actual Rate
- (D) Rate 1 button
- (E) Rate 2 button
- (F) Manual Valve Control
- (G) Prescription button
- (H) Rate Increase arrow
- (I) Rate Decrease arrow
- (J) Rate Setup button

## • Target Rate

The Target Rate is the amount of product that you wish to apply.



**Note:** In some conditions, the Target Rate may increment more quickly than the Actual Rate.

## • Actual Rate

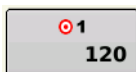
The Flow Sensor returns the actual rate of the product that you are applying.



**Note:** In some conditions, the Actual Rate may increment slower than the Target Rate, or its numeric values may vary before matching the Target Rate.

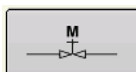
## • Container Level

The Container Level allows you to view the amount of product remaining in your container. For more information, see [“Rate Control: Container Level” on page 152](#).



## • Rate 1 and Rate 2 buttons

The Rate 1 and Rate 2 settings represent preset application rates that allow operators to quickly change between desired target rates for each individual product.

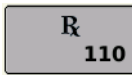


## • Manual Valve Control button

The Manual Valve Control button allows operators to specify the position of the control valve. Operators use this option to prime the system before application or clean out the equipment at the end of the day.

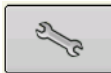
### • Rate Increase and Decrease Arrows

The Increase and Decrease buttons allow Product Application Rate to be changed according to the Target Rate Increment. In using manual valve control, the increase and decrease buttons allow the position of the control valve to be defined by the operator.



### • Prescription button

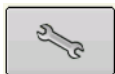
For more information, see [“Loading Prescriptions” on page 153.](#)



### • Rate Setup button

For more information, see [“Rate Control Settings” on page 151.](#)

## RATE CONTROL SETTINGS



Rate Control Settings screen is where you can adjust the Rate 1 and Rate 2 settings shown at the Product Control Toolbox on the Map screen, as well as import application product prescriptions. To access the Rate Control Settings screen, press the Rate Setup button on the Product Control Toolbox. The Rate Control Settings screen appears, as shown.



### • Available Products

The top drop-down menu allows you to select one of the available products to be applied for your rate control field operation. This menu shows all of the application products that you entered in Product Setup. For more information, see [“Product Setup” on page 13.](#)

### • Rate 1 and Rate 2

The Rate 1 and Rate 2 settings represent preset application rates that allow operators to quickly change between desired target rates for each individual product. Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired amount.

### • Increment

The Increment button allows operators to specify the increase or decrease amounts for a specified rate by using the Rate Increase and Rate Decrease arrows on the Product Control Toolbox. Use the numeric keypad to enter the desired increment.

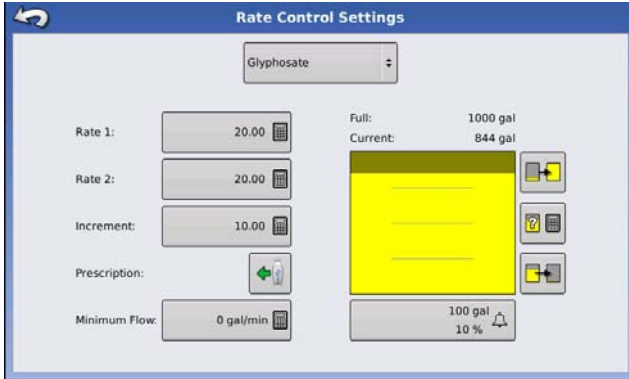
### • Prescription

To load a map-based prescription file, press the Prescription button. For more information, see [“Loading Prescriptions” on page 153.](#)

### • Minimum Flow

(Used for DirectCommand Liquid Applications only). This setting is used to maintain a consistent spray pattern. The display will not allow flow to drop below the entered setting. Set to flow at the lowest operating pressure for the selected spray tips with all sections on. When spraying with one or more boom sections off, the system automatically reduces the minimum flow setting according to the reduced spray width. To adjust this setting, select the keyboard button and enter the desired numeric value.

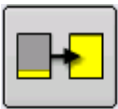
# RATE CONTROL: CONTAINER LEVEL



When filling or emptying your container, you can use the Container Level portion of the Rate Control Settings screen to update the amount of product that exists in the machine's containers.

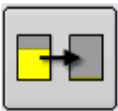
Container Level screen - (Partially Full)

## Tank Fill



The Tank Fill button, as shown at left, increases the container level logged in the display to the maximum volume that you specified for your container in the Container Setup Wizard during the operating configuration procedure.

## Tank Empty



The Tank Empty button, as shown at left, decreases the container level logged in the display to zero.

## Tank Partial Fill



The Tank Partial Fill button, as shown at left, increases the container level logged in the display to specific amount that you specify in the numeric keypad. Pressing the Partial Fill button summons the Adjust Container Amount screen, as shown.

## Adjust Container Amount



- **Add**

Adds product to the container. Use the numeric keypad to enter the amount.

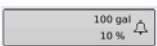
- **Remove**

Removes product from the container. Use the numeric keypad to enter the amount.

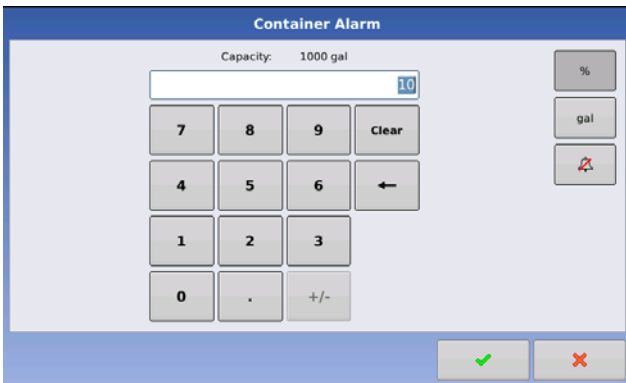
- **Set**

Sets the product level in the container. This button summons a numeric keypad, where you can set a certain amount. Choose an amount that is below your maximum container level.

## Tank Alarms



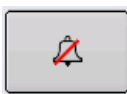
The Container Alarm button, which appears at the bottom of the Container Level portion of the Rate screen (as shown at left), displays the capacity of your tank as well as the percentage at which the Low Container Level warning will sound. To adjust these settings, press the button and the Container Alarm screen appears, as shown.



If you wish to adjust your container level warnings, use the following buttons on the right-hand side of the Container Alarm screen to make these adjustments.

- The percentage (%) button sets the warning threshold according to the percentage of solution left in the tank. In the example above, the threshold is set at 10 percent.

- The units of measurement icon sets the warning threshold according to the amount of solution left in the tank. This icon is named according to the container's units of measurement you specified during the Controller configuration procedure.

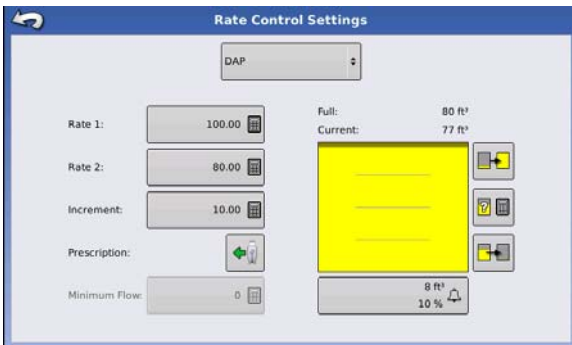


- The Disable Low Container Level button, which appears as a bell with a red slash across it (as shown at left), disables the Low Container Level warning.

## LOADING PRESCRIPTIONS



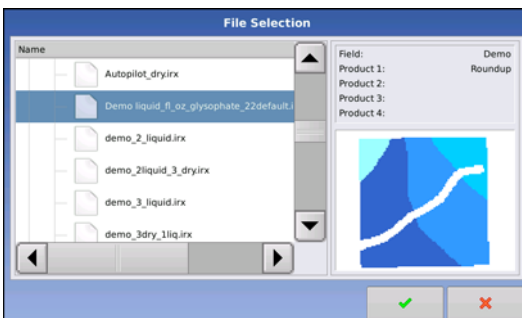
To load a map-based prescription file, press the Rate Setup button on the Product Control Toolbox.



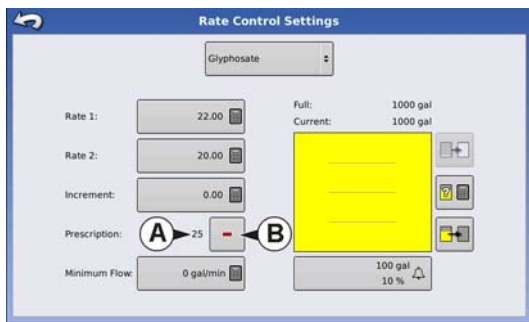
The Rate Control Settings screen appears, as shown.



1. Press the Load Prescription button.



2. The File Selection screen appears as shown.
3. Highlight the correct .rix (prescription) or .shp (shape) file and press the green check mark button.



4. When you return to the Rate Control Settings screen, the prescription rate is now shown on the screen. The Load Prescription button has disappeared and in its place is the Remove Prescription button, which resembles a minus sign. Press the Remove Prescription button if you wish to remove the prescription from the field.

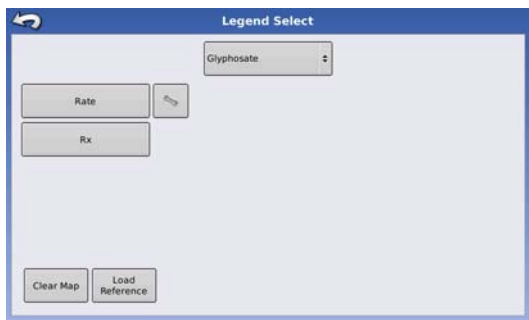
- (A) Default Prescription Rate
- (B) Remove Prescription button

5. When you return to the Map screen, the prescription is now shown on the map, as illustrated in [“Showing Prescriptions on the Map Screen” on page 154](#)

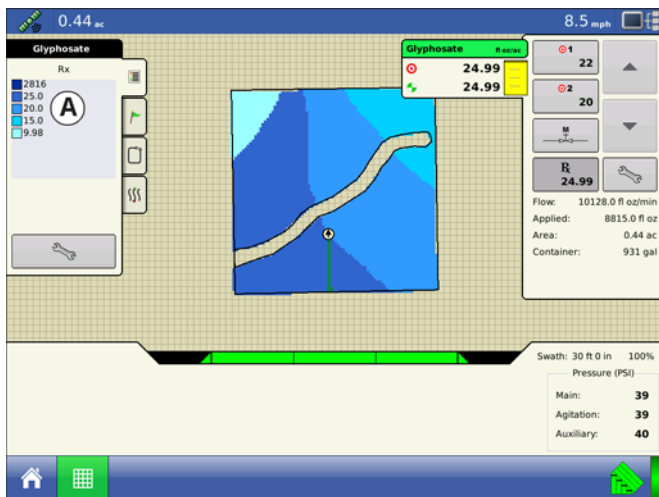
## SHOWING PRESCRIPTIONS ON THE MAP SCREEN



On the Map screen’s Mapping Toolbox, press the Legend Setup (wrench) tool and the Legend Select screen appears, as shown. Notice that the Rx (prescription) button appears at this screen.



1. Press the **Rx** button to show a legend of the prescription rate.



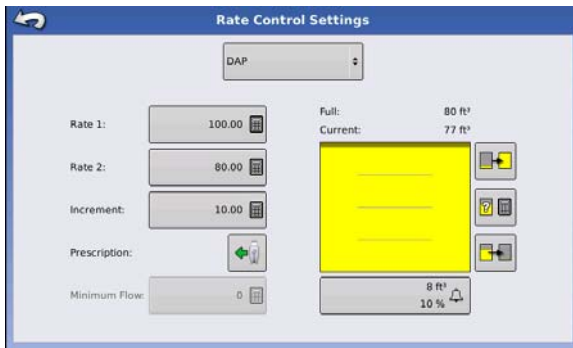
2. After pressing the Rx button, when you return to the Map screen, the prescription rate appears on the **Prescription Rate Legend (A)**. This legend is not editable.

## SHAPE FILE CONVERSION

What is commonly called a shape file is actually a collection of three different files. All three of the files are required and must be present on the USB drive for the system to use shape file groups for variable rate product application. A single "shape file" can contain recommendation rates for multiple products.



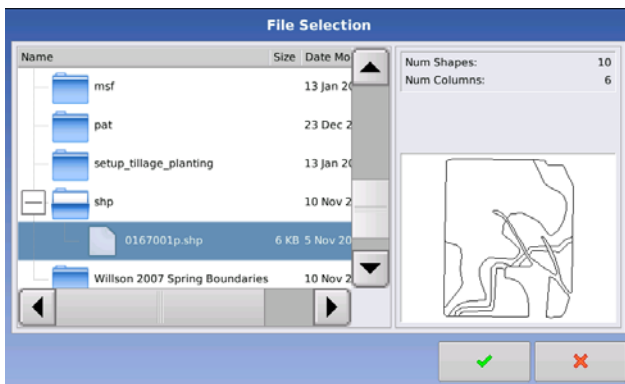
To begin, press the Rate Setup button on the Product Control Toolbox.



The Rate Control Settings screen appears, as shown.



- 1. Open File Selection screen.**  
Press the Load Prescription button.



- The File Selection screen appears as shown. Highlight your desired .shp file and press the green check mark button.

### 3. Read instructions and disclaimer

Read instructions and disclaimer regarding the shape file conversion process. User knowledge of the column name containing the product recommendation is required to complete this process. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Select Number and Products

Select the number of products to be used in a variable-rate application.



**Note:** Enter the number of products that require a prescription. Manually-controlled products do not require a prescription and should not be included.

### 5. Select Equipment Configuration for Prescription

Enter the channel you wish to use for the shape file conversion.

### 6. Select Shape File Product and Units

From the product list box, make the selection that matches the units that the Rx map was exported for. Select the controlling units for product application. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** Select the product and units that the shape file prescription was made for.

## 7. Select Data From Shape File

From the drop-down menu on the left, select the column that contains the product recommendation rate. The list on the right side of the dialog shows sample data from the selected column. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**CAUTION:** Selection of the wrong data column or unit will result in misapplication of product.

## 8. Default Rate Setting

The system assigns a default rate. Use the on-screen keypad to edit the value if desired.



**Note:** The only time the default rate is used by the system during product application is if the Rate Outside of Field selection is set to "Rx Default". This setting is located in the equipment configuration settings portion of configuration setup. If the Rate Outside of Field selection is set to "Rx Default", the default target rate will be used for product application when the vehicle exits a mapped field area.

## 9. Name New IRX File

If desired, rename the newly created .irx file from the system assigned default. Press the check mark button to complete the shape file conversion process.

# LIQUID APPLICATION DIAGNOSTICS



To go to the Liquid Diagnostics screen, press on the Device Information button, as shown at left. At the Devices screen, highlight the item marked DC Liquid then press the Diagnostics button.

Liquid Diagnostics	
Controller Name	DirectLiquid
Serial Number	2003750001
Main Pressure (kPa)	738
Agitation Pressure (kPa)	662
Auxiliary Pressure (kPa)	655
PWM Duty Cycle (%)	2.55
Flow Meter Signal Frequency (Hz)	0
Flow Meter Pulse Count	0

The Liquid Diagnostics screen includes the Active Controller Name and the Serial Number of the module. Other information provided includes the Main Pressure, Agitation Pressure, and Auxiliary Pressure. These raw sensor readings are shown in kilopascals (kPa).



**Note:** If you selected PWM as the Control Valve then the current PWM Duty Cycle is shown as a percentage number, in the **PWM Duty Cycle (%)** item on the Liquid Diagnostic screen.

### • Flow Meter Signal Frequency (Hz)

allows users to view the frequency generated by the flow meter during product application. This diagnostic item can be used to make sure the flow meter is providing continuous feedback to the system.

- **Flow Meter Pulse Count**

provides a rolling count of pulses generated from the flow meter during product application. This diagnostic item can be used to easily check that the flow meter is providing feedback to the system and also provides a way to check flow meter cabling without changing settings within the system setup.

## TROUBLESHOOTING DIRECTCOMMAND LIQUID APPLICATIONS

**Problem:** Boom indicators on the run screen of the display do not turn blue.

**Solution:**

1. Make sure ground speed is registering a value greater than zero on the display.
2. Verify a target rate greater than zero is entered into the display.
3. Check the switch status found on the Run screen under System and Input Diagnostics. As the boom switches are turned on and off, the Input Diagnostics window should change from black to green (if they do not, then refer to the installation instructions to verify boom switch connections).
4. Check high current connection into the Liquid Control Module.
5. Make sure the implement cable PN 4000495-1 is plugged in. If plugged in, then test for 12 volts on pins A and B.

**Problem:** Boom indicators on the Run screen of the display turn blue, but the booms do not open.

**Solution:**

1. Check wiring connections for all of the boom valves.
2. Verify that the cabling is providing 12 volts to the boom valve on the signal pin



**Note:** You can also check for 12 volts on pins 1-10 on the boom connection of the liquid module.

**Problem:** Boom valves pause up to 5 seconds before turning on by manual control.

**Solution:**

1. Verify that the InSight display and Liquid Control Module are both updated to the latest available firmware.
2. The boom switch cable may be wired incorrectly. For details, refer to the installation instructions.



**Note:** This issue should only occur on John Deere sprayers. Make sure the black wires in the switch cable are connected.

**Problem:** Booms will not turn on when the foot pedal is on.

**Solution:** Make sure the Master Switch Input is set to "External 2" under the Auxiliary Input Settings.

**Problem:** AutoSwath turns on the boom too fast or too slow.

**Solution:**

1. Check GPS offsets in the vehicle setup to verify all the measurements are correct.
2. Verify the boom offsets are appropriate for the sprayer.



**Note:** Boom offsets are measured from the center of the vehicle to the center of the boom section.

3. Adjust the turn on look-ahead and turn off look-ahead to fine-tune Automatic Swath Control performance.
4. Verify the boom offsets are appropriate for the sprayer.

**Problem:** No “As Applied” rate

**Solution:**

1. Check cabling from the channel connection of the Liquid Control Module to the flow meter.
2. Check flow meter for product buildup and proper operation.

**Problem:** Rate is erratic

**Solution:**

1. Verify that the rate display smoothing option is check marked in the setup of the configuration.
2. Check the controller settings of the active configuration. Verify that the valve setting for your particular type of control valve agree with the settings given in the Quick Reference Guide.
3. Use manual valve control to see if the rate stays constant.

**Problem:** Erratic behavior from the flow meter and boom valves.

**Solution:** Verify that the display firmware and module firmware are both current.

**Problem:** No boom pressure at the start of the field.

**Solution:** Before product application begins, use manual valve control to build boom pressure. Select either Rate 1 or Rate 2 once pressure is set to desired level. Enter the pass and allow automatic control to take over once the sections are turned on.

**Problem:** AutoSwath checked on, but booms will not turn on.

**Solution:**

1. Make sure the ground speed is registering a value greater than zero on the display and not in the covered area.
2. Make sure there is a target rate greater than 0.
3. Make sure the applicator is inside of the field boundary.

**Problem:** Booms turn on in the middle of the pass.

**Solution:**

1. Check the display firmware and module firmware to see if they are the latest version released.
2. Make sure the ground speed does not go to 0.
3. Make sure the GPS is not losing the differential source.

**Problem:** Rate not responding (error flashing)

**Solution:**

1. Make sure the flow meter calibration number matches the tag on the flow meter.



**Note:** For Raven flow meters, divide the calibration number by 10.

---

2. Make sure the pump is not maxed out for the flow being applied.
3. Use manual valve control to see if the control valve will open or close.
4. Check the tip manufacturer's charts to make sure they are in the operating range of the application.
5. Check for any product buildup in the flow meter.
6. Check product filter for debris.

**Problem:** Booms turn on when outside of the boundary.

**Solution:**

1. Make sure the Rate Outside of Field option is set to zero under the active configuration settings.
2. Make sure the Outside Boundary Option is set to Turn Section Off under the Automatic Swath Control options.
3. Make sure there is not a gap between the boundary and the first pass of the headlands.



**Note:** For best results, run a new boundary when spraying the first pass of the headlands.

**Problem:** Booms turn on for a split second in the headlands

**Solution:**

1. Make sure that the turn on look-ahead is greater than the turn off look-ahead.
2. Make sure GPS offsets are correct.
3. Make sure look aheads are less than three seconds each.

## JOHN DEERE SPECIFIC INSTRUCTIONS

Here are some tips to remember when operating the display in conjunction with a Spray Star control system. Refer to the quick reference sheet PN: 2002831-38 and other sections of the user guide for specific setup and operation instructions.

## MASTER SWITCH INPUT

After setting up a configuration in the display make sure to change the master switch input setting from standard to optional. This will tell the display to read the foot pedal for the master switch input status.

## MASTER SWITCH USAGE

When manually shutting off all boom sections in the field, use the foot pedal switch. Leave the OEM master switch on the hydro handle ON during field use. Using the hydro handle switch may lead to improper field coverage, poor AutoSwath performance, and inaccurate spray records. Only use the John Deere master switch when completely shutting down the sprayer to transport or service the machine.

## TARGET RATE

The display must have a non-zero target rate entered in the display before the boom valves will open for product application. Ensure that the target rate entered into the display and Spray Star match to avoid any unwarranted alarms or warnings on the display.

## DATA COLLECTION

The display will create a coverage map of all product application while logging actual application rate from the product control system flow meter.

## AUTOSWATH BOOM SECTION CONTROL

The display will automatically control the boom section on/off status based upon previously applied area, field boundary, and any mapped internal field boundaries.

# SPRAY STAR APPLICATION RATE

The display will not control the rate based upon the target rate value entered into the system.

Application rate is controlled exclusively by the Spray Star display.

# SPRAY STAR RINSE CYCLE

When using the rinse cycle feature on the Spray Star, the display must have the boom sections on to allow the Spray Star to properly run the rinse routine. To ensure that boom sections are on:

1. Enter a target rate into the display
2. Turn the foot pedal master switch on
3. Turn all boom switches on
4. Boom indicators on the Run screen must be blue showing that boom valves are on

# CONTROL VALVE SETTINGS

## Liquid Product Control Valve Configuration Options

- **Inline Servo**

Rate control is achieved through actuating a butterfly or ball valve found in the solution hose that goes to the booms. When the valve opens, the flow increases and when the valve closes, the flow decreases.

- **Bypass Servo**

Rate control is achieved through actuating a butterfly or ball valve found in the return line to the solution tank. When the valve opens, the flow decreases and when the valve closes the flow increases.

- **PWM 12 volt**

Rate control is achieved through speed changes to the solution pump. The PWM 12 Volt setting is programmed to pulse the power to an electric solenoid valve used to adjust the hydraulic flow to the solution pump.

- **Pump Servo**

Rate control is achieved through speed changes to the solution pump. The pump servo setting is programmed to control an electric motor used to actuate a hydraulic valve to adjust the hydraulic flow to the solution pump.

- **PWM Ground**

Rate control is achieved through speed changes to the solution pump. The PWM Ground setting is programmed to pulse the ground to an electric solenoid valve used to adjust the hydraulic flow to the solution pump.

- **Calibrated Reflow**

Three-way boom valves are used to return product back to the tank in the off state. The returned flow is calibrated with adjustment at each valve. Calibration is required any time the nozzles are changed.

- **Ramsey Valve**

A pneumatically-operated bypass valve. When air is supplied to the valve the rate increases; when air is released from the valve the rate decreases.

## SERVO CONTROL VALVE SETTINGS (BY MANUFACTURER)

Flow Control Valve	Control Valve Configuration	Valve Response 1	Valve Response 2	Response Threshold
Raven Accu-Flow, 20 GPM Single Valve System (Fast Close Valve)	In-line servo	40%	10%	5
Raven Accu-Flow, 10 GPM Dual Valve System (Standard Valve)	In-line servo	100%	24%	5
Raven Accu-Flow, 30 GPM Single Valve System (Fast Close Valve)	In-line servo	40%	10%	5
Raven Accu-Flow, 30 GPM Dual Valve System (Standard Valve)	In-line servo	100%	24%	5
Raven Flow Control Valve, 3/4" (Standard Valve)	In-line or Bypass Servo	100%	24%	1
Raven Flow Control Valve, 3/4" (Fast)	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	5
Raven Flow Control Valve, 1" (Standard)	In-line or Bypass Servo	100%	24%	2
Raven Flow Control Valve, 1" (Fast)	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	5
Raven Flow Control Valve, 1 1/2" (Standard)	In-line or Bypass Servo	100%	24%	3
Raven Flow Control Valve, 2" (Standard)	In-line or Bypass Servo	100%	24%	8
Raven Flow Control Valve, 2" (Fast)	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	15
Raven Flow Control Valve, 3" (Standard)	In-line or Bypass Servo	100%	24%	15
Mid-Tech, 3/4"	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	5
Mid-Tech, 1"	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	8
Mid-Tech, 1 1/2"	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	11
Mid-Tech, 2"	In-line or Bypass Servo	40%	10%	15

Flow Control Valve	Control Valve Configuration	Valve Response 1	Valve Response 2	Response Threshold
Dickey-john NH3 Heat Exchanger	In-line Servo	40%	10%	8

Flow Control Valve or Sprayer Model (and year if applicable)	Control System	PWM Frequency	Typical Gain Range	Zero Offset	Allowable Error	Valve Response 1	Valve Response 2	Response Threshold
Apache 510/710/1010/1210 (2006 and up)	In-line Servo				2%	100%	24%	Use a starting value of 5. See note below.
All Case IH sprayers when using AIM Command	AIM Command In-line servo				2%	100%	24%	3
Case IH Surveyor with A-post	Non-AIM Command Mode PWM 12-volt	122	**700-900	35	2%			
Case IH 3320	Non-AIM Command Mode PWM 12-volt	122	**700-900	35	2%			
Case IH 4420 with A-post	Non-AIM Command Mode PWM 12-volt	122	**700-900	35	2%			
Case IH 3200 (KZKCO Valve)	Non-AIM Command Mode By-Pass Servo				2%	40%	10%	5
Case IH 4260 with Raven valve	Non-AIM Command Mode By-Pass Servo				2%	100%	24%	3

Flow Control Valve or Sprayer Model (and year if applicable)	Control System	PWM Frequency	Typical Gain Range	Zero Offset	Allowable Error	Valve Response <sub>1</sub>	Valve Response <sub>2</sub>	Response Threshold
Case IH 4260 with KZKCO valve	Non-AIM Command Mode By-Pass Servo				2%	40%	10%	5
Case IH 3150 with Raven valve	Non-AIM Command Mode In-Line Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
Case 3185 with Raven valve	Non-AIM Command Mode In-Line Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
Case IH 3310	Non-AIM Command Mode PWM 12-Volt	122	**700-900	30	2%			
Case IH 4410	Non-AIM Command PWM 12-Volt	122	**700-900	30	2%			
GVM Prowler (2007)	Pump Servo				2%	100	24	10
GVM Predator	Servo				2%	100%	24%	**See note below
Hagie 284, 284XP, DTS-8	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
Hagie 2100, 2101, DTS-10	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
Hagie STS 10, 12, (2000 to 2005)	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	20
Hagie STS 10, 12, 14, 16 (2006 and up)	PWM 12-volt	122	**350-600	20	2%			
Hagie 39-pin Spray II switch box (2006 and 2007)	Calibrated Reflow				2%	100%	40%	2
John Deere 4700, 47X0, 49X0	No rate control provided							
Miller Nitro N1 and N2	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	20

Flow Control Valve or Sprayer Model (and year if applicable)	Control System	PWM Frequency	Typical Gain Range	Zero Offset	Allowable Error	Valve Response <sub>1</sub>	Valve Response <sub>2</sub>	Response Threshold
Miller Nitro N4	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	12
Montana Paruda	Calibrated Reflow				2%	100%	40%	2 (Imperial) or 11.4 (Metric)
RoGator 864, 874, 1064, 1074	PWM Ground	122	**500-700	30	2%			
RoGator 1054	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
RoGator 1254	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
RoGator 1264, 1274 (up to 2006)	PWM Ground	122	**500-700	30	2%			
RoGator 1274, 1286, and SS Series (2007 and up)	PWM Ground	122	**500-700	30	2%			
Spra-Coupe 3X40, 3X50, 4X40, 4X50	In-Line Servo				2%	100%	24%	3
Spra-Coupe 7000 with factory pump switch	PWM Ground	122	**500-700	30	2%			
Spra-Coupe without factory pump switch	PWM Ground	122	**500-700	30	2%			
TerraGator XX03, XX04, XX44	In-Line Servo				2%	40%	10%	15
Tyler Patriot, Patriot II, XL, 150, 150XL and WT	Check for In-Line Servo or By-Pass Servo Control				2%	100%	24%	3
Walker	Pump Servo				2%	100%	24%	3

\*Adjust this number to fit your particular configuration. Refer to the Application section in the InSight User Manual for more information on adjusting this response threshold.

\*\*If you are using a PWM control valve, some adjustment may need to be made to achieve optimal pump response to the PWM gain value. Increase the Gain value to make the system more responsive; decrease the Gain value to smooth the system response.

## LIQUID SERVO SETTINGS DESCRIPTION

### • Valve Response 1

Default Value: 100%

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting.

Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower.

### • Valve Response 2

Default Value: 24%

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting.

Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower.

### • Allowable Error

Default Value: 2%

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate corrections.

2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

### • Response Threshold

Default Value: 3

Determines where the control system switches between using Valve Response 1 or Valve Response 2 speed setting.

Leaving all other valve control settings at the default value and making a small adjustment to this setting is usually all that is required to fine tune system performance.

- Decreasing this value will have the overall effect of speeding up servo valve response.
- Increasing this value will have the overall effect of slowing servo valve response.

## LIQUID PWM CONTROL VALVE SETTINGS DESCRIPTION

### • PWM Frequency

Default Value: 100

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Typical settings range from 100 - 125. See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

### • Gain

Default Value: 800

This setting determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate change adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.

### • Zero Offset

Default Value: 30

This setting represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero Offset value can cause the product control system to not properly shut off. See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

• **Allowable Error**

Default Value: 2%

2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

## DICKEY-JOHN NH3 CONVERSIONS

### Conversion Formulas

The following formulas can be used to convert the Dickey John flow sensor constant to a value that represents pulses/gallon of anhydrous ammonia for use by the display.

Conversion Formula
Formula for flow meter calibration for Dickey John reading pounds of anhydrous $\frac{\text{Flow sensor constant (pulses/in}^3\text{)} \times 1728 \text{ (in}^3\text{/ft}^3\text{)} \times 5.11 \text{ (lbs of anhydrous/gal)}}{\text{Solution: Density (lbs. of anhydrous/ft}^3\text{)}}$
Formula for flow meter calibration for Dickey John reading pounds of Nitrogen $\frac{\text{Flow sensor constant (pulses/in}^3\text{)} \times 1728 \text{ (in}^3\text{/ft}^3\text{)} \times 4.22 \text{ (lbs of N/gal)}}{\text{Density (lbs. of N/ft}^3\text{)}}$



**Note:** The flow sensor constant is tagged on the Dickey-John flow meter. The density setting comes from a chart in the Dickey-John documentation and is not provided in this manual.

## TROUBLESHOOTING SERIAL CONTROL APPLICATIONS

**Problem:** Rate changes on the display, but not on the controlled console.

**Solution:**

1. Verify the current firmware is running on the display and Application Rate module.
2. Check the settings specific to your controlled console. (For more information, refer to the Quick Reference Guide).
3. Check cabling and all connections.
4. Disconnect the serial connection and determine if the controller is functioning properly without the display.

**Problem:** The display rate and serial-controlled rate do not match.

**Solution:**

1. Verify the current firmware is running on the display and the Application Rate Module.
2. Check the percent rate change. (Refer to the Quick Reference Guide for more information). controlled console.

# MISCELLANEOUS

## GLOSSARY OF APPLICATION SETTINGS

### Configuration Settings

- **Rate Outside of Field**

Rate that will be used outside of the field boundary. **Zero** stops product application. **Last Good** uses the previous rate before exiting the boundary. **Rx Default** uses the default rate written in the prescription file loaded.

- **Rate Display Smoothing**

Determines how the feedback from the control channel's rate sensor will be displayed on the run screen. When checked, the system will display the target rate when the application rate is within 10% of the target rate setting. When unchecked the system will display the raw feedback from the rate sensor.

- **Minimum Flow**

This setting is used to maintain a consistent spray pattern. The display will not allow flow to drop below the entered setting. Set to flow at the lowest operating pressure for the selected spray tips with all sections on. When spraying with one or more boom sections off, the system automatically reduces the minimum flow setting according to the reduced spray width. To adjust this setting, select the keyboard button and enter the desired numeric value.

- **Controller Time Delay**

Compensates for any delay in the control system when changing between different product flow rates during variable rate application.

### Speed Input Settings

- **Primary Speed Source**

Main speed input source used by the display.

- **Backup Speed Source**

If the primary speed source fails, the display will use the backup if one is available.

- **Manual Speed**

If both of the speed input sources are unavailable, manual speed can be used in order for the control channel to provide application. Manual speed setting is for use during static machine testing or by the control system in the absence of primary and backup speed signals.

### Automatic Swath Control Settings

- **Turn-On Look-Ahead**

Determines how far ahead the system looks to turn the swath sections back on. This setting compensates for any delay in the product control system when the sections are turned on.

- **Turn-Off Look-Ahead**

Determines how far ahead the system looks to turn the swath sections off. This setting compensates for delay in the product control system when the boom sections are turned off.

- **Outside Boundary Option**

Determines the behavior of the sections when exiting the field boundary or prescription-mapped area.

- **Coverage Option**

Based on the coverage option selected, this setting determines the behavior of the swath section when entering/exiting an already applied area or field boundary. Options available include: Minimize Skip, Minimize Overlap, and User Defined Percentage.

## Auxiliary Input Settings

- **Master Switch**

Switch that performs global master control of all rate control channels.

- **F1-F11**

Settings determine the switch(es) that will operate the controlling channel specified from the configuration setup. Single switches can be used to control multiple channels and swath sections.

## Controller Settings

- **Flow Meter Cal**

Calibration value representing the number of pulses that equal one-gallon of product flow through the controlling system.

- **Control Valve Configuration**

Setting specifies the type of control valve being used for the rate control functions of the controlling system.

- **Response Threshold**

Determines where the control channel switches between using Valve Response 1 and Valve Response 2 speed setting.

- **Valve Response 1**

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting. Valve Response 1 represents the fast speed of the servo valve.

- **Valve Response 2**

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting. Valve Response 2 represents the slow speed of the servo valve.

- **Allowable Error**

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes.

- **Flow Control Delay**

Setting for period of time from master switch on and the start of product application to the first flow control correction. This setting can be used to eliminate unwanted correction of flow control at the start of each pass. Typical setting values are zero for granular and 1 –2 seconds for liquid application control.

- **Close Flow Control Valve When Rate Off**

When selected the controlling system will shut down when there is either a zero rate in the field or entering an already applied area. When unchecked the controlling system will stay in the last known state when the sections are shut off.

- **PWM Frequency**

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve. Typical settings range from 100-125 Hz.

- **PWM Gain**

Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate change adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.

- **Zero Flow Offset**

Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero Flow Offset value can cause the product control system to not properly control low rates. See the PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **Shaft Speed Cal**

Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the rate control metering system.

- **Max Conveyor Speed**

Setting determines the maximum RPM of the conveyor that controls product distribution to the application point. This setting is used when controlling a spinner spreader applicator.

- **Fan Speed Cal**

Number of pulses that are generated by the sensor during one revolution of the blower fan shaft.

- **Max Metering Speed**

Setting determines the maximum RPM of the metering shaft that controls product distribution to the application point. This setting is used when controlling a granular strip-till toolbar.

- **Min Speed**

Setting represents the desired minimum speed of the blower fan. An alarm will sound if the blower fan speed falls below this value.

- **Max Speed**

Setting represents the desired maximum speed of the blower fan. An alarm will sound if the blower fan speed exceeds this value.

- **Low Fan Speed Shutoff**

When selected, granular product application of a strip-till toolbar will be shut off if fan speed drops below the Min Speed setting.

- **Rate Threshold**

Percentage difference between the Actual Rate and the Target Rate when the Rate Not Responding Message is displayed on the Run screen.

## FERTILIZER DEFAULT PRODUCT SETTINGS

Material	Type	Abbreviated name for display and predefined name for SMS	Percentage (in terms of lbs.100 lbs.)			Density
			N	P (P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> )	K (K <sub>2</sub> O)	
Anhydrous Ammonia	Liquid under pressure	NH <sub>3</sub>	82	0	0	5.14 lbs./gal. (at 60°F)
28% UAN	Liquid	28% UAN	28	0	0	10.67
30% UAN	Liquid	30% UAN	30	0	0	10.86 lbs./gal.
32% UAN	Liquid	32% UAN	32	0	0	11.06 lbs./gal.
Ammonium polyphosphate (starter)	Liquid	Ammonium polyphosphate	10	34	0	11.73 lbs./gal.

# INJECTION

DirectCommand interfaces with the Raven SCS Sidekick™ for complete control over chemical injection applications. The display can support up to four Raven SCS Sidekick™ injection pumps plus a liquid carrier.

## CREATE CONFIGURATION

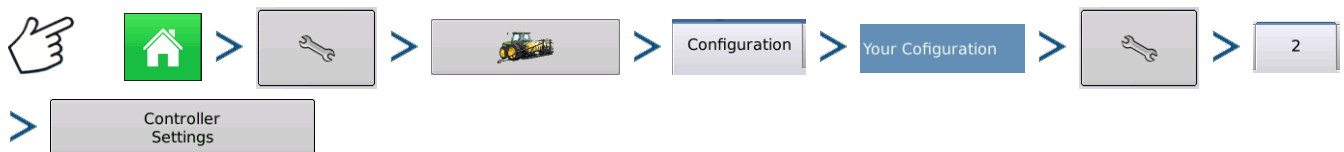


Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > Add (+) button > Application button

A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a vehicle, implement and controllers.

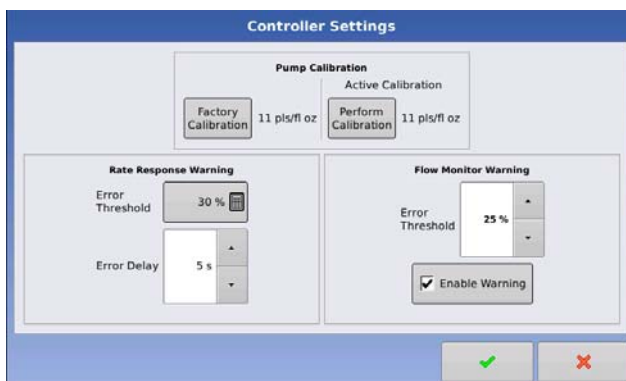
Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23*

## SETUP CONFIGURATION



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > 2 tab > Controller Settings button

The Controller Settings screen appears, as shown.



### Pump Calibration

#### • Factory Calibration

This number is found on the tag of the Digital Pump Speed Sensor. This tag number represents pulses per 10 fluid ounces. Divide the tag number by 10 and enter this number. Once entered, this number should not be changed.

#### • Perform Calibration

Press the Perform Calibration button to begin the calibration procedure for the Direct Injection pump. The pump will not run until this calibration has been

performed. For more information, see *“Calibrating an Injection Pump” on page 172*.

### Rate Response Warning

#### • Error Threshold

The user-defined percentage of actual rate error allowed before an alarm sounds.

#### • Error Delay

The number of seconds that the actual rate falls out of the error threshold before an alarm sounds.

## Flow Monitor Warning

- **Error Threshold**

The percentage of perceived application error, based on the discharge flow sensor.

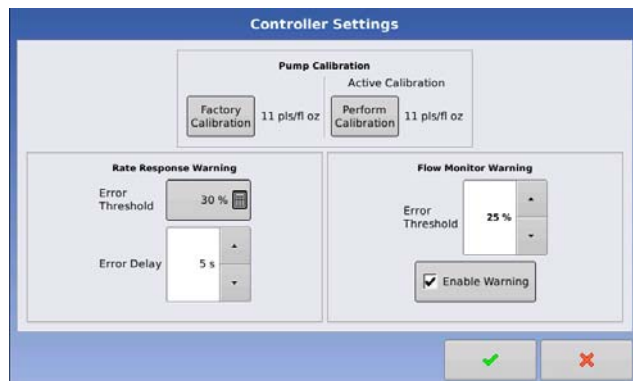
- **Enable Warning**

The Enable Warning check box allows you the option of displaying the Flow Monitor Warning.

## Calibrating an Injection Pump



Direct Injection users should calibrate the Injection Pump at the beginning of each season, and any time that repairs are made. To begin, go to the Setup screen's Configuration Tab and press the Setup (wrench) button. This takes you to the Configuration Setup screen. At the Configuration Setup screen, go to the second tab, titled Injection. At the Injection Tab, press the Controller Settings button, and the Controller Settings screen appears, as shown.



### 1. Enter Factory Calibration

Before entering a Direct Injection Calibration, a Factory Calibration must be entered. If you have not already done so, enter the Factory Calibration Number by pressing the Factory Calibration button. This number is found on the tag of the Digital Pump Speed Sensor. This tag number represents pulses per 10 fluid ounces. Divide the tag number by 10 and enter this number. Once entered, this number should not be changed.

### 2. Press Perform Calibration

Underneath Pump Calibration, press the Perform Calibration button.

### 3. Prime the Direct Injection Pump

The Pump Calibration Wizard appears. Before beginning this calibration procedure, it is recommended that you first prime the Direct Injection pump. Press the Prime button and continue along with the priming procedure as described in *"Priming an Injection Pump"*, beginning with Step 3 on [page 173](#). After the priming procedure is finished, you will return to this Pump Calibration Wizard window. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Enter the Dispense Amount

Enter the amount that you want dispensed. Press Next to continue.

### 5. Acknowledge the Warning

Prepare to catch any product dispensed in an appropriate container. Press the green check mark button to continue.



### 6. Start Calibration

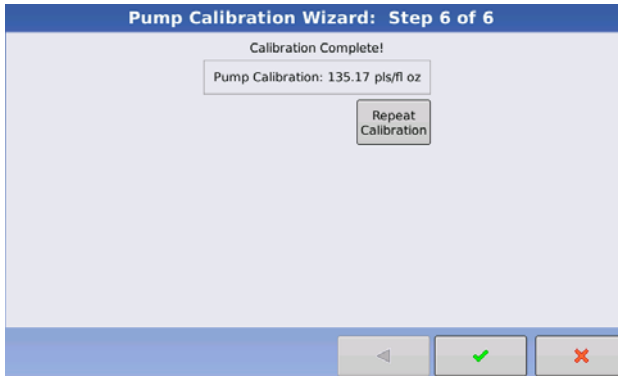
Press the green-colored START button to begin the calibration procedure. The Pump Calibration Wizard automatically counts up to the amount that you specified in Step 4. The button will turn red and displays STOP while the product is being dispensed (an example is shown at left). When the procedure is finished, the button will again turn green. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** You may press the **Reset** button if you wish to start the calibration procedure over.

## 7. Enter Actual Dispense Amount

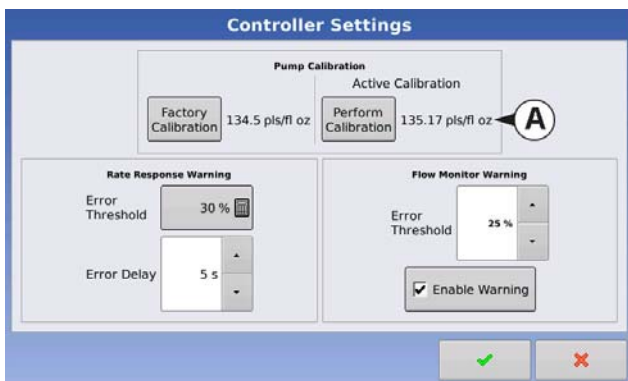
Enter in the actual amount of the product that was dispensed. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



## 8. Calibration Complete

The Pump Calibration number appears. The New Injection Pump Calibration Number now appears in the Pump Calibration screen. From this point, you may either:

- Repeat the calibration by pressing the **Repeat Calibration** button.
- Press the green check mark button to complete the calibration and exit the Pump Calibration Wizard.



## 9. Calibration Displayed on Controller Settings screen.

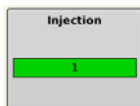
The new Injection **Pump Calibration Number (A)** now appears in the Pump Calibration screen, as shown at left.

## Priming an Injection Pump

If you are using a Direct Injection configuration, you must prime the Injection Pump each time you flush or refill a tank, or change products. This ensures that air is not in the product lines

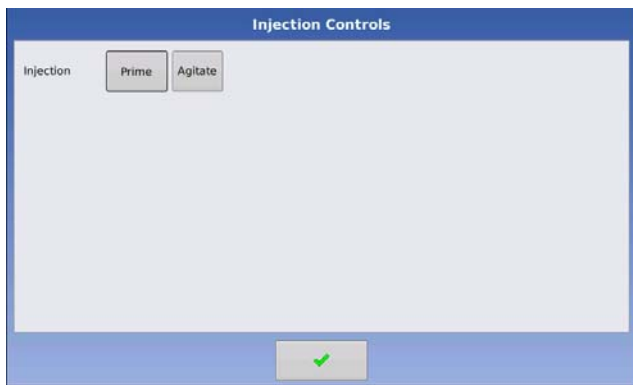


**CAUTION:** Failure to perform this priming procedure before beginning a Direct Injection application could result in skips at the start of field operations.



### 1. Press Injection Control button

To prime the Injection Pump, first go to the Map screen. Press the Injection button, as shown at left. The Injection button is located at the left-hand side of the Equipment Tab. The Injection Controls screen appears, as shown.



agitates the product intermittently).

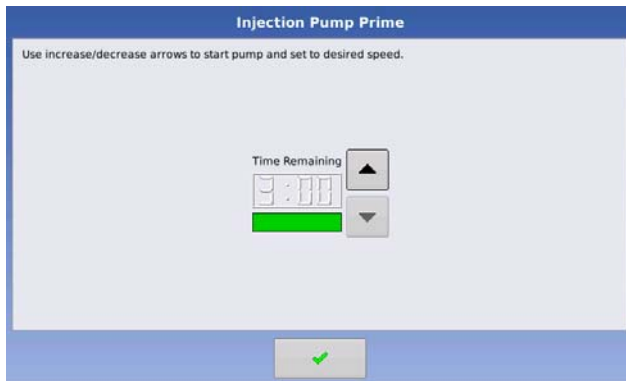
## 2. Press the Prime button

At the Injection Controls screen, press the Prime button.

- You may agitate the Direct Injection tank by pressing the **Agitate** button. Once pressed, this Agitate setting will continue even after the Priming process is finished, until you press the green check mark button a second time. To determine if a product should be agitated, check the product specifications.
- In order for a Direct Injection tank to agitate the product, you must set the agitator motor switch on **Run** (which agitates the product continuously) or **Pulse** (which

## 3. Acknowledge the Warning

A warning appears, stating that you must circulate the product back to the Direct Injection tank. Acknowledge the warning by pressing the green check mark button.



## 4. Start Pump and Set Desired Speed

The Injection Pump Prime screen appears. The countdown time remaining is shown in the black box. The bar underneath turns green when the pump is operating. Use the up and down arrows to manually increase or decrease the pump speed.

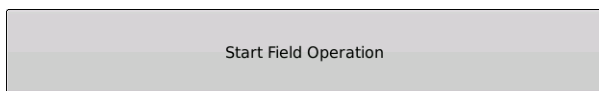


**Note:** The recommended priming time is three minutes (3:00), but the routine can be ended at any time by pressing the green check mark button.

5. **Acknowledge the Warning.** A warning appears, stating that you must return chemical injection plumbing to a field-ready state. Acknowledge the warning by pressing the green check mark button.

## LOAD CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Start Field Operation

Select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#).

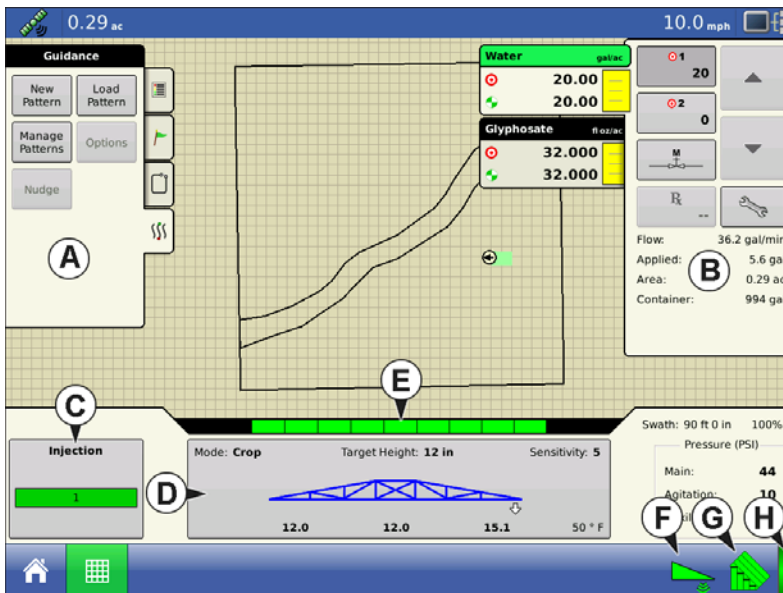


Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen.

## RUN CONFIGURATION



Press the Map View button to see the Map screen. The map below is displayed in Zoom to Detail view.



- (A) Mapping Toolbox
- (B) Product Control Toolbox
- (C) Injection Controls button
- (D) NORAC UC5 Boom Height Control Options button
- (E) Section Indicators
- (F) NORAC UC5 Engage button
- (G) AutoSwath
- (H) Master Switch Status (on)

### • Injection Controls button (C)

Direct Injection Control users who have included one or more Direct Injection controllers in the configuration, the number of these controllers appears in the box within the Injection Control button. This button displays green for each injection module when the discharge sensor is detecting flow from the pump. Press the Injection Controls button to Prime or Agitate the Injection pump.

## INJECTION DIAGNOSTICS



The Injection Diagnostics screen provides raw values from sensors verifying that the pump's output is working. To go to the Injection Diagnostics screen, press on the Device Information button, as shown at left. At the Devices screen, highlight the item marked AL Direct Inject then press the Diagnostics button. The Injection Diagnostics screen appears, as shown. In addition to the Controller's Name and Serial Number, it provides the following information:

Injection Diagnostics	
Controller Name	Di
Serial Number	2008850060
Digital Pump Speed (Hz)	67.0
Analog Pump Speed (V)	7.2
Discharge Flow Monitor (Hz)	9.9
Flow/Speed Sensor Ratio	0.0

### • Digital Pump Speed

Displays volume information, shown in Hz.

### • Analog Pump Speed

Displays varying voltage as pump speed is increased or decreased.

### • Discharge Flow Monitor

Displays information showing that flow is being discharged for every piston stroke.

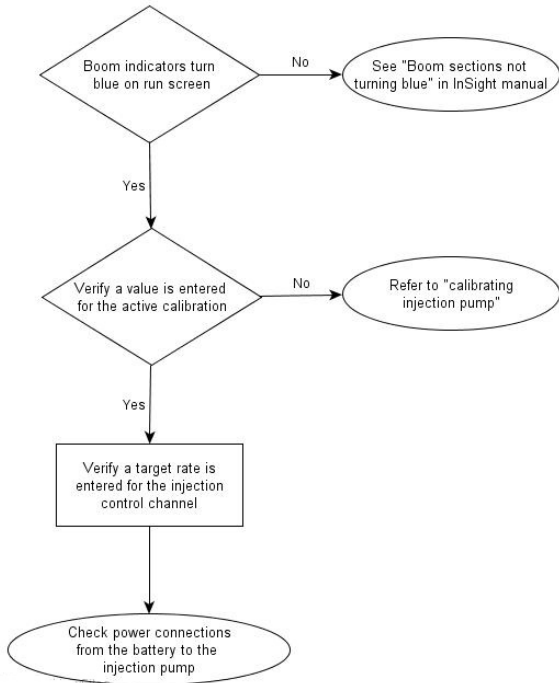
### • Flow/Speed Sensor Ratio

The ratio that the system derived for calibration.

# TROUBLESHOOTING DIRECT INJECTION CONFIGURATIONS

When controlling a chemical injection pump using the Injection Module PN: 4000896 the configuration requires the use of a Liquid Module PN: 4000394. The injection control is based off of the vehicle that has been configured for the liquid DirectCommand control channel. Once configured, the Injection pump uses the same switch inputs and ground speed input that has been configured for the liquid system.

## Direct Injection: Pump Doesn't Run

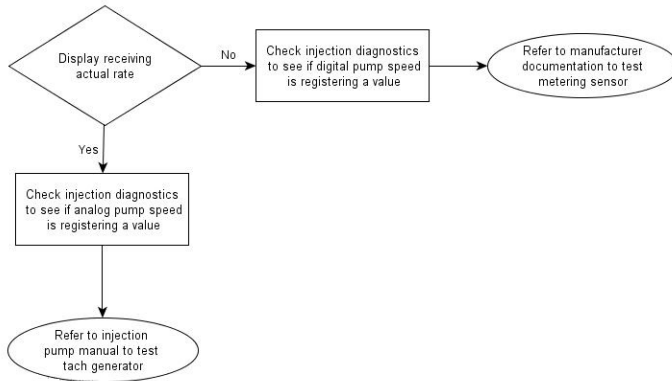


Power can be checked at multiple locations. First is the connection at the Injection module where the battery power cable plugs in. The second location is the output connection found on the injection module. The third is found at the 2 pin weather-pak tower found on the injection cable PN: 4000851-3. See table below.

# BATTERY POWER PIN OUTS

	2 Pin Deutsch Plug	2 Pin Deutsch Receptacle	2 Pin WP Tower
Power 12V	1	1	A
Ground	2	2	B

## Direct Injection: Pump Runs Full Speed



**Digital Pump Speed Sensor** - The injection pump's digital pump speed sensor is used to provide actual rate feedback to the display. If the display is not receiving an actual rate the pump will run full speed and provide a "Rate Not Responding" warning message. See Digital Pump Speed Pin out table below for pin locations. With the section valves on the cabling can be tested by pulsing the signal and ground pins to verify the total applied increases, it is always best to pulse the pins at least 10 times to make sure the total applied will increase by a noticeable amount.

# DIGITAL PUMP SPEED PIN OUTS

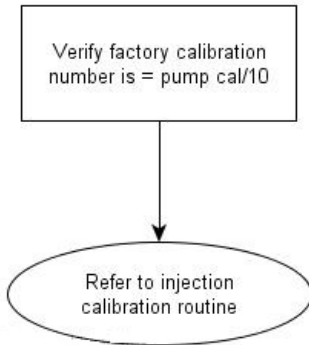
	Module Auxiliary Connection 12-Pin Socket	3-Pin Conxall
Power (5V)	12	2
Signal (5V)	3	3
Ground	6	1

**Analog Pump Speed Sensor** – The injection pump's analog speed sensor is used in conjunction with the digital pump speed sensor to provide accurate rate feedback. The sensor is a generator that produces a varying voltage dependent on the speed of the pump. The injection module will only get feedback from this sensor when the pump is rotating. If the analog sensor is not providing a feedback to the module, the pump will run full speed and the user will not have the ability to manually change the speed.

# ANALOG SPEED PIN OUTS

	Module Auxiliary Connection 12-Pin Socket	3-Pin Conxall
Signal	A	>9V at max pump speed
Ground	B	

## Direct Injection: Application Error

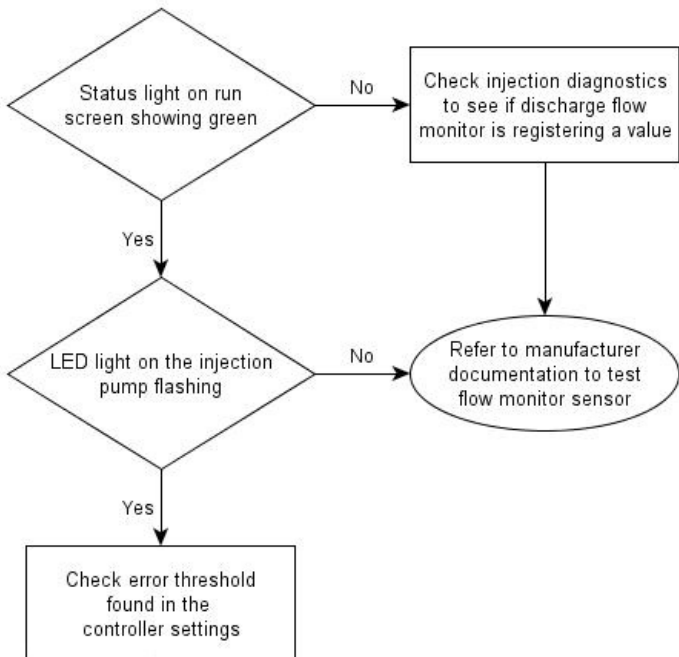


The injection module requires that a pump calibration be performed before actual application can occur. The calibration number found on the tag of the injection pump's digital speed sensor needs to be divided by a factor of 10 before entering it as the factory calibration number. If the factory cal number is entered wrong, the pump calibration routine will not finish due to a high application error.

Notes:

- The pump calibration will fail if error is >10% from the factory calibration number.
- If the calibration fails check pump and plumbing for physical damage or excess wear.

## Direct Injection: Discharge Flow Sensor Error

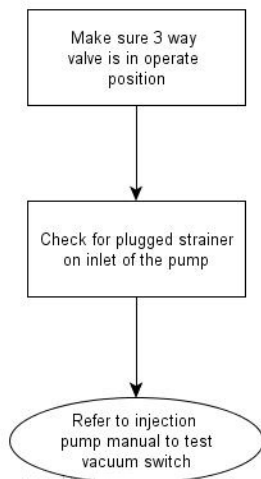


The discharge flow sensor is used as a system check to see if product is actually exiting the output of the pump. The sensor is a shuttle valve that allows feedback for every stroke of the pump. If the user has enabled the Flow Monitor Warning the display will provide a message if the discharge flow sensor falls out of its calibrated value. See table below for pin locations.

# DISCHARGE FLOW SENSOR PIN OUTS

	Module Auxiliary Connection 12-Pin Socket	3-Pin WP Shroud
Power (12V)	11	A
Signal	9	B
Ground	8	C

## Direct Injection: Inlet Restriction



The injection pump has a vacuum switch that is used to warn operators of any restriction at the inlet of the pump. The sensor is a normally closed switch that opens if a restriction is encountered in the injection system. A warning will be displayed for the operator if the vacuum switch opens due to restriction. See table below for pin locations. The operator can test the system by unplugging the sensor, which will trigger the warning. If the operator jumps pins A and C, the warning will end.

# VACUUM SWITCH PIN OUTS

	Module Auxiliary Connection 12-Pin Socket	3-Pin WP Shroud
Power (12V)	2	C
Signal	10	A

## Controller Settings: Direct Injection Pump Calibration

### Pump Calibration Setting

- **Factory Calibration**

The Factory Calibration Number is found on the tag of the Digital Pump Speed Sensor. This tag number represents pulses per 10 fluid ounces. Divide the tag number by 10 and enter this number. Once entered, this number should not be changed.

- **Perform Calibration**

Press the Perform Calibration button to begin the calibration procedure for the Direct Injection pump. The pump will not run until this calibration has been performed.

## Rate Response Warning

- **Error Threshold**

The user-defined percentage of actual rate error allowed before an alarm sounds.

- **Error Delay**

The number of seconds that an actual rate falls out of the error threshold before an alarm sounds.

## Flow Monitor Warning

- **Error Threshold**

The percentage of perceived application error based on the discharge flow sensor.

- **Enable Warning**

The Enable Warning check box allows you the option of displaying the Flow Monitor Warning.

## Field Notes



**Note:** For more information, see [“Report Details” on page 37](#).

---

## Setting Name and Description

- **Auto Generate Report**

When checked, this option will automatically generate the Smart Report each time product application is completed and the Field button is selected.

- **Prompt for Report Details**

When checked, this option will automatically launch the region summary data collection dialog each time a new region is created at the Run screen during application rate control.

- **Report Map Appearance**

- Multi-Color Rate – Select this option to have the Smart Report display the application maps using the rate legend as displayed on the run screen.
- Single Color Coverage – Select this option to have the Smart Report display single color product coverage maps.

## Run Screen

- **AutoSwath**

Use to enable/disable automatic control of boom section on/off state based upon field boundaries, prescription files, and previously applied areas.

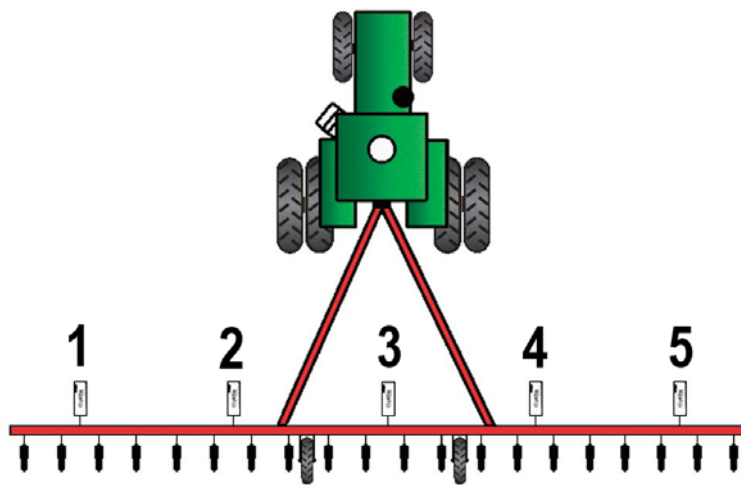
# OPTRX

OptRx uses sensors, usually mounted on the sprayer's booms, to assess reflected light to determine plant vigor. It assigns numeric values to the varying levels of vigor to create a Vegetative Index (VI). Using the VI, OptRx calculates nitrogen application rates—taking into consideration the following preferences of the grower and existing traits in the environment:

- Minimum amount of N to be applied
- Maximum amount of N to be applied
- Conditions where no N should be applied

The nitrogen rates created by OptRx can immediately be used to perform a variable rate application based on the needs of the crop.

## INSTALLATION



The display supports up to 10 OptRx sensors. For swaths that are 80 feet or larger, five sensors or more should be used. For swaths less than 80 feet, a minimum of three sensors is recommended.

When installing sensor cables, you must install them in the correct order from left to right. An example is shown below.



**CAUTION:** If you do not install the sensors in their proper places, then the map created by the display will not accurately reflect actual field conditions according to row sensor placement.

## Checklist

- Sensors should be equally spaced apart. Sensors should not be mounted on the ends of the booms.
- Each sensor should be mounted so that it is centered over the top of a crop row.
- Sensor can operate 20 - 50 in. (51 -127 cm) above the crop canopy. Sensors perform best at 30 - 36 in. (76-91 cm).

## CREATE CONFIGURATION



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > Add (+) button > Application button

A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a vehicle, implement and controllers.

Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#)

### 1. Select Equipment Configuration Type

Select either Single Product Application or Multiple Product Application. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 2. Select Vehicle or Create New Vehicle

Select the vehicle to be used in the configuration from the drop-down list. Otherwise, press the Add button and the Vehicle Setup Wizard walks you through the steps in a vehicle configuration. These steps include entering a Full Swath Width, entering the Number of Boom Sections, and entering Boom Section Widths from Left to Right. Enter a Vehicle Name when complete.



---

**Note:** If you selected **Self-Propelled Sprayer** from the drop down list, proceed through the wizard’s Vehicle Setup process. At the Vehicle Options screen, press the **OptRx Crop Sensor** check box and use the up and down arrows to enter the number of Crop Sensors. Enter a vehicle name and proceed to Step 5.

---

### 3. Select Implement

Press the Add button and proceed to step 4a.



---

**Note:** This step does not apply if you have a self-propelled sprayer. Instead, proceed to step 5.

---

- a. Use the drop-down menu to select the correct Implement Attachment Method and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.
- b. Use the numeric keypad to enter the appropriate swath width and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.
- c. Use the up and down arrow buttons to enter in the number of boom sections. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.
- d. The section numbers and swath widths of the sections are displayed in the next screen. If necessary, adjust the boom widths by pressing on the section number and use the numeric keypad to enter the actual measured width of the boom section. Repeat the process for every boom section until each is correct. Press the blue right-arrow button when complete.



---

**Note:** Individual boom widths must equal the total.

---

- e. Press the numeric keypad to enter the distance from hitch to application point. When complete, press the blue right-arrow button.



---

**Note:** The distance settings must be measured accurately for the AutoSwath™ feature to work properly.

---

- f. Implement Options. Press the **OptRx Crop Sensor** check box, then use the up and down arrows to enter in the number of Crop Sensors.
- g. Enter an implement name by using the keyboard button to type in the preferred name. When complete, press the green check mark button.

### 4. Select Operating Mode

The Operating Configuration Wizard reappears, and you are asked to select an Operating Mode. Use the drop-down menu to select Rate Logging/Control and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

## 5. Select Controller

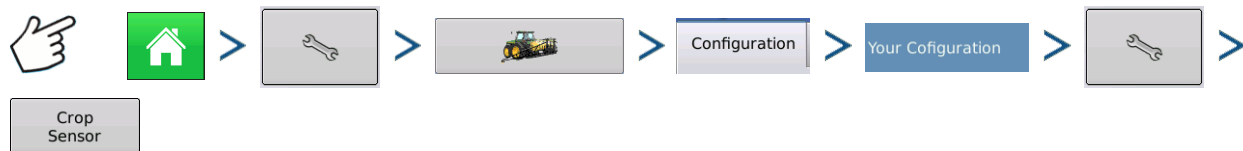
A default name of DirectLiquid appears. Use the drop-down menu to select this controller, or press the Add button to add a controller; then press the blue right-arrow button.

## 6. Finish Configuration


From here, select a container from the drop-down list, or press the Add button to create a new container. When the Operating Configuration Wizard reappears, select a primary and backup Ground Speed Source. At the next screen, accept the Configuration name or edit it using the keyboard button. Last, press the check mark button to complete the wizard and to save the configuration into the display.

## CROP SENSOR SETUP

The Crop Sensor Setup screen is where you can adjust the rate displayed on the Map screen Equipment Tab's VI Bar Graph. You can access the Sensor Setup screen in one of two ways:



Press: Home button > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Crop Sensor button

 **Note:** You must have a Reference Strip loaded for the **Algorithm Settings** button to be active. For more information, see [“Scan a Reference Strip” on page 186](#).

## Corn Settings

Corn  
Settings

- **Minimum Rate**

This setting is a threshold that defines the lowest lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha) the user wishes to apply. If the algorithm prescribes an N rate lower than the [Minimum N Rate], the system shall apply the [Minimum N Rate] instead.

- **Maximum Rate**

This setting is a threshold that defines the highest lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha) the user wishes to apply. If the algorithm prescribes an N rate higher than the [Maximum N Rate], the system shall apply the [Maximum N Rate] instead.

- **Rate Increment**

This setting defines the rate changes steps the system uses to change the N rate. This setting will be in lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha).

- **Rate Offset**

If desired, use the numeric keypad to modify the applied rate in the event of significant field stresses during a season, such as drought conditions; or to make adjustments because of soil type.

- **Growth Stage**

The Growth Stage of the corn plant. Choices are:

- V6-V7
- V8-V10

## North American Wheat Settings

North America  
Wheat  
Settings

- **Minimum Rate**

This setting is a threshold that defines the lowest lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha) the user wishes to apply. If the algorithm prescribes an N rate lower than the [Minimum N Rate], the system shall apply the [Minimum N Rate] instead.

- **Maximum Rate**

This setting is a threshold that defines the highest lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha) the user wishes to apply. If the algorithm prescribes an N rate higher than the [Maximum N Rate], the system shall apply the [Maximum N Rate] instead.

- **Rate Increment**

This setting defines the rate changes steps the system uses to change the N rate. This setting will be in lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha).

- **Economic Optimal Rate**

Input the total amount of nitrogen used by the plant over the growing season.

- **N Credits**

Input the amount of N that is available to the plant in the soil.

- **Pre-Topdress Rate**

Input the amount of N that has already been applied.

## European Settings

Europe  
Settings

- **Minimum Rate**

This setting is a threshold that defines the lowest lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha) the user wishes to apply. If the algorithm prescribes an N rate lower than the [Minimum N Rate], the system shall apply the [Minimum N Rate] instead.

- **Maximum Rate**

This setting is a threshold that defines the highest lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha) the user wishes to apply. If the algorithm prescribes an N rate higher than the [Maximum N Rate], the system shall apply the [Maximum N Rate] instead.

- **Rate Increment**

This setting defines the rate changes steps the system uses to change the N rate. This setting will be in lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha).

- **Managed Rate**

The total amount of N crop will consume. This value will be region specific and will be defined by the user.

- **Number of Applications**

The total number of times per season the user will top-dress N in the field. In Europe, this will typically be 3 times per season. This value will be input by the user.

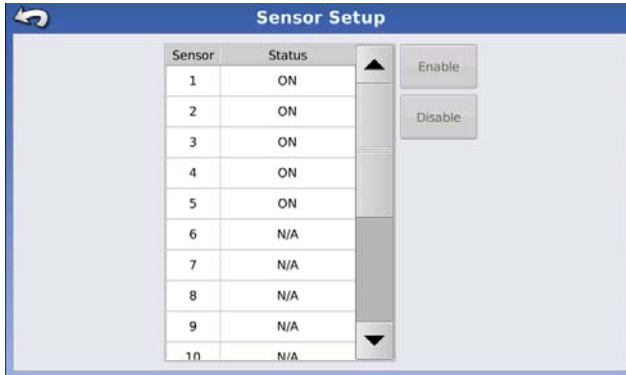
- **Planned Rate**

The rate the farmer intended to apply if they were not using sensors. This value will be user defined in lbs. of N/ac (kg of N/ha).

- **Application Trend**

Variable that tells the system whether to Increase for High Biomass (Application Trend is 1) or Decrease for High Biomass (Application Trend is -1).

## Sensor Setup



Sensor Setup screen appears, as shown. Each sensor is shown, with the status of “ON” or “OFF”.

- **Enable**

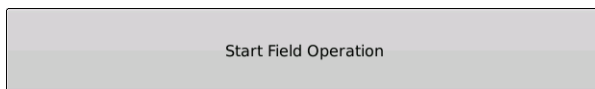
Turns on the individual OptRx sensor.

- **Disable**

Turns off the individual OptRx sensor.

## LOAD CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Start Field Operation

Select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#).



Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen.

## RUN CONFIGURATION



Press the Map View button to see the Map screen.

## CREATE AN OPTRX V.I. REFERENCE VALUE

### Determining where to scan a Reference Strip

In order for the OptRx Crop Sensor Module to recommend an N rate, you must scan a portion of the field to create a V.I. Reference Value.

- **Corn**

Scan the most vigorous portion of your field for 300 seconds (5 minutes).

- **North America Wheat**

Scan the most vigorous portion of your field for 300 seconds (5 minutes).

- **Europe**

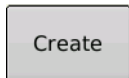
Scan the portion of your field where the plants show an average amount of vigor and growth. Scan this area for 150 seconds (2.5 minutes).

This V.I. Reference Value is a baseline that the system uses to evaluate the rest of the field.

## Scan a Reference Strip

This section describes how to scan a reference strip into the display. This reference strip determines the V.I. Reference Value. It assumes that you have already performed the following tasks:

- Chosen the appropriate part of your field to create a reference strip. For more information, see [“Determining where to scan a Reference Strip” on page 185.](#)
- Created an OptRx module configuration.
- Created a Field Operation Configuration. For more information, see [“Management button” on page 15.](#)



### 1. Press Create Button

Press the Create button, located on the bottom right-hand side of the Map screen’s Equipment Tab.



**Note:** If a reference strip has already been created, a warning appears, notifying you that this will unload the current reference strip. Press **Yes** to continue.

The screenshot shows the 'Reference Strip Information' screen. It has a blue header with the title. Below the header are three input fields: 'Name: East Field', 'Growth Stage: V8', and 'Variety: A6450Bt'. At the bottom right, there are two buttons: a green checkmark button and a red 'X' button.

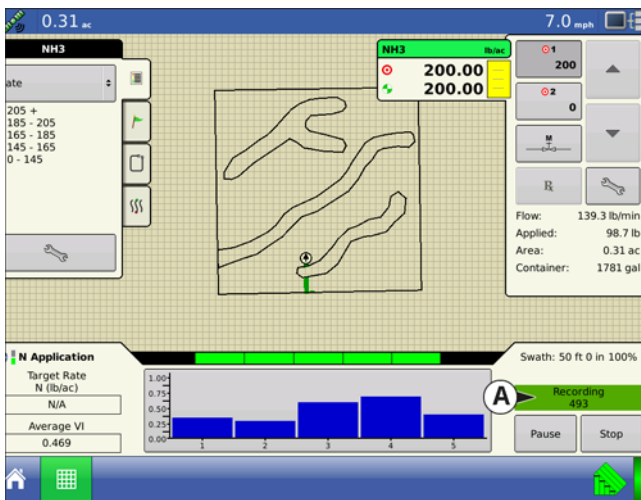
### 2. Enter Reference Strip Information

The Reference Strip Information screen appears. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter the Name, Growth Stage, and Variety. Press the green check mark box when finished.

The screenshot shows the 'Reference Strip' screen. It has a blue header with the title. Below the header is a large text area with an information icon and the text: 'Drive applicator to start of reference strip. Press START button and drive reference strip.' At the bottom center, there is a button with a green checkmark and the text 'Start'.

### 3. Drive Reference Strip

A screen appears, stating that you should drive the applicator to the start of the reference strip. When ready, press the Start button and drive the reference strip.



#### 4. Recording Reference Strip

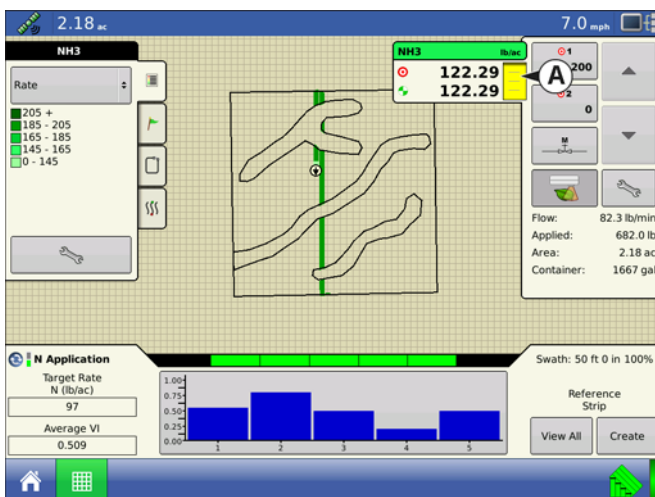
When you are driving the Reference Strip, a **green bar (A)** appears on the right-hand side of the Equipment Tab. This bar, which states “Recording,” counts the number of seconds that you record the reference strip.



**Note:** In order to create an accurate Reference Strip, record for at least 300 seconds (5 minutes) in North America and 150 seconds (2.5 minutes) in Europe.

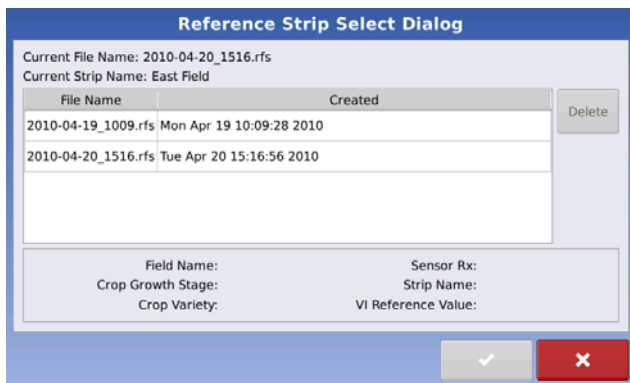
#### 5. File Name

Press the Stop button when you wish to finish creating the Reference Strip. The Reference Strip Information screen appears, showing the new Reference Strip file name. Press the green check mark box to accept, or use the on-screen keyboard to edit, if necessary.



#### 6. OptRx Sensors Apply Variable Rate

The OptRx sensors apply variable rate N, based on data received from the sensors. This variable rate appears in the **Product Control Toolbox (A)**, as shown at left.



## 7. (OPTIONAL) View Reference Strip

If desired, you may review this reference strip by pressing the View All button, located on the bottom right-hand side of the Map screen's Equipment Tab. The file name of the new reference strip appears in the Reference Strip Selection screen.

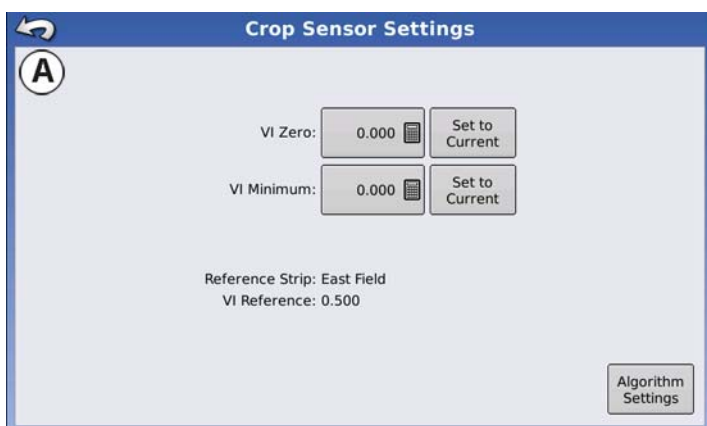


**Note:** To delete a reference strip, highlight the file name and press **Delete**.

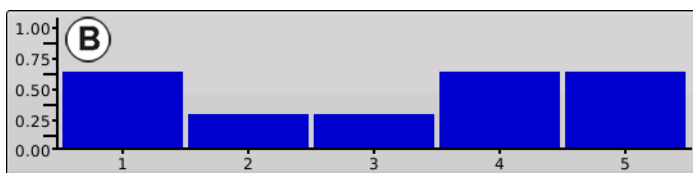
## CROP SENSOR SETTINGS



**Note:** All units represent pounds (kilograms) of nitrogen.



The **Crop Sensor Settings screen (A)** is where you can adjust application rate settings specified by the OptRx Crop Sensor module. The VI Zero and VI Minimum settings are used as a buffer to prevent applying the wrong amount of N or applying it in areas where doing so would be ineffective.



To access the Settings screen, press the OptRx Crop Sensor button, located in the box containing the Map screen's **VI Bar Graph (B)**, as shown.

### • VI Zero

The threshold below which the Crop Sensor applies a zero rate. This setting is used to prevent applying N over bare ground or permanently damaged crops. You may enter in a value either by using the numeric keypad, or you may enter in the current VI value by pressing the Set to Current button.

### • VI Minimum

The threshold below which the Crop Sensor applies the minimum rate. This setting is used to apply a minimum amount of N on ground with damaged crops. You may enter in a value either by using the numeric keypad, or you may enter in the current VI value by pressing the Set to Current button.



**Note:** The minimum rate may be adjusted at the Crop Sensor screen, which is accessed by pressing the **Algorithm Settings** button. For more information, see [“Crop Sensor Setup” on page 183](#).

- **Reference Strip**

The name of the Reference Strip that you entered during the Configuration procedure.

- **VI Reference**

Value of a healthy crop biomass used in reference for calculating the proper N application rate

- **Algorithm Settings**

Press this button to access the Sensor Setup screen, where you can adjust the rate displayed on the Crop Sensor tab's VI Bar Graph. For more information, see "[Crop Sensor Setup](#)" on page 183.

## GLOSSARY OF OPTRX TERMINOLOGY

- **Active VI**

The Vegetation Index (VI) that the OptRx sensors read instantaneously during field operations.

- **Growth Stage (shown at Crop Sensor Setup)**

The Growth Stage of the corn plant, identified by the number of leaf collars present on the plant. Choices available on the InSight display are: V6-V7; and V8-V10.

- **Max Rate (shown at Crop Sensor Setup)**

The highest amount of N that should be applied.

- **Min Rate (shown at Crop Sensor Setup)**

The lowest amount of N that should be applied.

- **N**

Refers to Nitrogen being applied.

- **N Algorithm**

The OptRx Crop Sensor Module uses an N algorithm to calculate an N rate through a Sufficiency Index reading.

- **Rate Increment (shown at Crop Sensor Setup)**

An optional increment that the display can use to round the N rate applied, if the operator desires. For example, if the operator enters the number 5 and the InSight display is applying a rate of 27, the number will be rounded to 25.

- **Rate Offset (shown at Crop Setup screen)**

Modifies the applied rate in the event of significant field stresses during a season, such as drought conditions; or to make adjustments because of soil type.

- **Reference Strip**

The healthiest portion of your field where you are satisfied that N is sufficient. This allows a baseline of optimum crop performance that the system can compare against other cropland.

- **Reflectance**

The light reading of the plant measured by individual light spectral wavelength. The comparison of different reflectance values can be used to determine the health of the plant.

- **VI**

Vegetation Index. The recorded value from remote sensing that displays a comparison of greenness and biomass of the scanned plant. This value, which is taken from a reference scan of a Reference Strip, uses a ratio that indicates the health of the plant. NDVI and NDRE are examples of different vegetation indexes.

- **VI Minimum (shown at Settings screen)**

The threshold below which the Crop Sensor applies the minimum rate. This setting is used to apply a minimum amount of N on ground with damaged or diseased crops.

- **VI Reference (shown at Settings screen)**

The value of a healthy crop biomass used in reference for calculating the proper N application rate. The VI Reference value is determined by the creation of a Reference Strip.

- **VI Zero (shown at Settings screen)**

The threshold below which the Crop Sensor applies a zero rate. This setting is used to prevent applying N over bare ground or permanently damaged crops.

## TROUBLESHOOTING OPTRX ERROR MESSAGES

The OptRx Crop Sensors have error messages to inform the user of complications in communication and performance. The following error messages are the most common errors a user might see. Follow the recommended troubleshooting steps to correct these errors.

**Error Message:** “Sensor Lost Communication”

**Possible Cause:** The cabling between the OptRx sensor and the ACS Master Module is disconnected.

**Solution:** Check all connections and cables for disconnections, cuts, breaks, or crimps in the line.

**Error Message:** “Bad Data”

**Possible Cause:** The sensors are either too far from the crop or too close to the crop.

**Solution:** Adjust the height of the sensor to approximately 30 inches (76 cm.) above the crop canopy by adjusting the boom height or the height on the crop sensor bracket

**Error Message:** “Sensor Failure”

**Possible Cause:** The sensors are either too far from the crop or too close to the crop.

**Solution:** Adjust the height of the sensor to approximately 30 inches (76 cm.) above the crop canopy by adjusting the boom height or the height on the crop sensor bracket.

**Error Message:** “Sensor Failure”

**Possible Cause:** There has been a drop in voltage to the OptRx Crop Sensors.

**Solution:** Check voltage on the high current power cable to ensure voltage provided to the sensors is approximately 12 V.

**Error Message:** “Too Few Sensors for Application”

**Possible Cause:** The OptRx configuration must have at least two working sensors to make an N rate recommendation.

- 1) There has been a drop in voltage to the OptRx Crop Sensors, or
- 2) The OptRx Crop Sensor is not detecting communication from the OptRx Crop Sensor Module

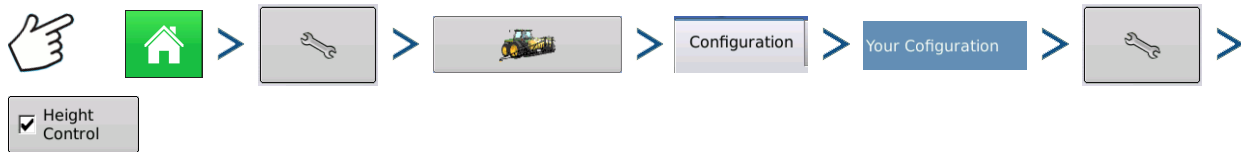
**Solution:** Perform the following actions, depending upon the possible cause of the error:

If 1), check cabling.

If 2), check the OptRx Diagnostic screen to determine if the OptRx Crop Sensors are still communicating.

# NORAC UC5

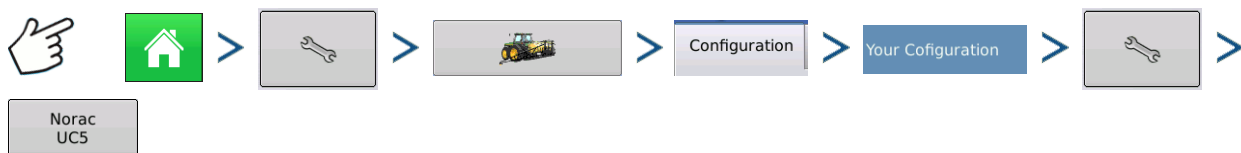
## ADD TO A CONFIGURATION



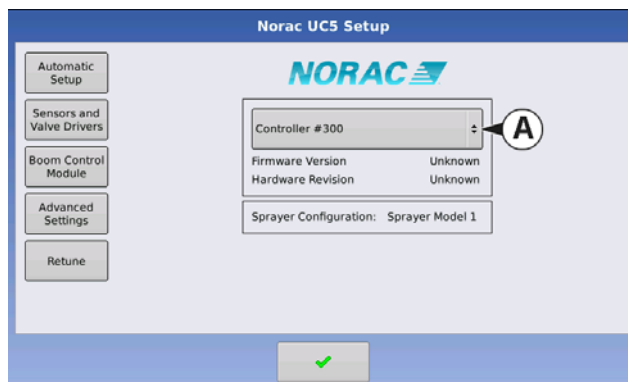
Press: Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > (*your particular Operating Configuration*) > Setup (wrench) button > Height Control check box

Add Norac UC5 to a configuration by following the above path and checking the Height Control checkbox.

## SETUP CONFIGURATION



Press: Home > Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > (*your particular Operating Configuration*) > Setup (wrench) button > NORAC UC5 Setup button



The NORAC UC5 Setup screen appears, as shown.

### • (A) Norac Devices drop-down menu

The drop down menu shows the devices communicating on the NORAC UC5 CAN Bus along with the serial number of each device. The Firmware Version and Hardware Revisions of your NORAC UC5 devices are shown underneath.

### • Automatic Setup

Automatic Setup walks through a series of steps that configures the NORAC UC5 electronics to the sprayer hydraulic functions. You must perform an Automatic Setup routine after the NORAC UC5 system is installed. The following items are configured during an Automatic Setup routine:

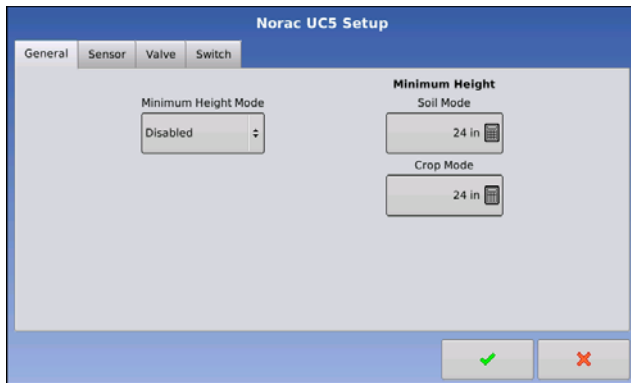
- Sprayer Make and Model
- Input module wiring and configuration
- Number of sensors and location
- Sensor zero point
- Valve deadzone and gain values.



**Note:** For detailed Automatic Setup information, see the NORAC UC5 manual.

- **Sensors and Valve Drivers**

Opens the Sensor and Valve Driver Settings screen.



The following settings appear on the General Tab.

Minimum Height Mode includes three selections:

- **Absolute**

no sensors are allowed to move closer to the target than the minimum height setting.

- **Relative**

no sensors are allowed to move closer to the target than the distance of the target height minus the minimum height setting.

- **Disabled**

Disables the minimum height mode.



**Note:** “Target” refers to the ground in Soil Mode, and the crop canopy in Crop Mode.

- Minimum Height. If desired, use the numeric keypads to adjust the following settings.

- **Soil Mode** - The minimum height setting when operating in Soil Mode.

**Crop Mode** - The minimum height setting when operating in Crop Mode. Also, consult the NORAC UC5 manual for more information.

- **Advanced Settings**

NORAC non-user menu.

- **Retune**

From time to time it may be necessary to recalibrate (Retune) the UC5 electronics to your sprayer’s hydraulics. Examples of such times are:

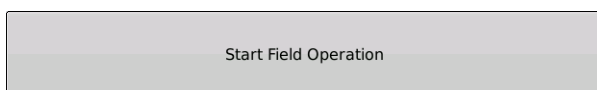
- When a hydraulic solenoid valve is changed.
- When the hydraulic pump is changed or adjusted.
- When the normal working temperature of the hydraulic oil has shifted significantly from when the system was previously calibrated.

If you are running a pull type sprayer and use different tractors to operate the sprayer, you should run the Retune procedure each time the tractor is changed. If you have a flow control for the boom hydraulics, set it prior to tuning. If you change the flow setting by more than 20 percent, you should Retune.

1. field-ready state. Acknowledge the warning by pressing the green check mark button.

## LOAD CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Start Field Operation

Select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23.*



Once a configuration has been loaded, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen.

## RUN CONFIGURATION

### Engage button

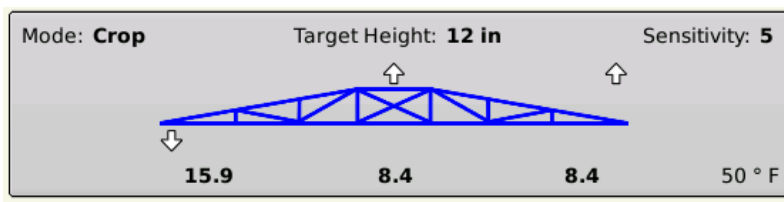


If the NORAC UC5 Boom Height Control is included in your Operating Configuration, then the NORAC Engage button, as shown at left, appears on the display's Task Bar. The Engage button enables boom height control. This button is green when the NORAC UC5 system is engaged; and grey when disengaged. Press on this button to engage and disengage the NORAC UC5 Boom Height Control.

This button can be used to toggle back and forth between Automatic Mode and Manual Mode.

- When you enable **Automatic Mode**, this button turns green and the display beeps three times.
- When you disable **Automatic Mode** on any part of the boom and the display switches to **Manual Mode**, this button turns white and the display beeps twice. If less than the full boom remains in Manual Mode, the display will continue beeping twice every three seconds.

### Boom Height Control Options Button



At the center of the Map screen's Equipment Tab, the Boom Height Control Options button displays data on NORAC UC5 Run Time performance.

- The Boom Icon appears as blue when in Automatic Mode; and black when in Manual Mode. The right, left and center sections appear independently on this icon. Press the Boom Height Control Options button to open the Boom Height Control Options screen. For more information, see *"Boom Height Control Options Screen"* on page 194.
- The white arrows indicate the direction that the boom section is being commanded to move. The arrows shown around the boom appear either 1) In **Automatic Mode**, or 2) When the boom is in **Manual Mode** and the user is manually moving the boom section.

- **Mode**

Indicates whether the Boom is in **Crop Mode** or **Soil Mode**. For further explanation, see *"Boom Height Control Options Screen"* on page 194.

- **Target Height**

The desired boom height above the ground (for **Soil Mode**), or the crop canopy (for **Crop Mode**).

- **Sensitivity**

Adjusts the boom response. Higher values make the height control more responsive.

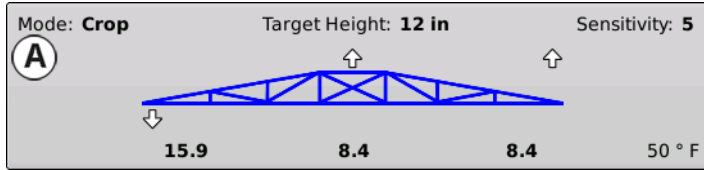
- **Distance Between Boom and Target**

The numbers that appear below the Boom Icon show the distance between the boom section and the target.

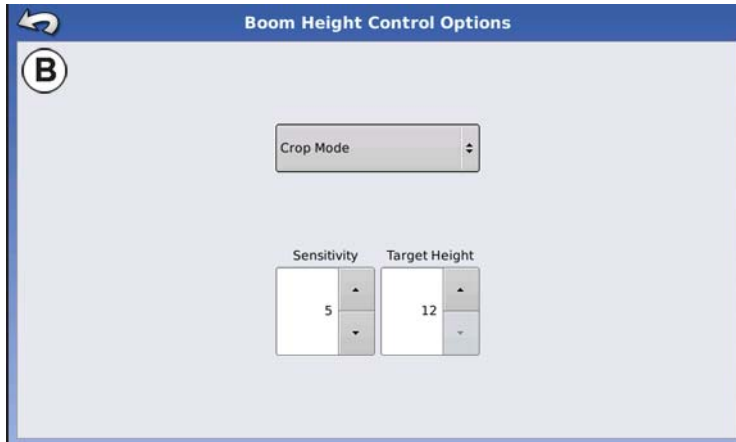
- **Temperature**

Shows the measurement of the outside ambient air temperature.

## Boom Height Control Options Screen



Pressing the **Boom Height Control Options button (A)** opens the **Boom Height Control Options screen (B)**, as shown. At this screen, you can adjust the boom's Mode, Sensitivity and Target Height.



### • Mode

The drop-down menu is where you can choose one of two modes:

- In **Soil Mode**, the UC5 controls boom height relative to the distance from the soil.
- In **Crop Mode**, the UC5 controls boom height relative to distance from the crop canopy.

### • Sensitivity

Adjusts the boom response. Higher values make the height control more responsive; settings range from 0-10.

### • Target Height

User-defined desired boom height in relation to the selected control mode.

## BOOM HEIGHT DIAGNOSTICS

The Boom Height Diagnostics screen shows all data for individual sensors, including Height, Roll and Temperature.



To go to the Boom Height Diagnostics screen, press on the Device Information button, as shown at left. At the Devices screen, highlight the item marked NORAC UC5 then press the Diagnostics button.

General		Boom Control State	
Control Mode	Crop	Left	Automatic
Target Height (cm)	30.4	Center	Automatic
Remote Switch	-	Right	Automatic
		Roll	Automatic

Location	Serial	Height / Roll	Temperature
1 Left Outer	100	91 cm	21.1 °C
2 Left Inner	103	89 cm	21.1 °C
3 Main Lift	101	102 cm	21.1 °C
4 Right Inner	104	84 cm	21.1 °C
5 Right Outer	102	81 cm	21.1 °C
6 Boom Frame	105	8.0 °	N/A

The NORAC UC5 Diagnostics screen appears, as shown.

# SPREADER

DirectCommand controls the conveyor and spinner speed and monitors the bin level. The control modules support PWM, motorized servo, Mark IV.2, Mark IV.4 and Mark V hydraulic control valves. DirectCommand also supports application control of multiple bin spinner spreaders.

## CREATE CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



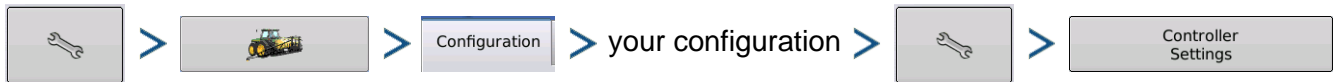
Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > Add (+) button > Application button

A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a vehicle, implement and controllers.

Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#)

## SETUP CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Controller Settings button

Controller Settings screen appears, with each channel's settings shown on its own tab.

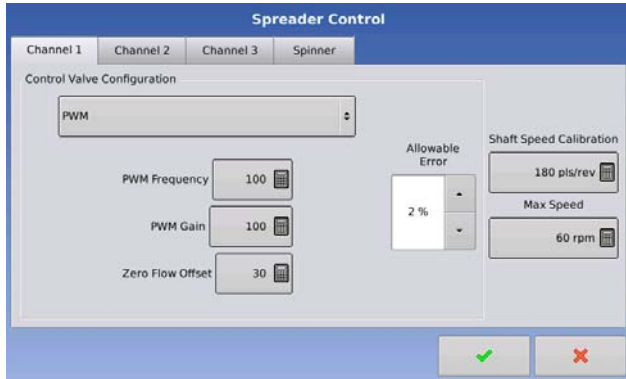
The settings shown at this screen vary, depending upon whether your spreader uses a PWM Control Valve or a Servo Control Valve. Use the Control Valve Configuration drop-down menu to choose the appropriate configuration for your machine.

Settings for a PWM Control Valve are described below;

settings for a Servo Valve are described at [“Spreader Control: Servo Control Valve” on page 196](#).

The Spinner Tab appears behind the channel tabs. The Spinner Tab is where Fan Speed settings are shown. The Spinner Tab and Fan Speed settings are described at [“Spreader Control: Spinner Tab” on page 197](#).

## Spreader Control: PWM Control Valve



### • PWM Frequency

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve. Typical settings range from 100-125 Hz. The Default Setting is 100.

### • PWM Gain

Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is. The Default Setting is 100.

### • Zero Flow Offset

Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero RPM Offset value can cause the conveyor to not properly shut off. See the PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings. The Default Setting is 30.

### • Allowable Error

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes. 2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

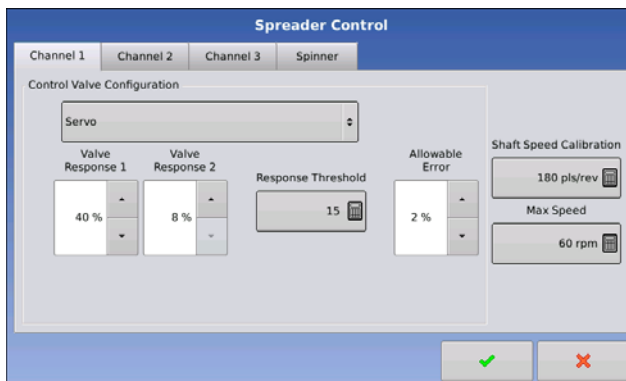
- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

### • Shaft Speed Calibration

Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the rate control metering system.

### • Max Speed

The Maximum Conveyor Speed Setting determines the maximum RPM of the conveyor that controls product distribution to the application point.



## Spreader Control: Servo Control Valve

### • Valve Response 1

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting. Represents the fast speed of the servo valve. Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower. The Default Setting is 40%.

### • Valve Response 2

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting. Represents the slow speed of the servo valve.

Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower. The Default Setting is 8%.

### • Response Threshold

Determines where the control channel switches between using Valve Response 1 and Valve Response 2 speed setting. Leaving all other valve control settings at the default value and making a small adjustment to this setting is usually all that is required to fine-tune system performance. The Default Setting is 15.

- Decreasing this value will have the overall effect of speeding up servo valve response.
- Increasing this value will have the overall effect of slowing servo valve response.

- **Allowable Error**

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes. 2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

- **Shaft Speed Calibration**

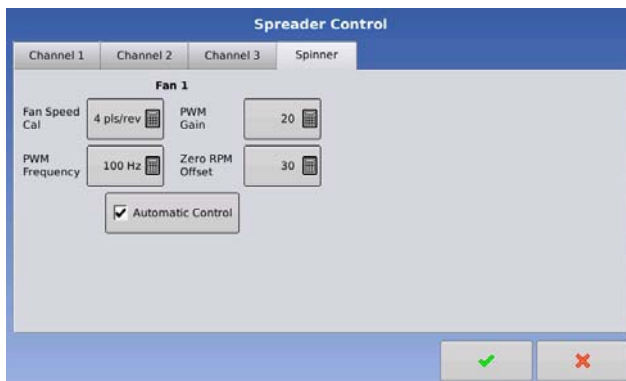
Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the rate control metering system.

- **Max Speed**

The Maximum Conveyor Speed setting determines the maximum RPM of the conveyor that controls product distribution to the application point.

## Spreader Control: Spinner Tab

To view Fan Speed Calibration settings, press the Spinner Tab, located behind the Channel Tabs. Operators with Spinner Spreaders that use PWM valves will see additional active settings.



- **Fan Speed Calibration**

The number of pulses that are generated by the sensor during one revolution of the spinner dish. The Default Setting is 4.

- **PWM Gain**

Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making spinner speed adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is. The Default Setting is 20.

- **PWM Frequency**

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve. Typical settings range from 100-125 Hz. The Default Setting is 100.

- **Zero RPM Offset**

Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero RPM Offset value can cause the spinner system to not properly shut off. The Default Setting is 30.



**Note:** See the PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **Automatic Control**

Checking the Automatic Control check box allows you to control the spinner speed. The Default Setting is unchecked.

## Fertilizer Blend Setup



Dry fertilizer blends are set up by using the on-screen Dry Fertilizer Blend wizard described in the following steps. A dry blend can contain up to seven individual components. To create a Dry Fertilizer Blend, go to the Setup Product Tab, and press the Add button.



At the Choose Product Type screen, press Add Product Mix. The Product Mix Setup Wizard appears, as shown.

1. Select **Dry Blend** from the list box and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.
2. Enter a Base Amount of product and the controlling Units for the dry product blend. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** The Base Amount is the total weight of product for the fertilizer blend. The Base Amount does not need to match the actual volume of product that will be applied, but is used only to establish the ratio of all products to the total volume.

3. Press the Add button to start the process of adding components to the fertilizer blend.

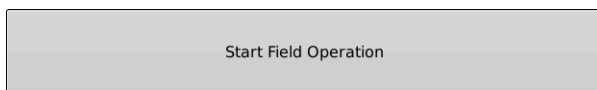


**Note:** Any liquid herbicides set up within the system can be added to create an impregnated blend product.

4. Select the desired component from the list box. New components can be set up at this time if required.
5. Enter the amount of the first component.
6. Press Add to start adding an additional component. (A dry mix can contain up to seven individual components.)
7. The remaining Base Amount that is available after adding product components is shown at the bottom of the on-screen list box.
8. Enter Manufacturer name if applicable. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a unique name for the blend.
9. Press the check mark button to complete the process of setting up the dry blend. The new Dry Blend now appears in the Product List.

## LOAD CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Start Field Operation

Select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#).



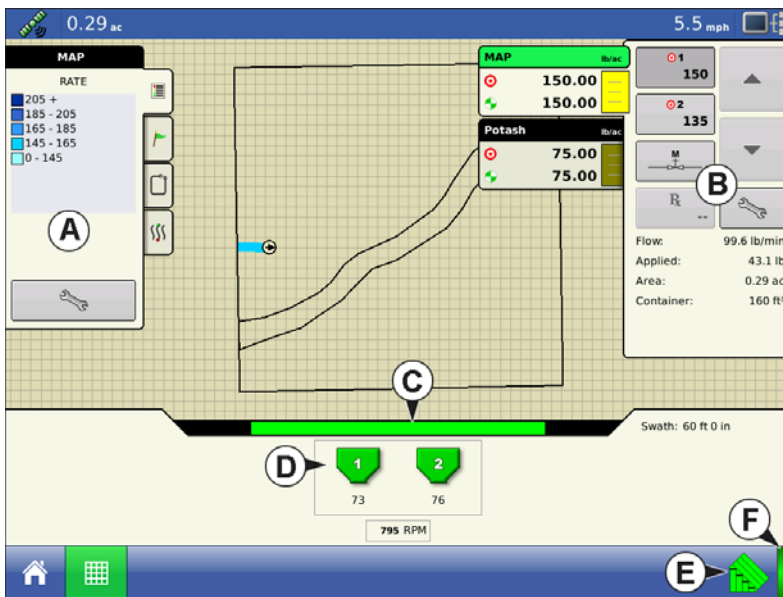
Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen.

## RUN CONFIGURATION



Press the Map View button to see the Map screen. The map below is displayed in Zoom to Detail view.

Below is an example of a Spinner Spreader Granular Product Control applying two products.



- (A) Mapping Toolbox
- (B) Product Control Toolbox
- (C) Conveyor Indicator
- (D) Spreader Control button
- (E) AutoSwath
- (F) Master Switch Status (on)

## SPINNER SPREADER, WITH TWO-BIN CONFIGURATION

### • Spreader Control button

Displays the status of the product control channel. The Conveyor Speed (in RPM) is shown underneath the bin icon; the Spinner Speed (also in RPM) is shown at bottom. Press the Spreader Control button to display the Spreader Control screen and settings. These settings include Spread Width, Spinner Speed (if enabled), Product Density, Feed Gate Opening, and Conveyor Rate. For more information, see section beginning at *“Spreader Control screen” on page 200.*

### • Conveyor Indicator

The Conveyor Indicator is shown at the top of the Equipment Tab when the Map screen is shown in Zoom to Extent. When the Map screen is shown in the Zoom to Details view or Perspective View, the conveyor indicator is shown as a bar that appears behind the vehicle icon.

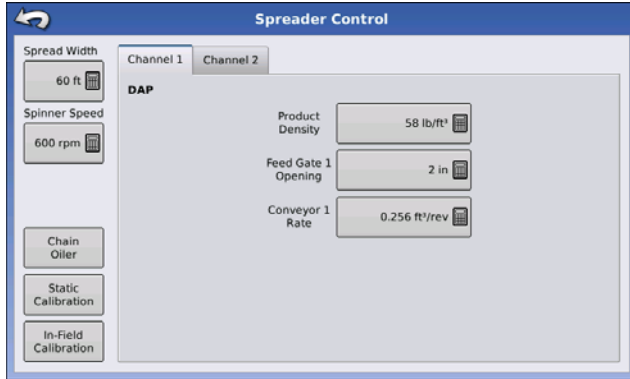
## RUN TIME OPERATIONS



During Run Time Operations, Spinner Spreader operators can press the Spreader Control button, as shown at left, to open the Spreader Control screen. At this screen, you can adjust Spread Width, Spinner Speed, Product Density and other settings.

- Each of these settings described below must be set for each individual Product Channel (bin).
- Changing any of these settings in the display does not make the needed adjustments on the product applicator. Setting value and physical setting on the spinner bed must be verified for correctness prior to any product application. However, if your machine is equipped with Fan Frame & Feed Gate Actuators, and you have also purchased a New Leader Linear Actuator unlock code, the settings on the spinner bed will automatically change.
- The **Spread Width, Spinner Speed, Product Density, Feed Gate 1 Opening** and the **Conveyor 1 Rate** are all stored with each combination of product and control channel.

## Spreader Control screen



Control: *Static Calibration* on page 202.

- **Product Density**

This density value (shown in pounds per cubic foot, or lb./ft.3), is stored with each product. Use the numeric keypad to edit if needed.



**Note:** For proper machine performance and accuracy, you should check the Product Density daily.

- **Feed Gate 1 Opening**

Represents the Feed Gate opening for Conveyor 1. Measure the depth of product on the conveyor to ensure accurate feed gate setting value.

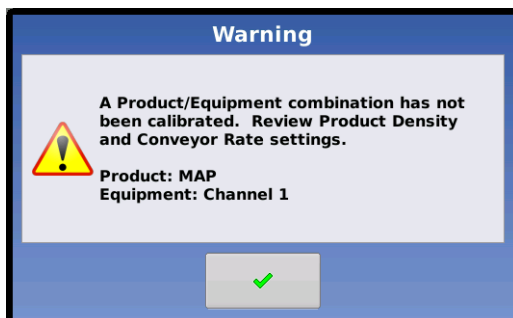
- **Conveyor 1 Rate**

This setting represents the volume of product dispensed by one revolution of the conveyor drive shaft (cubic foot per revolution, or ft.3 /rev.) This number is shown with the assumption that the conveyor shaft has a 1-inch gate opening. This conveyor rate remains constant, regardless of the height of the feed gate opening.

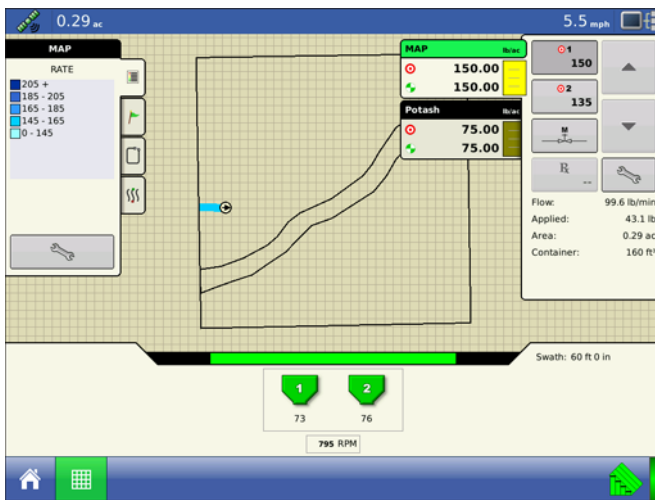


**CAUTION:** New products will have a default CFR number the first time they are used. You must either manually enter or perform a CFR calibration routine for each product once that product is created, otherwise misapplication will occur.

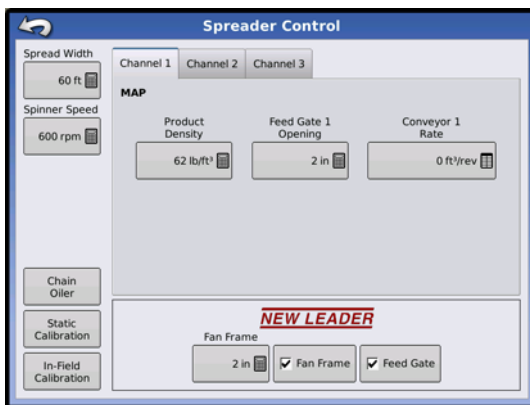
## Conveyor Rate Look-Up



A pop-up screen will display a warning when a product is assigned to a container or bin for the first time and has not been calibrated. The warning prompts the user to review product density and conveyor rate settings.



Conveyor rates for previously applied products can be found by first pressing the Spreader Control button which opens the Spreader Control screen.



The Spreader Control screen has a tab for each control channel/product being applied. Select the desired channel and press the **Conveyor Rate** button.



The **Conveyor Rate** button opens a setup screen where the conveyor rate can be inputted and a table of previously applied products and conveyor rates is shown.

Press the conveyor rate button and use the numeric keypad to input desired conveyor rate.

Press check mark button to exit the screen.

Press check mark button to accept the new conveyor rate and return to the Spreader Control window.

## Fan Frame & Feed Gate Actuator Settings

These are optional settings used by operators using a New Leader Linear Actuator module.

- **Fan Frame**

Checking the Fan Frame check box enables the Fan Frame Actuator. Displays the distance between the spinner bed and the spinner assembly. Use the numeric keypad to edit this value.

- **Feed Gate**

Checking the Feed Gate check box enables the Feed Gate Actuator.

## Spreader Control: Routine Operations

The Spreader Control screen has three buttons, Chain Oiler, Static Calibration and In-Field Calibration, which are described below and on the following pages.

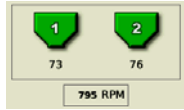
## Spreader Control: Chain Oiler

If you are using a Chain Oiler, you can automatically perform a chain oiling routine by pressing the Chain Oiler button on the Spreader Control screen and following the steps below.



**Note:** Perform a chain oiling routine daily.

---



### 1. Press Spreader Control button

To begin, press the Spreader Control button, as shown at left, to open the Spreader Control screen. At the Spreader Control screen, press the Chain Oiler button.

### 2. Acknowledge the first warning

Manually disable or shut off the spinner hydraulic circuit.

### 3. Enter a Routine Duration

Enter the routine time that it takes to turn the conveyor one revolution.

### 4. Press Start

Press the Start button, and when the routine is finished press the green check mark button.

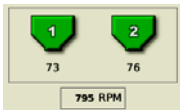
### 5. Acknowledge the second warning.

Return the spinner hydraulic control to a field-ready condition.

## Spreader Control: Static Calibration

You must perform a conveyor discharge calibration for each granular product control channel (bin) for the equipment configuration. This process is outlined below and on the following page. The static calibration procedure is performed before applying in field conditions.

### 1. Press Spreader Control button



To begin, press the Spreader Control button on the Map screen, as shown at left. The Spreader Control screen opens.

### 2. Start Calibrate Conveyor routine

Press the Static Calibration button to start the Static Conveyor Rate calibration routine.

### 3. Disable Spinner Hydraulic Circuit

The system will present a warning to disable the spinner hydraulic circuit. Press the green check mark button after the hydraulic circuit is disabled.

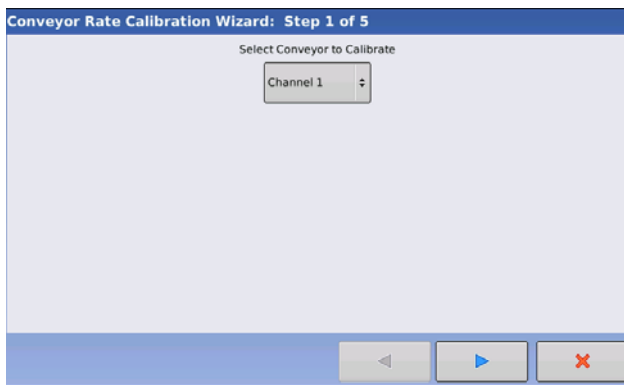


**WARNING:** Manually disable or shut off the spinner hydraulic circuit. If the spinner runs unexpectedly, injury could occur.

---

### 4. Select Conveyor to Calibrate

Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



### 5. Enter Dispense Amount

Enter the desired target amount of product to dispense (the recommended amount is 500 pounds or 250 kilograms). Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 6. Start Dispensing Product

Press the green-colored Start button to begin dispensing the product.



### 7. Product Dispensing

The conveyor will stop when the system perceives the target amount of product has been dispensed. The Stop button can be pressed at any time to manually shut off the conveyor.



### 8. Product Dispensing Stops

At left is shown an example of the screen after dispensing the display's target amount. This value can be reset and the process started again for a larger sample size, if desired. Press the green check mark button to continue.

### 9. Enter Actual Dispense Amount

Enter the actual weight of the product dispensed. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 10. Finish Calibration

A screen displays, stating Calibration Complete! Underneath is shown the newly-calibrated conveyor rate.

- Press **Cancel** (red X) to exit the calibration without saving the value.
- Press **Repeat Calibration** to begin the process again.
- Press the green check mark button to save the value and exit the calibration routine.

### 11. Restart spinner hydraulic circuit

Restart the spinner hydraulic circuit.



**WARNING:** Make sure the spinner is free of material before restarting the spinner hydraulic circuit.

12. A warning will appear when exiting the calibration wizard, instructing you to return the spinner control hydraulic circuit to a field-ready condition.

## Spreader Control: In-Field Calibration

The In-Field Conveyor Calibration procedure performs an automated routine to adjust the calibration number for the selected spinner bin. This calibration is performed if there is a difference between the amount of product logged as compared to what was actually applied.



### 1. Press Spreader Control button

To begin, press the Spreader Control button on the Map screen, as shown at left. The Spreader Control screen opens. Press the In-Field Calibration button on the Spreader Control screen. The In-Field Conveyor Rate Calibration Wizard appears.

### 2. Select Conveyor to Calibrate

Select the channel to calibrate, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 3. Enter Actual Weight

The Accumulated Weight is shown in the top portion of the window. Use the numeric keypad to enter the Actual Weight, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Calibration Complete

A message appears, stating that your calibration is complete, and showing the CFR amount in cubic feet per revolution. Press the green check mark button to finish.

## SPINNER SPREADER SERVO SETTINGS DESCRIPTION

### • Valve Response 1

Default Value: 40%

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting

Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower.

### • Valve Response 2

Default Value: 8%

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting.

Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower.

### • Allowable Error

Default Value: 2%

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any conveyor RPM corrections.

2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

### • Response Threshold

Default Value: 15%

Determines where the control system switches between using Valve Response 1 or Valve Response 2 speed setting.

Leaving all other valve control settings at the default value and making a small adjustment to this setting is usually all that is required to fine tune system performance.

- Decreasing this value will have the overall effect of speeding up servo valve response.

- Increasing this value will have the overall effect of slowing servo valve response.

## SPINNER SPREADER PWM CONTROL VALVE SETTINGS DESCRIPTION

- **PWM Frequency**

Default Value: 100

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Typical settings range from 100 - 125. See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **PWM Gain**

Default Value: 100

This setting determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making spinner speed adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.

- **Zero Flow Offset**

Default Value: 30

This setting represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero RPM Offset value can cause the conveyor to not properly shut off. See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **Allowable Error**

Default Value: 2%

2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

## SPINNER SPEED PWM VALVE SETTINGS DESCRIPTION

- **Fan Speed Cal**

Default Value: 4

The Fan Speed Cal number is the number of pulses that are generated by the sensor during one revolution of the spinner dish.

- **PWM Frequency**

Default Value: 100

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Typical settings range from 100 - 125. See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **PWM Gain**

Default Value: 20

This setting determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate change adjustments. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is.

- **Zero RPM Offset**

Default Value: 30

This setting represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero RPM Offset value can cause the product control system to not properly shut off. See PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings.

- **Allowable Error**

Default Value: 2% (2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.)

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

- **Auto Control Check Box**

Default is unchecked

Checking the Auto Control check box allows you to control the spinner speed.

## TROUBLESHOOTING DIRECTCOMMAND GRANULAR APPLICATIONS

**Problem:** Run screen Granular channel(s) green light spreader indicator will not turn on

**Solution:**

1. Make sure ground speed is registered a value greater than zero on the display.
2. Verify a target rate greater than zero is entered into the display.
3. Check the switch status found on the Run screen under System and Input Diagnostics. As the master switch is turned on and off, the Input Diagnostics window should change from black to green (if they do not, then refer to the installation instructions to verify switch connections).
4. Check high current connection into the Granular Control Module.

**Problem:** Master switch will not turn on when the foot pedal is on.

**Solution:** Make sure the Master Switch Input is set to "External 2" under the Auxiliary Input Settings.

**Problem:** AutoSwath turns on the booms too fast or too slow.

**Solution:** Check GPS offsets in the vehicle setup to verify all of the measurements are correct.

**Problem:** AutoSwath feature is not shown

**Solution:** The display must have the AutoSwath feature password-unlocked before the feature is available to the operator.

**Problem:** AutoSwath is checked on, but the spreader will not turn on.

1. Make sure the ground speed is registering a value greater than zero on the display.
2. Make sure the applicator is inside of the field boundary.

**Problem:** Conveyor turns off in the middle of the pass

**Solution:** Check the display firmware and module firmware to see if they are running the latest version.

**Problem:** Total Applied does not match Actual Weight Applied

**Solution:**

1. Make sure the shaft speed pls/rev are set correctly in the controller settings.
2. Make sure the controlling product is set to the correct units.

**Problem:** Rate not responding

**Solution:**

1. Make sure there is a ground speed registering on the display.
2. Make sure the shaft speed pls/rev are set correctly in the controller settings.

(You must make sure to account for sprocket ratios if chain driven)

$$\frac{\text{Driven Teeth}}{\text{Drive Teeth}} \times \text{Rate Sensor Pulses} = \text{True Pulses}$$

3. Check the user-defined value found under the controller settings for Strip-Till.
4. The CFR number may need to be adjusted.

## TROUBLESHOOTING SERIAL CONTROL APPLICATIONS

**Problem:** Rate changes on the display, but not on the controlled console.

**Solution:**

1. Verify the current firmware is running on the display and Application Rate module.
2. Check the settings specific to your controlled console. (For more information, refer to the Quick Reference Guide).
3. Check cabling and all connections.
4. Disconnect the serial connection and determine if the controller is functioning properly without the display.

**Problem:** The display rate and serial-controlled rate do not match

**Solution:**

1. Verify the current firmware is running on the display and Application Rate Module.
2. Check to make sure the nominal rate in the display matches the nominal rate in the serial-controlled console.

## FERTILIZER DEFAULT PRODUCT SETTINGS

Material	Type	Abbreviated name for display and predefined name for SMS	Percentage (in terms of lbs.100 lbs.)			Density
			N	P (P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> )	K (K <sub>2</sub> O)	
Ammonium nitrate	Dry	Ammonium nitrate	34	0	0	N/A
Ammonium phosphate	Dry	Ammonium phosphate	10	34	0	N/A
DAP	Dry	DAP	18	46	0	N/A
MAP	Dry	MAP	11	52	0	N/A
Ammonium sulfate	Dry	Ammonium sulfate	21	0	0	N/A
Urea	Dry	Urea	46	0	0	N/A
Potash	Dry	Potash	0	0	60	N/A
Triple superphosphate	Dry	Triple superphosphate	0	46	0	N/A
Ordinary superphosphate	Dry	Superphosphate	0	20	0	N/A
Potassium nitrate	Dry	Potassium nitrate	13	0	44	N/A

# STRIP TILL

DirectCommand for Strip-Till applicators monitors bin level and fan speed sensors, maintains an accurate application rate and supports multiple product prescription rate control. You can use up to three channels of granular product control. The Strip-Till Module supports either PWM, Hydraulic Valve, or Linear Actuator Product Control.

## CREATE CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > Add (+) button > Application button

A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a vehicle, implement and controllers.

### 1. Select Equipment Configuration Type

Select either Single Product Application or Multiple Product Application. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 2. Select Vehicle

Use the drop-down menu to choose a vehicle, or press the Add button to enter a new vehicle. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue

### 3. Add Equipment for Multiple Product Configuration

The Add Additional Application Equipment screen appears. From here, you may add additional equipment or controllers to your configuration. Add equipment by pressing the Add button.



**Note:** If you choose to add additional equipment, add them in the same order as the implements are attached.

### 4. Select Implement

Select an Implement from the drop-down list menu, or press the Add button to create a new implement. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 5. Select Implement Attachment Method

Use the drop-down list to select an implement attachment method. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 6. Enter Full Swath Width

Use the numeric keypad to enter the full swath width of the implement. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 7. Enter Number of Boom Sections

Use the up and down arrow keys to enter the number of sections of the implement. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 8. Enter Boom Section Widths from Left to Right

To edit any of the boom values, select the desired section from the list and press the numeric keypad to enter in a new width. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### **9. Enter Distance from Hitch to Application Point**

Enter the distance from the hitch to the application point (from front to back) using the numeric keypad. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### **10. Enter Implement Name**

Use the on-screen keyboard button to enter a name for the implement. Press the green check mark button to continue.

### **11. Select Operating Mode**

Use the drop-down menu to select Rate Logging/Control; then press the blue right-arrow button.

### **12. Select Controller**

Press the Add button to add a controller; then press the blue right-arrow button.

### **13. Select Controller Device and Device Type**

Select DirectCommand from the Device drop-down list box. Scroll down on the Direct Type list box and select Granular Strip-Till Control. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### **14. Enter Suggested Controller Name**

A default name of DirectStripTill appears. Press the green check mark button, or use the on-screen keyboard to enter a new name, if desired

### **15. Select Controller Channel**

Use the drop-down menu to select a controller channel, then press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### **16. Select Container**

Use the drop-down menu to select a container, or press the Add button to enter a new container; then press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### **17. Enter Container Capacity and Units**

The Container Setup Wizard appears. Use the numeric keypad to enter the container capacity and the drop-down menu, located underneath, to enter units. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### **18. Select Container Name and Location**

Use the on-screen keyboard button to enter a Container Name, and the drop-down menu underneath to enter a Container Location.

### **19. Enter Suggested Name for Configuration**

Use the on-screen keyboard button to enter a different name for the configuration (if desired), and press the blue right-arrow button.

### **20. Add Equipment for a Multiple Product Application**

The Operating Configuration Wizard reappears. To add more equipment to the configuration, repeat steps 11-20. When you have repeated these steps and have come back to the Add Equipment screen, press the blue right-arrow button.

### **21. Select Ground Speed Source**

Select your ground speed source. If you will be using GPS as the primary you will need to select a secondary source. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

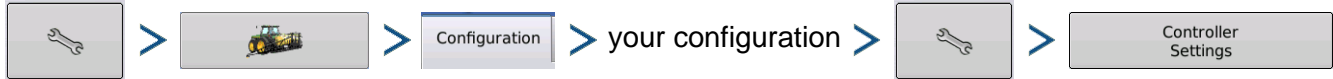
### **22. Enter Suggested Configuration Name**

If desired, use the on-screen keyboard button to enter a suggested name for your configuration. Press the green check mark button when complete.

Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#)

## SETUP CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:

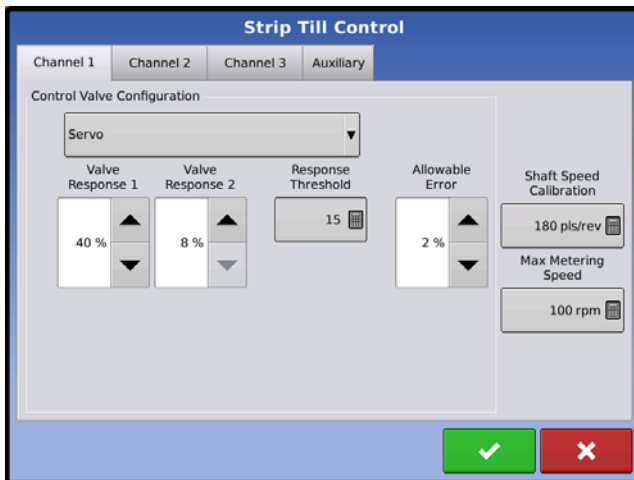


Setup (wrench) button > Configuration (tractor) button > Configuration tab > your specific configuration > Setup (wrench) button > Controller Settings button

Controller Settings screen appears, with each channel's settings shown on its own tab.

The settings shown at this screen vary, depending upon whether your Configuration uses a PWM Control Valve, a Servo Control Valve, or a Linear Actuator configuration. Use the Control Valve Configuration drop-down menu to choose the appropriate configuration for your machine. Control valve configuration settings are described in the following section. The Auxiliary Tab is where you adjust fan speed settings; these are described at *"Strip Till Control: Auxiliary Tab" on page 220.*

### Strip Till Control: Servo Control Valve



#### • Valve Response 1

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting. Represents the fast speed of the servo valve. Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower. The Default Setting is **40%**.

#### • Valve Response 2

Determines the speed of the servo valve when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting. Represents the slow speed of the servo valve. Decreasing the value will cause the servo valve to run slower. The Default Setting is **8%**.

#### • Response Threshold

Determines where the control channel switches between using Valve Response 1 and Valve Response 2 speed setting. Leaving all other valve control settings at the default value and making a small adjustment to this setting is usually all that is required to fine tune system performance. The Default Setting is 15.

- Decreasing this value will have the overall effect of speeding up servo valve response.
- Increasing this value will have the overall effect of slowing servo valve response.

#### • Allowable Error

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes. 2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

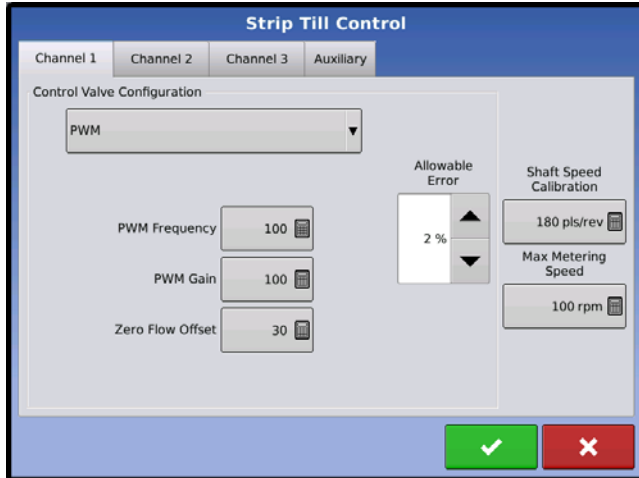
#### • Shaft Speed Calibration

Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the rate control metering system.

#### • Max Metering Speed

Setting determines the maximum RPM of the metering shaft that controls product distribution to the application point. This setting is used when controlling a granular strip-till toolbar.

## Strip Till Control: PWM Control Valve



### • PWM Frequency

The frequency that the PWM control valve is pulsed at. Settings can be found from the manufacturer of the valve. Typical settings range from 100-125 Hz. The Default Setting is 100.

### • PWM Gain

Determines how aggressively the control valve responds when making rate changes. The higher the value the more aggressive the system response is. The Default Setting is 100.

### • Zero Flow Offset

Represents the maximum duty cycle that is sent to the control valve without producing any hydraulic flow from

the PWM valve. Using too high of a Zero RPM Offset value can cause the conveyor to not properly shut off. See the PWM valve manufacturer information for recommended settings. The Default Setting is **30**.

### • Allowable Error

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes. **2%** - **3%** is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

### • Shaft Speed Calibration

Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the rate control metering system.

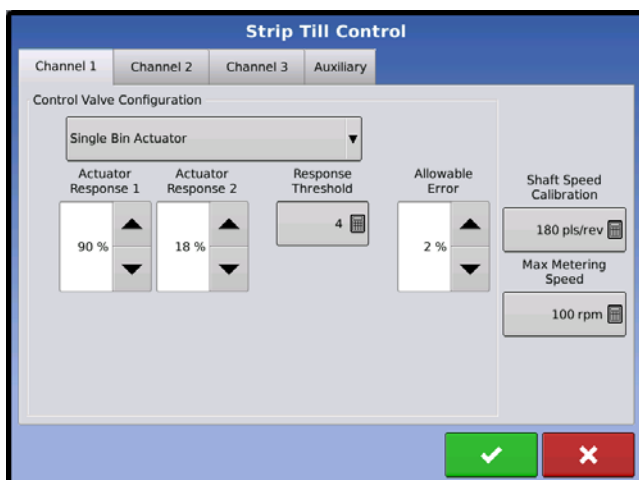
### • Max Metering Speed

Setting determines the maximum RPM of the metering shaft that controls product distribution to the application point. This setting is used when controlling a granular strip-till toolbar.

## Linear Actuator/Clutch Settings



**Note:** When using Linear Actuator Control, the system requires the Control Valve Configuration on all three channels to be set the same.

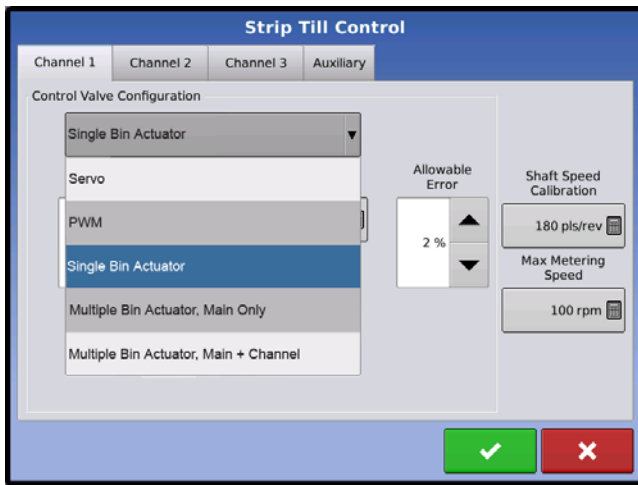


### • Actuator Response 1

Determines the speed of the actuator when product control error exceeds the Response Threshold setting. Represents the fast speed of the actuator. Decreasing the value will cause the actuator to run slower. The Default Setting is **90%**.

### • Actuator Response 2

Determines the speed of the actuator when product control error is less than the Response Threshold setting. Represents the slow speed of the actuator. Decreasing the value will cause the actuator to run slower. The Default Setting is 18%.



**• Response Threshold**

Determines where the control channel switches between using Actuator Response 1 and Actuator Response 2 speed settings. Leaving all other actuator control settings at the default value and making a small adjustment to this setting is usually all that is required to fine-tune system performance. The default setting is 4.

- Decreasing this value will have the overall effect of speeding up actuator response.
- Increasing this value will have the overall effect of slowing actuator response.

**• Allowable Error**

Determines the percent of error that is allowed prior to the product control system making any flow rate changes. 2% - 3% is the normal dead band setting range.

- Too low of a setting value can cause the product control system to continually hunt for the target application rate.
- Too high of a setting will cause excessive product application error.

**• Shaft Speed Cal**

Calibration number representing the pulses that equal one revolution of the rate control metering system.

**• Max Conveyor Speed**

Setting determines the maximum RPM of the conveyor that controls product distribution to the application point.

**• Actuator/Clutch Configuration**

Selecting one of the three available actuator/clutch settings: [Single Bin Actuator], [Multiple Bin Actuator, Main Only], [Multiple Bin Actuator, Main + Channel] from the Control Valve Configuration drop-down menu (above) determines specific behavior of the actuators/clutches on zero rate. For a description of the Actuator/Clutch Logic, see *“Actuator/Clutch Logic” on page 213.*

**Actuator/Clutch Logic**

Determines Actuator/Clutch Behavior on Zero Rate

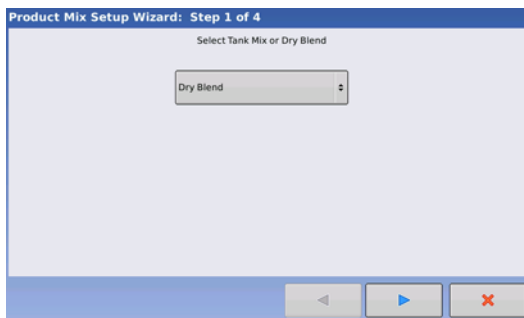
Control Valve Configuration	Control Component State	
	Control Channel RPM Commanded to Zero Other than by Master Switch Off	Master Switch Off
Single Bin Actuator	Main Clutch Output = Off Channel Clutch Output = Off Linear Actuator = Hold	Main Clutch Output = Off Channel Clutch Output = Off Linear Actuator = Hold
Multiple Bin Actuator, Main Only	Main Clutch Output = On Channel Clutch Output = Off Linear Actuator = Close	Main Clutch Output = Off Channel Clutch Output = Off Linear Actuator = Hold

Control Valve Configuration	Control Component State	
	Control Channel RPM Commanded to Zero Other than by Master Switch Off	Master Switch Off
Multiple Bin Actuator, Main + Channel	Main Clutch Output = On Channel Clutch Output = Off Linear Actuator = Hold	Main Clutch Output = Off Channel Clutch Output = Off Linear Actuator = Hold

## Fertilizer Blend Setup



Dry fertilizer blends are set up by using the on-screen Dry Fertilizer Blend wizard described in the following steps. A dry blend can contain up to seven individual components. To create a Dry Fertilizer Blend, go to the Setup Product Tab, and press the Add button.



At the Choose Product Type screen, press Add Product Mix. The Product Mix Setup Wizard appears, as shown.

1. Select **Dry Blend** from the list box and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.
2. Enter a Base Amount of product and the controlling Units for the dry product blend. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



**Note:** The Base Amount is the total weight of product for the fertilizer blend. The Base Amount does not need to match the actual volume of product that will be applied, but is used only to establish the ratio of all products to the total volume.

3. Press the Add button to start the process of adding components to the fertilizer blend.

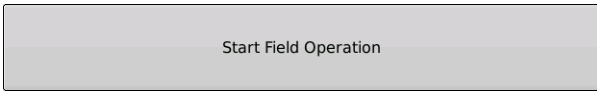


**Note:** Any liquid herbicides set up within the system can be added to create an impregnated blend product.

4. Select the desired component from the list box. New components can be set up at this time if required.
5. Enter the amount of the first component.
6. Press Add to start adding an additional component. (A dry mix can contain up to seven individual components.)
7. The remaining Base Amount that is available after adding product components is shown at the bottom of the on-screen list box.
8. Enter Manufacturer name if applicable. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a unique name for the blend.
9. Press the check mark button to complete the process of setting up the dry blend. The new Dry Blend now appears in the Product List.

## LOAD CONFIGURATION

Starting at the Home page, press:



### Start Field Operation

Select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23.*



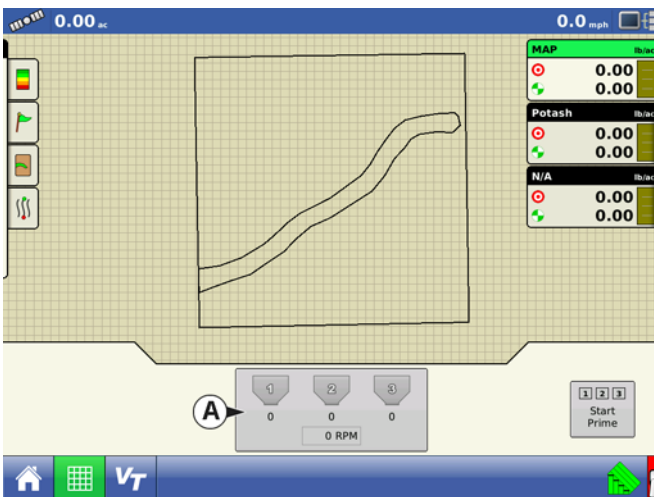
Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen.

## RUN CONFIGURATION



Press the Map View button to see the Map screen. The map below is displayed in Zoom to Detail view.

### Meter Prime



Meter Prime is for Hydraulic Drives ONLY.

Press the **Strip Till Control button (A).**

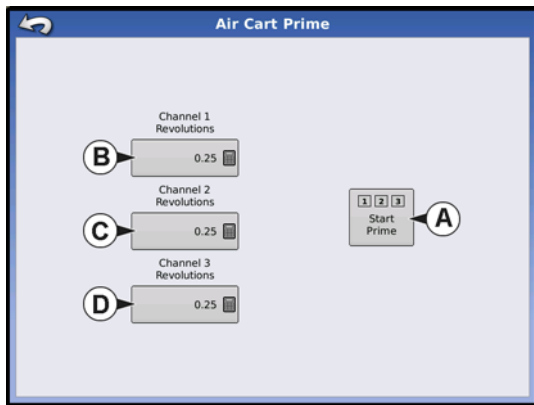


Strip Till Control button



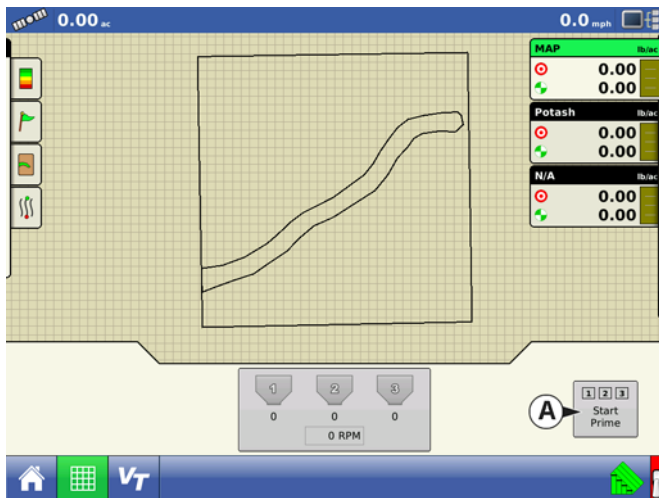
The Strip Till Control screen appears.

Press the **Prime** button to access the **Air Cart Prime** screen.



The **Air Cart Prime** screen appears with input buttons for each channel used. The setting determines the revolutions necessary to prime the meter shaft. Settings are independent by channel, and can be entered using the numeric keypad.

- (A) Start Prime
- (B) Channel 1 Revolutions
- (C) Channel 2 Revolutions
- (D) Channel 3 Revolutions



The **Start Prime button (A)** begins the meter prime routine and each meter shaft will rotate the number of revolutions as defined on the Air Cart Prime Screen, shown.

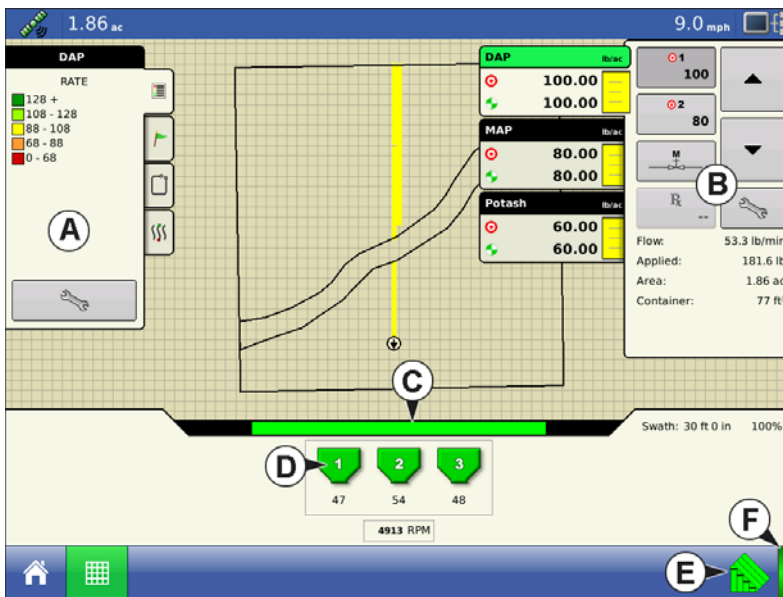
## RUN TIME OPERATIONS



During Run Time Operations, Strip Till operators can press the Strip Till Control button, as shown, to open the Strip Till Control screen. At this screen, you can adjust Product Density, Conveyor Rate and other settings.

- Each of these settings described below must be set for each individual Product Channel (bin).
- The **Product Density**, and the **Conveyor 1 Rate** are all stored with each combination of product and control channel.

Below is an example of a Strip-Till with three granular product bins.



- (A) Mapping Toolbox
- (B) Product Control Toolbox
- (C) Metering Indicator
- (D) Strip-till Control button
- (E) AutoSwath
- (F) Master Switch Status (on)

## STRIP-TILL (THREE-BIN CONFIGURATION)

### • Strip Till Control button

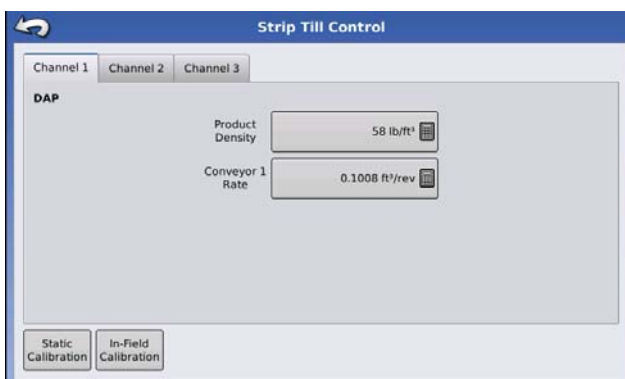
Displays the status of the product control channel. The Meter Shaft Speed (in RPM) is shown underneath the bin icon; the Fan Speed (also in RPM) is shown at bottom. When the fertilizer bin is grey no product application is taking place. When product is being applied, the fertilizer bin icon changes color to green. Press the Strip-Till Control button to display the Strip-Till Control screen and settings. These settings include Product Density and Conveyor 1 Rate. For more information, see section beginning at [“Strip Till Control Screen” on page 217](#).

### • Metering Indicator

The Metering Indicator is shown at the top of the Equipment Tab when the Map screen is shown in Zoom to Extent. When the Map screen is shown in the Zoom Details view or Perspective View, the metering indicator is shown as a bar that appears behind the vehicle icon.

DirectCommand controls the conveyor and spinner speed and monitors the bin level. The control modules support PWM, motorized servo, Mark IV.2, Mark IV.4 and Mark V hydraulic control valves. DirectCommand also supports application control of multiple bin spinner spreaders.

### Strip Till Control Screen



### • Product Density

This density value (shown in pounds per cubic foot, or lb./ft.3), is stored with each product. Use the numeric keypad to edit value.



**Note:** For proper machine performance and accuracy, you should check the Product Density daily.

### • Conveyor 1 Rate

This setting represents the volume of product dispensed by one revolution of the conveyor drive shaft (cubic foot per revolution, or ft.<sup>3</sup>/rev.) This number is shown with the assumption that the conveyor shaft has a 1-inch gate opening.



**CAUTION:** You must set the Conveyor 1 Rate for each product after it has been created. This value can either be manually entered, or determined by the static (or in-field) calibration.

### • Static Calibration

Press the **Static Calibration** button to perform an automated routine to calibrate each metering circuit. This calibration is performed before applying in field conditions. For more information, see [“Static CFR Calibration Procedure” on page 218](#).

### • In-Field Calibration

Press the **In-Field Calibration** button to perform an automated routine to adjust the calibration number for the selected metering circuit. This calibration is performed if there is a difference between the amount of product logged as compared to what was actually applied. For more information, see [“In-Field Calibration Procedure \(Strip Till\)” on page 219](#).

## Static CFR Calibration Procedure



The Static CFR Calibration Procedure performs an automated routine to calibrate each metering circuit. This calibration is performed before applying in field conditions To perform the Static CFR Calibration, press the Strip Till Control button, as shown at left, to open the Strip Till Control screen. At the Strip Till Control screen, press the Static

Calibration button.

### 1. Read Static Calibration warning

A warning appears, advising to disable the blower fan circuit and prepare to catch any product dispensed in an appropriate container. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 2. Select Metering Circuit to Calibrate

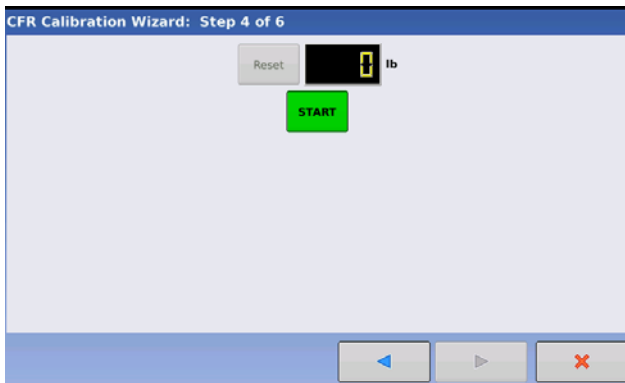
The CFR Calibration Wizard appears. Use the drop-down menu to choose the desired channel to calibrate, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 3. Enter Dispense Amount

Use the numeric keypad to enter the amount of product to be dispensed into the container, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 4. Enter Simulated Target Rate

Use the numeric keypad to enter a simulated target rate, shown in pounds per acres. Press the blue right-arrow button to continue.



### 5. Start Target Rate Countdown

Press the green Start button to begin the target rate countdown. As the countdown is started, the button will turn red and state Stop. When the countdown is complete, press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

### 6. Enter Actual Dispense Amount

Enter the actual dispense amount, in pounds.



**Note:** The CFR will be calculated from the actual product amount dispensed.

### 7. Calibration Complete

A message appears, stating that your calibration is complete, and showing the CFR amount, in cubic feet per revolution. Either:

- Press **Cancel** (red X) to exit the calibration without saving the value.
- Press **Repeat Calibration** to begin the process again.
- Press the green check mark button to save the value and exit the calibration routine.

### In-Field Calibration Procedure (Strip Till)

The In-Field CFR Calibration procedure performs an automated routine to adjust the calibration number for the selected metering circuit. This calibration is performed if there is a difference between the amount of product logged as compared to what was actually applied. To do an In-Field Calibration procedure, press the In-Field Calibration button on the Strip-Till Control screen, and the In-Field CFR Calibration Wizard appears.

#### 1. Select Metering Circuit to Calibrate

Use the drop-down menu to select the channel to calibrate, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

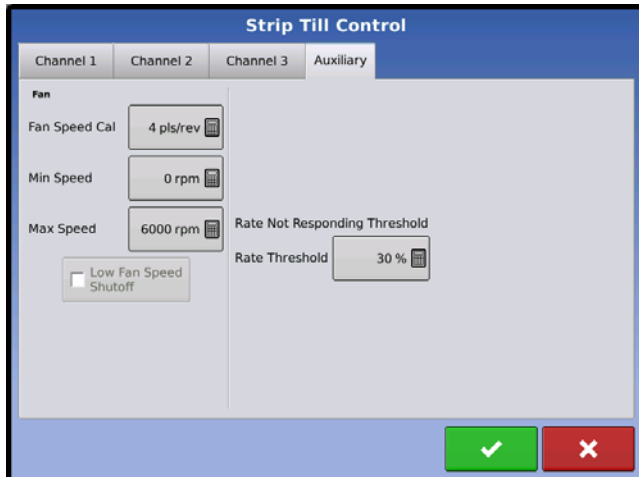
#### 2. Enter Actual Weight

The Accumulated Weight is shown in the top portion of the screen. Use the numeric keypad to enter the Actual Weight, and press the blue right-arrow button to continue.

#### 3. Calibration Complete

A message appears, stating that your calibration is complete, and showing the CFR amount, in cubic feet per revolution. Press the green check mark button to finish the calibration.

## Strip Till Control: Auxiliary Tab



### • Fan Speed Cal

Number of pulses that are generated by the sensor during one revolution of the blower fan shaft.

### • Min Speed

Setting represents the desired minimum speed of the blower fan. An alarm will sound if the blower fan speed falls below this value.

### • Max Speed

Setting represents the desired maximum speed of the blower fan. An alarm will sound if the blower fan speed exceeds this value.

### • Rate Threshold

Percentage difference between the Actual Rate and the Target Rate when the Rate Not Responding Message is displayed on the Run screen.

### • Low Fan Speed Shutoff

When selected, granular product application of a strip-till toolbar will be shut off if fan speed drops below the Min Speed setting.

## TROUBLESHOOTING DIRECTCOMMAND GRANULAR APPLICATIONS

**Problem:** Run screen Granular channel(s) green light spreader indicator will not turn on

**Solution:**

1. Make sure ground speed is registered a value greater than zero on the display.
2. Verify a target rate greater than zero is entered into the display.
3. Check the switch status found on the Run screen under System and Input Diagnostics. As the master switch is turned on and off, the Input Diagnostics window should change from black to green (if they do not, then refer to the installation instructions to verify switch connections).
4. Check high current connection into the Granular Control Module.

**Problem:** Master switch will not turn on when the foot pedal is on.

**Solution:** Make sure the Master Switch Input is set to "External 2" under the Auxiliary Input Settings.

**Problem:** AutoSwath turns on the booms too fast or too slow.

**Solution:** Check GPS offsets in the vehicle setup to verify all of the measurements are correct.

**Problem:** AutoSwath feature is not shown

**Solution:** The display must have the AutoSwath feature password-unlocked before the feature is available to the operator.

**Problem:** AutoSwath is checked on, but the spreader will not turn on.

1. Make sure the ground speed is registering a value greater than zero on the display.
2. Make sure the applicator is inside of the field boundary.

**Problem:** Conveyor turns off in the middle of the pass

**Solution:** Check the display firmware and module firmware to see if they are running the latest version.

**Problem:** Total Applied does not match Actual Weight Applied

**Solution:**

1. Make sure the shaft speed pls/rev are set correctly in the controller settings.
2. Make sure the controlling product is set to the correct units.

**Problem:** Rate not responding

**Solution:**

1. Make sure there is a ground speed registering on the display.
2. Make sure the shaft speed pls/rev are set correctly in the controller settings.  
(You must make sure to account for sprocket ratios if chain driven)

$$\frac{\text{Driven Teeth}}{\text{Drive Teeth}} \times \text{Rate Sensor Pulses} = \text{True Pulses}$$

3. Check the user-defined value found under the controller settings for Strip-Till.
4. The CFR number may need to be adjusted.

## TROUBLESHOOTING SERIAL CONTROL APPLICATIONS

**Problem:** Rate changes on the display, but not on the controlled console.

**Solution:**

1. Verify the current firmware is running on the display and Application Rate module.
2. Check the settings specific to your controlled console. (For more information, refer to the Quick Reference Guide).
3. Check cabling and all connections.
4. Disconnect the serial connection and determine if the controller is functioning properly without the display.

**Problem:** The display rate and serial-controlled rate do not match

**Solution:**

1. Verify the current firmware is running on the display and Application Rate Module.
2. Check to make sure the nominal rate in the display matches the nominal rate in the serial-controlled console.

## FERTILIZER DEFAULT PRODUCT SETTINGS

Material	Type	Abbreviated name for display and predefined name for SMS	Percentage (in terms of lbs.100 lbs.)			Density
			N	P (P <sub>2</sub> O <sub>5</sub> )	K (K <sub>2</sub> O)	
Ammonium nitrate	Dry	Ammonium nitrate	34	0	0	N/A
Ammonium phosphate	Dry	Ammonium phosphate	10	34	0	N/A
DAP	Dry	DAP	18	46	0	N/A
MAP	Dry	MAP	11	52	0	N/A
Ammonium sulfate	Dry	Ammonium sulfate	21	0	0	N/A
Urea	Dry	Urea	46	0	0	N/A
Potash	Dry	Potash	0	0	60	N/A
Triple superphosphate	Dry	Triple superphosphate	0	46	0	N/A
Ordinary superphosphate	Dry	Superphosphate	0	20	0	N/A
Potassium nitrate	Dry	Potassium nitrate	13	0	44	N/A

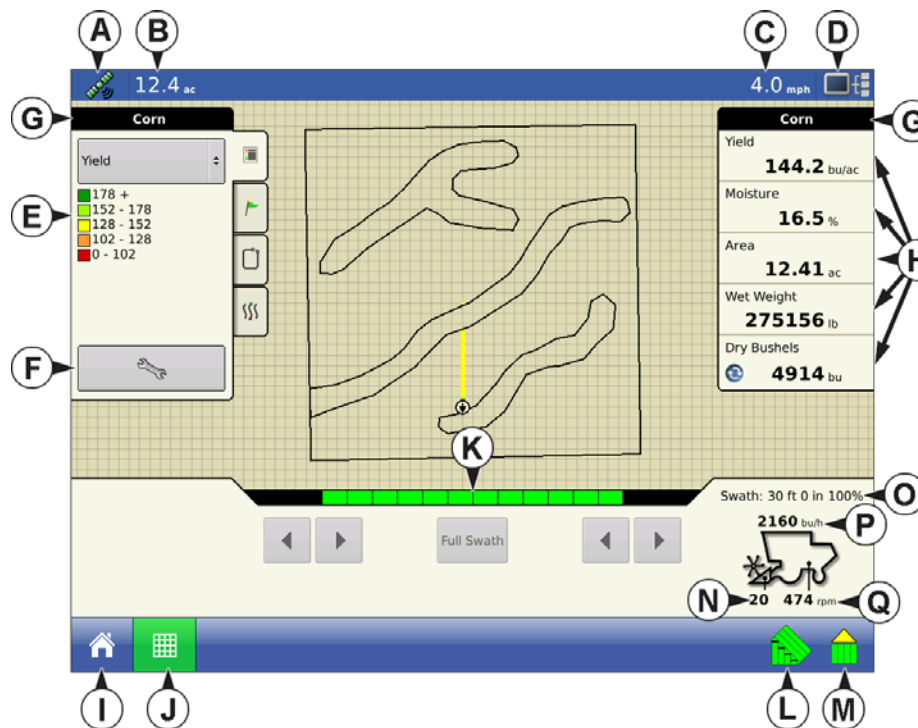
# YIELD MONITORING

## RUN TIME ENVIRONMENT: MAP SCREEN

The screens shown below are for a Harvest configuration. In order for you to view the Map screen, you must first select a Season, Grower, Farm and Field at the Start Field Operation portion of the Home screen. For more information, see *“Start Field Operation” on page 23.*



Once a configuration has been completed, the Map View button appears at the bottom of the Home screen. Press the Map View button, and the Map screen appears, as shown and on the following page.



- (A) GPS Status
- (B) Total Field Area
- (C) Ground Speed
- (D) Diagnostics button
- (E) Map Legend (varieties)
- (F) Legend Select
- (G) Crop
- (H) Status Items
- (I) Home button
- (J) Map View button
- (K) Swath Width
- (L) AutoSwath
- (M) Logging Status button
- (N) Header Height %
- (O) Swath Width

- (P) Bushels Per Hour
- (Q) Elevator Speed



**Note:** Pressing the Map View button will cycle between the available Map screen views, and the appearance of the Map View button changes.

## HARVEST STATUS ITEMS

Corn	
Yield	<b>145.6</b> bu/ac
Moisture	<b>16.5</b> %
Area	<b>12.28</b> ac
Wet Weight	<b>274089</b> lb
Wet Bushels	<b>4894</b> bu

- **Yield**

Displays the instantaneous yield while there is grain flow and the average yield when grain flow is not present.

- **Moisture**

Displays the instantaneous moisture when there is grain flow and the average when there is no grain flow.

- **Area**

Shows the area harvested for the current region.

- **Wet Weight**

Shows the actual weight that has been harvested for the region.

- **Wet Bushels**

Shows the actual bushels that have been harvested for the current region.

- **Dry Bushels**

Displays the actual number of bushels at the specified dry moisture percentage.

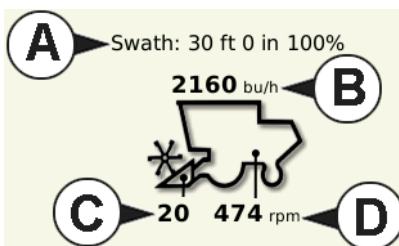
- If the actual moisture is below the set dry moisture percentage and "Expand Bushels for All Grains Below Dry %" is not checked, it will show actual bushels.
- If "Expand Bushels for All Grains Below Dry %" is checked, it will add water weight back in until it is at the specified dry percentage.



**Note:** The **Wet Bushels** and **Dry Bushels** Status Items do not appear if you are using metric system measurements.

## HARVEST DIAGNOSTIC BUTTON ON MAP SCREEN

The Harvest Diagnostic button appears at the bottom right-hand portion of the Harvest Map screen. Pressing this button summons the Harvest Diagnostic screen; for more information see ["Grain Harvest Diagnostics"](#) on page 241. Other data that appears by the Harvest Diagnostic button is described below.



- **(A) Swath Width**

Displays current swath width that is being harvested.

- **(B) Bushels Per Hour**

Displays the bushels harvested per hour (bu/hr).

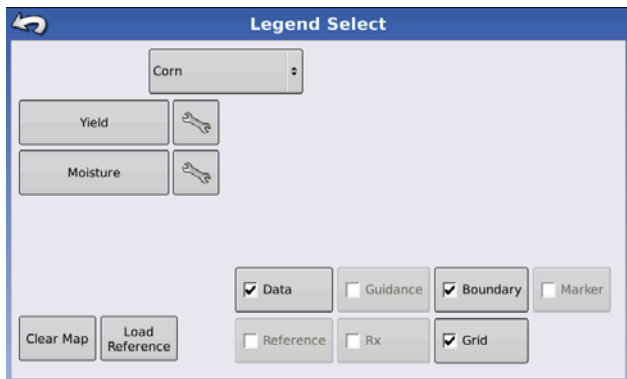
- **(C) Header Height**

Displays percentage of header height.

- **(D) Elevator Speed**

Shown in Revolutions Per Minute (RPM).

## LEGEND SELECT



During Harvest operations, the Map screen displays two types of items in the Legend: Yield and Moisture. The Legend Setup button on the Map Legend Tab of the Mapping Toolbox opens the Legend Select screen.

• **Yield**

Displays the instantaneous yield while there is grain flow and the average yield when grain flow is not present.

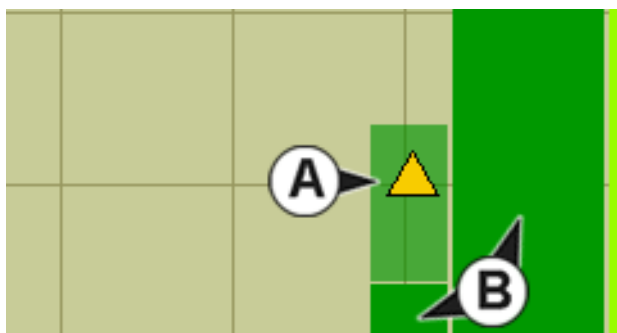
• **Moisture**

Displays the instantaneous moisture while there is grain

flow and the average when there is no grain flow.

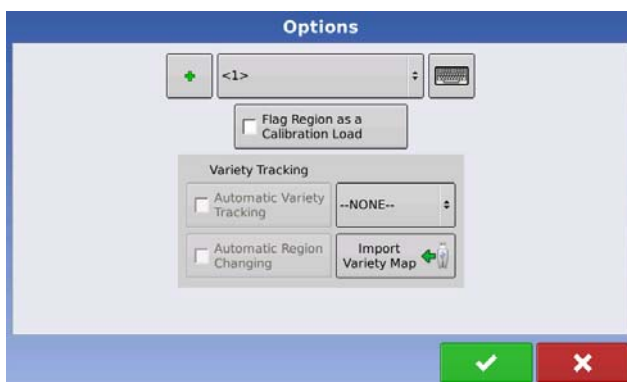
- Press Clear Map to permanently remove all map data from the active field operation
- Press Load Reference to load a map from a previous operation performed in that field to view as a background map.
- Press Data, Guidance, Boundary, Marker, Reference, Rx and Grid to show or remove those items on the Map screen.

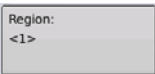
## MAP SCREEN: FLOW DELAY



When the Map screen is running in a Zoom Detail view, **instantaneous coverage (A)** is shown automatically. However, there is a time lag between when grain enters the combine through the Header and is logged by the Flow Sensor in the Clean Grain Elevator. Because of this time lag, the instantaneous coverage is shown on the Map screen as a lighter color than **coverage that has been logged (B)** by the display. For an example, see the picture.

## REGION SELECTION: OPTIONS SCREEN



The Region button,  located on the Home screen, opens the Options screen where you can change or edit regions, Flag Region as a Calibration Load, select Automatic Variety Tracking or Automatic Region Changing.



**Note:** The Options screen also appears when you create a Field Configuration with the Field Operation Wizard.

- For more information about changing regions, see [“Home Screen After Configuration” on page 24.](#)

- If you would like to use a region in the weight calibration, select the Flag Region as Calibration Load check box. For more information about Calibration Loads, see [“Grain Weight Calibration” on page 236](#).
- For more information about Automatic Variety Tracking or Automatic Region Changing, see [“Tracking Varieties and Changing Regions” on page 226](#).

## TRACKING VARIETIES AND CHANGING REGIONS

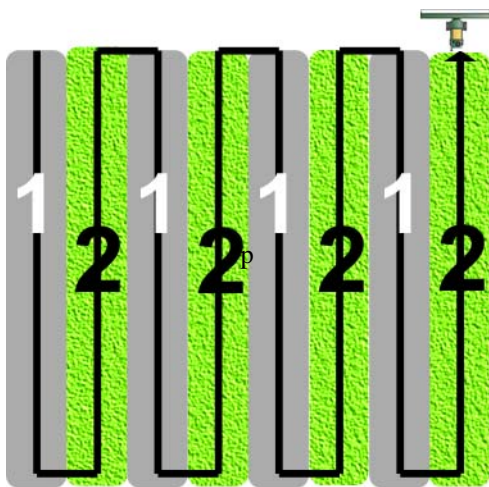
You can use the Options screen to enable the display to track varieties that you planted earlier and are now harvesting. You can also use two types of variety tracking: Automatic Variety Tracking and Automatic Region Changing.

- Automatic Variety Tracking tracks only varieties; hence the operator must manually change to a new region.



**Note:** You can select the Variety Tracking option when you are creating a crop during Harvest Product Setup.

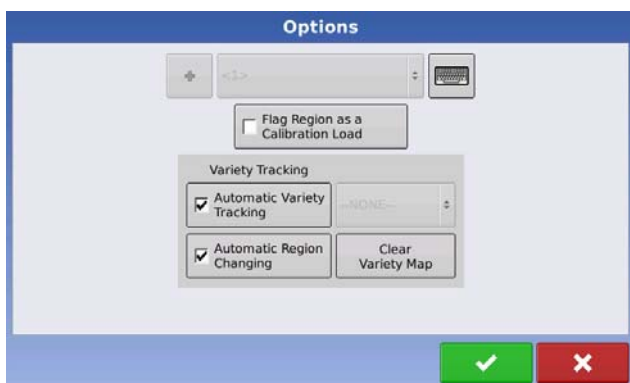
- Automatic Region Changing tracks both varieties and regions, so the display changes the region automatically.



The illustration at left shows how the display could track two different varieties.

In this example, when the harvester reaches the end of Variety 1, and the operator maneuvers the vehicle to Variety 2, a message appears that either a new variety has been detected and the user is notified to change regions (Automatic Variety Tracking,) or that a variety has been detected and the display is automatically changing regions. (Automatic Region Changing).

### Variety Tracking menu and Automatic Variety Tracking



- You may use the keyboard button to enter your own name for a new region.
- If you would like to use a region in the weight calibration, select the **Flag Region as Calibration Load** check box.

## Automatic Variety Tracking

- If you want to enable the Automatic Variety Tracking feature, select only the Automatic Variety Tracking check box. (Do not select the Automatic Region Changing check box).



**Note:** A variety map must be present to enable Automatic Variety Tracking.

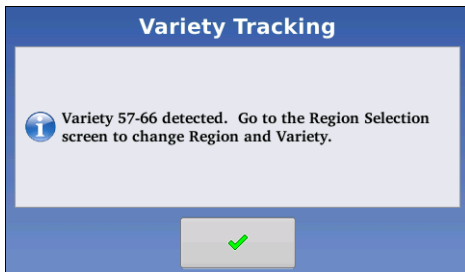
- If no variety map is present, then you can either
  - manually assign a variety from the Variety Tracking List, located to the right of the Automatic Variety Tracking check box; or
  - import a variety reference map. For more information, see *“Importing Variety Maps” on page 227.*

## Automatic Region Changing

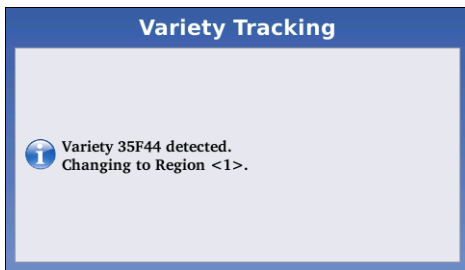
If you wish to enable the Automatic Region Changing feature, select both the Automatic Variety Tracking check box, and the Automatic Region Changing check box.

### In-Field Messages

If you have selected either the Automatic Variety Tracking or Automatic Region Changing features, you will see one of the following messages as you harvest your field.



- If you have selected **Automatic Variety Tracking**, the message at left tells that the display has detected a different variety, and that you should manually change the region.



- If you have selected **Automatic Region Changing**, the message at left tells you that the display has detected a different variety, and that the display is automatically changing to a different region.

## IMPORTING VARIETY MAPS

Variety maps can be imported from SMS software. The SMS software uses planting data to create a variety reference map which is saved as a .ref file. This .ref file can then be exported to the display for use with the Automatic Variety Tracking and Automatic Region Changing features.

### Importing Variety Map Procedure

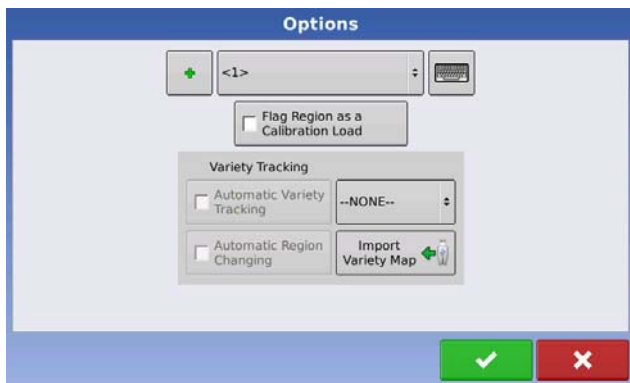
#### 1. Open Options screen

You can import a Variety Map at the Options screen, which you can access by one of two methods:



**-a.** Press the Region button, located on the Home screen.

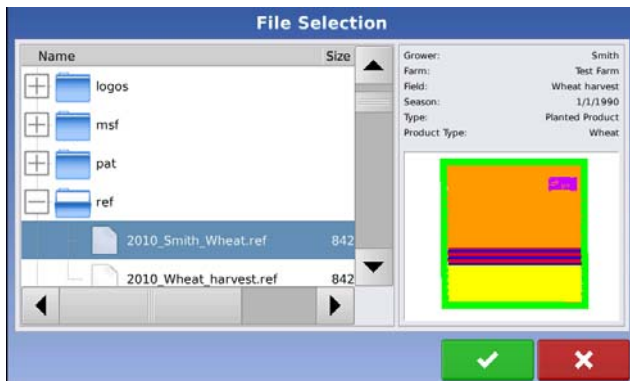
**-b.** Press the Start Field Operation button to begin the Field Configuration process.



The Field Operation Wizard opens the Options screen.

## 2. Press Import Variety Map

At the Options screen, shown above, press the Import Variety Map button.



## 3. Select Reference File

The File Selection screen appears, as shown. Use the Up and Down arrow buttons to scroll through the files and select the desired reference (.ref) file. Press the green check mark box when finished.

## Error Messages at Variety Map Import

If the display failed to import a variety map, it is likely that you saw one of three error messages on the display:

**Error Message:** “Crop type of Variety Reference Map does not match crop type of field.”

**Possible Cause:** A different crop type was selected in the Field Operation Configuration than is shown in the variety reference map.

**Solution:** Either create a Field Operation Configuration with a different crop; or choose a variety reference map with an appropriate crop.

**Error Message:** “Variety Reference Map does not match location of field.”

**Possible Cause:** A different farm or field was selected in the Field Operation Configuration than is shown in the variety reference map.

**Solution:** Either create a Field Operation Configuration with a different field, or choose a variety reference map with an appropriate field.

**Error Message:** “Too many zones to show complete Variety Reference Map. Variety Tracking will work on all zones, even those not mapped on screen.”

**Possible Cause:** The reference file selected exceeded the allowable memory limit used to load reference maps.

**Solution:** Continue harvest operations. All variety tracking and region information will be logged. However you will not be able to see the entire reference map on the display’s map screen.

## AUTOSWATH SENSITIVITY SETTINGS

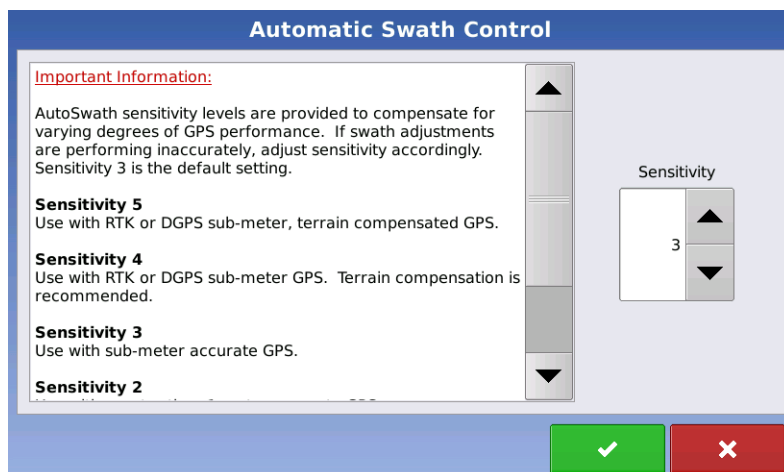
AutoSwath automatically increases or decreases the active (logged) swath width of the combine head, according to field boundaries and already-harvested areas. By doing so, the display records as change

in logging data, even though no mechanical change has already taken place. AutoSwath is particularly useful when harvesting point rows or other areas where harvesting a full head width is not possible.

When performing a Harvest operation, the AutoSwath feature includes sensitivity levels, which compensate for varying levels of GPS accuracy.



To change sensitivity levels, highlight your particular Operating Configuration in the configuration list shown on the Setup screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button.



When the Configuration Setup screen appears, press the Automatic Swath Control button. The Automatic Swath Control screen appears, as shown.

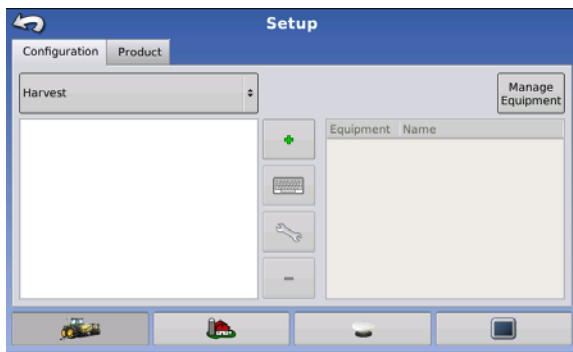
If swath adjustments are performing inaccurately, adjust the sensitivity accordingly. Sensitivity 3 is the default setting. Other settings include:

- **Sensitivity 5**  
Use with RTK or DGPS sub-meter, terrain-compensated GPS.
- **Sensitivity 4**  
Use with RTK or DGPS sub-meter GPS. Terrain compensation recommended.
- **Sensitivity 3**  
Use with sub-meter accurate GPS.
- **Sensitivity 2**  
Use with 1+ meter accurate GPS.
- **Sensitivity 1**  
Swath sections are all on or all off. Use with 1+ meter accurate GPS.

## ABOUT HARVEST CONFIGURATIONS



To set up a Harvest Operation Configuration, first press the Setup (wrench) button and go to the Setup screen, as shown.



Underneath the Configuration Tab, press the Add button to add a Harvest Configuration. A wizard will guide you through the process of selecting or creating a configuration that includes Combine, Header and Crops settings.

Your Operating Configuration will then be viewable when you start a new Field Operation with the Field Operation Wizard. For more information on Field Operation Configurations, see [“Start Field Operation” on page 23](#).



**Note:** You can also use the **Manage Equipment** button to create or edit specific vehicles and implements.

## PRE-HARVEST CHECKLIST

### DISPLAY PREPARATION

- Create a backup of your spring information. Go to the Setup/Display menu to create a backup. Select Copy All Files to save the spring data to the USB Flash Drive.
- Make sure your display firmware and all connected modules are up to date.
- If you have purchased a new combine or new heads, create new configurations for any setup that is different from last fall. Remove all old configurations.

### VEHICLE INSPECTION

- Check to make sure all cables are properly attached and in good condition.
- Remove flow sensor and inspect for damage.
- Check the elevator deflector and impact plate for wear. Verify you have the proper clearance at the top of the clean grain elevator. Clearance should be between 3/8” and 5/8” (0.95 cm to 1.59 cm).

### CALIBRATION SEQUENCE

Perform Harvest Calibrations in the following order:

#### 1. Distance (Speed Sensor) Calibration

This calibrates the Ground Speed Sensor connected to the display. (calibrate a backup sensor even when using GPS speed as the primary speed sensor). For more information, see [“Calibrate Distance” on page 48](#).

#### 2. Calibrate Header Sensor

This sets the height when the display stops recording area as the header is raised at the end of the pass. Stop height calibration is required for each grain type. For more information, see [“Calibrate Header Sensor” on page 232](#).

#### 3. Perform a Vibration Calibration

The vibration calibration is used to compensate for the amount of force that is measured by the flow sensor with no grain flow. For more information, see [“Vibration Calibration” on page 233](#).

#### 4. Calibrate Temperature

This sets the temperature offset to provide a correct moisture reading. For more information, see [“Temperature Calibration” on page 234](#).

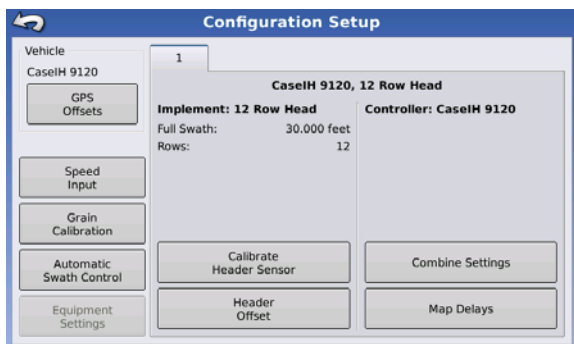
## 5. Calibrate Moisture

This sets the moisture offset to help provide accurate moisture and yield readings. For more information, see *“Moisture Calibration” on page 235.*

## 6. Calibrate Grain Weight

A correct Grain Weight Calibration provides accurate readings across all grain flow ranges. Calibration is required each year and for each grain type. For more information, see *“Grain Weight Calibration” on page 236.*

# CONFIGURATION SETUP SETTINGS



After creating an operating configuration that includes a Combine and Header, you must go to the Configuration Setup screen and enter information for your specific operating configuration.



Highlight your particular Operating Configuration in the configuration list shown on the Setup screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. The Configuration Setup screen appears.

An example is shown below.

### • GPS Offsets

After completing the process of setting up a Vehicle, you must configure GPS Offsets. The GPS Offsets define where the machine's rear axle and hitch is in relation to the GPS antenna. These settings are used by mapping. For more information, see *“GPS Offsets” on page 51.*

### • Speed Input

The ground speed source can be changed by pressing the Speed Input button. This opens the Speed Input screen, where you can choose a primary and backup speed source.

- If any source other than GPS is selected, the primary speed source is the only setting that you will need to set.
- If you select GPS as the primary speed source, then you will also need to select a secondary (backup) source in case of GPS signal loss.

For more information, see *“Speed Input Settings” on page 47.*

### • Grain Calibration

For more information, see *“Grain Weight Calibration” on page 236.*

### • Automatic Swath Control

For more information on AutoSwath, see *“AutoSwath Sensitivity Settings” on page 228.*

### • Equipment Settings

Not applicable in Harvest.

### • Calibrate Header Sensor

For more information, see *“Calibrate Header Sensor” on page 232.*

### • Header Offset

For more information, see *“Header Offset” on page 233.*

## • Combine Settings

Press the Combine Settings button, and the Advanced Combine Settings screen appears.



**CAUTION:** Do not change any of the advanced combine settings without specific instruction from Technical Support!

## • Map Delay

Press to change the Map Delay settings.



**CAUTION:** Do not change settings from the default value of 4 without specific instruction from Technical Support!

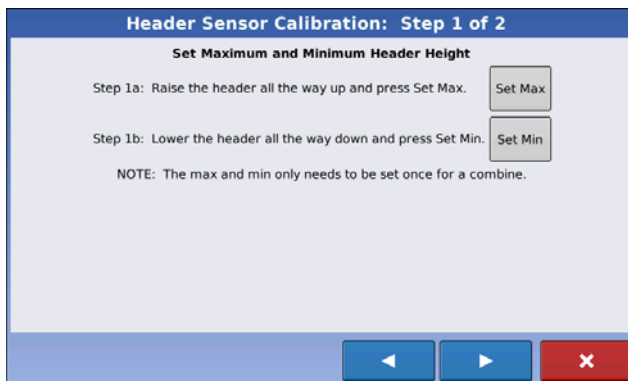
# HEADER SETTINGS

## Calibrate Header Sensor

Prior to logging harvest data, you must calibrate the header sensor. Crops must be set up within the system to proceed with the calibration routine. Go to the Header Tab, select the correct header from the list and press the Calibrate Header Sensor button. The Header Sensor Calibration wizard appears.

### 1. Read Instructions

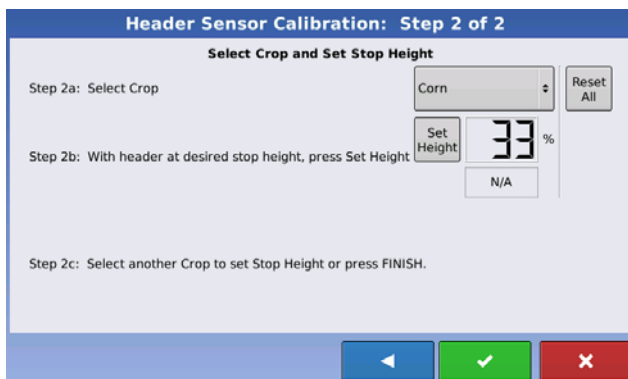
Read the header sensor calibration instructions fully before proceeding. Press the blue right arrow button to start the calibration process.



### 2. Set Max and Min Header Height

Set the maximum and minimum header height.

- Raise the header all of the way up and press Set Max.
- Lower the header all of the way down and press Set Min.
- Press the blue right arrow button to continue.



### 3. Select Crop and set Stop Height

Select the correct crop type from the list box. Raise or lower the header to the height where you would like to have the area logging turn on and off. Press Set Height.

The position relating to the Stop Height will be represented as a percentage. (33% in the example to the left)

Move the header above and below the Stop Height. When below the Stop Height the display reads **Down**; when above the Stop Height the display reads **Up**. To clear Min, Max, and Stop Height values for all

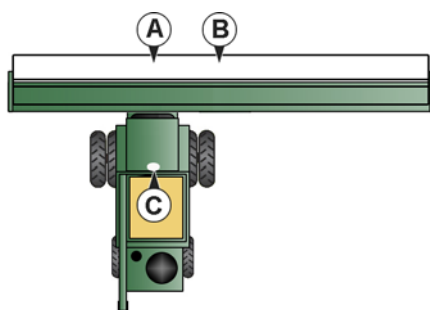
headers, press **Reset All**.



**CAUTION:** If **Reset All** is pressed the sensor will have to be calibrated for all headers!

## Header Offset

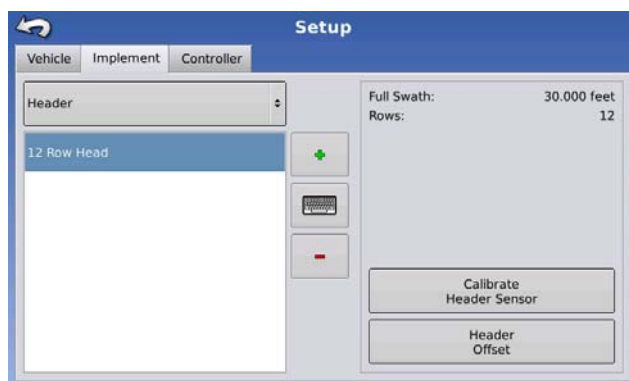
If the header of your vehicle is mounted offset to the vehicle's center, this can affect the accuracy of the GPS data you are receiving. By performing a Header Offset, you can compensate for the distance between the center of the vehicle, and the center of the header's swath.



### 1. Measure distance

First, measure the distance between the GPS antenna (2) and the center of the header's swath (1).

- (A) Center of Vehicle
- (B) Center of Swath
- (C) GPS Antenna



### 2. Pull up the Header Offset screen

Select the Implement tab and select Header from the drop-down menu.

### 3. Press Header Offset button

Select an implement from the Implement list. Press the Header Offset button on the Implement tab.



### 4. Enter the distance amount

The Header Offset screen appears, as shown at left. Enter the distance amount by using the numeric keypad button. Press the green check mark button when finished.

## VIBRATION CALIBRATION

The vibration calibration must be performed with the correct head on the combine, and repeated for each crop harvested.

### 1. Run Separator

Start the separator and feeder house with the proper header attached. Run at full speed.

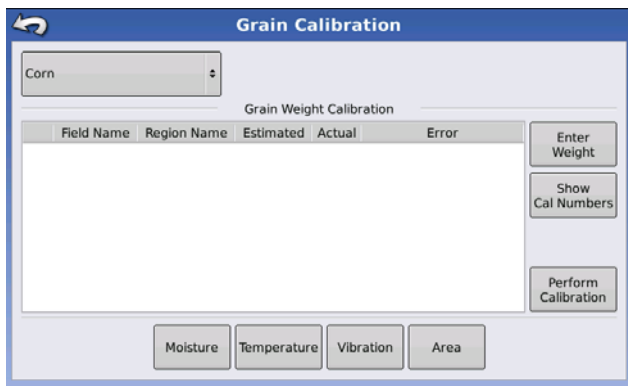


**CAUTION:** Do not harvest a crop during the Vibration Calibration process.

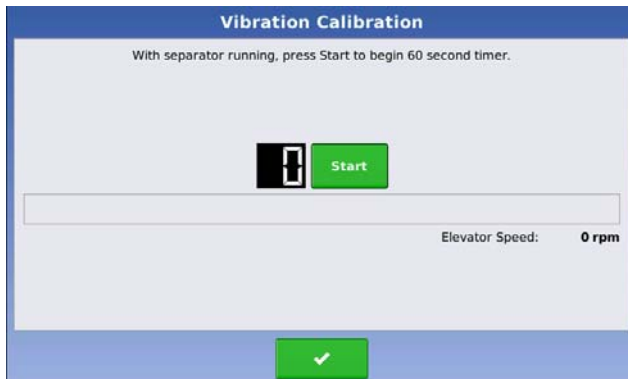
### 2. Go to Grain Calibration screen



Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen.



3. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Grain Calibration button. The Grain Calibration screen appears, as shown.



#### 4. Open Vibration Calibration screen

On the Grain Calibration screen, press the Vibration button. The Vibration Calibration screen opens, as shown.



#### 5. Press Start

With the combine separator running at full operating speed with the header engaged, press the Start button. The display counts down 60 seconds.



#### 6. Calibration Number Displayed

When the vibration calibration is complete, a message appears underneath the Start button stating "Calibration Complete." Next to this, the vibration calibration number is displayed. Press the green check mark box to return to the Calibration Tab. You may now turn off the separator

## TEMPERATURE CALIBRATION

A Temperature Calibration only needs to be performed once per season. Changing this calibration will affect previously-harvested data.



**CAUTION:** Only calibrate the temperature before harvesting begins.

### 1. Place Combine in Shady Spot

Leave the combine parked in a shaded area or a shed for a few hours. The temperature calibration should not be performed if the sensor has been in direct sunlight or is sitting next to grain.

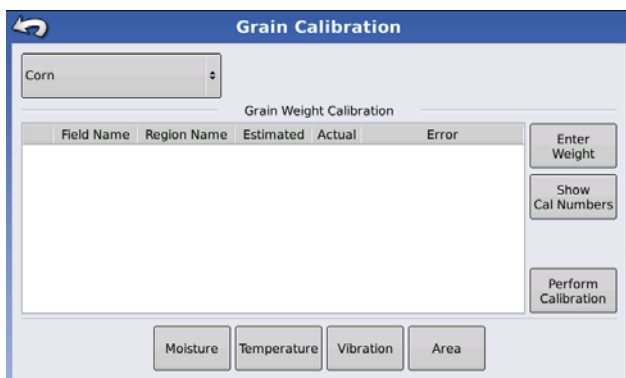
### 2. Take Air Temperature Reading

Take an accurate air temperature reading using a thermometer in the same shaded area.

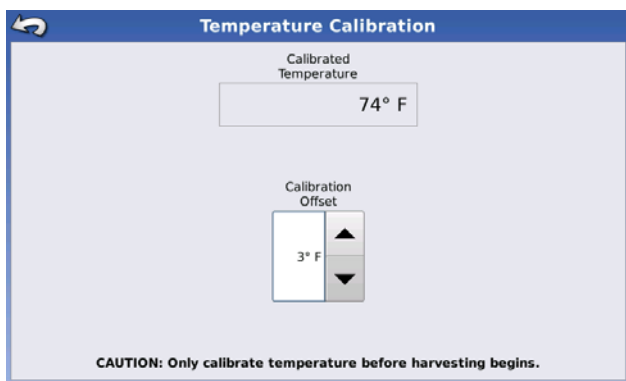


### 3. Go to Grain Calibration screen

Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen.



4. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Grain Calibration button. The Grain Calibration screen appears, as shown.



### 5. Open Temperature Calibration screen

On the Grain Calibration screen, press the Temperature button. The Temperature Calibration screen appears, as shown.

6. **Enter Outside Air Temperature.** Use the up and down arrow keys to enter the known outside air temperature. Make the proper adjustments until the Calibrated Temperature shown at the top of this screen reflects the correct air temperature.

## MOISTURE CALIBRATION

A moisture calibration only needs to be done once per crop, per season. Changing this calibration will affect previously-harvested data.

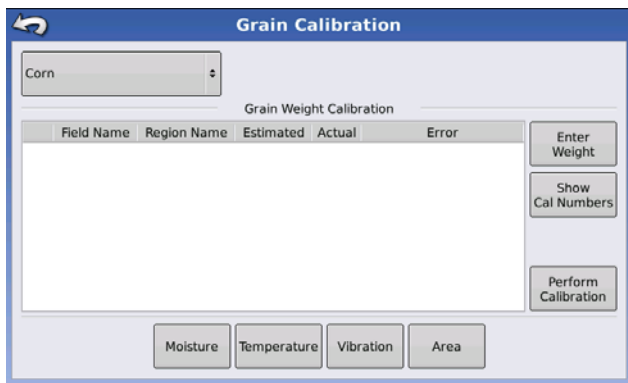
### 1. Measure Moisture on Grain Samples

Harvest one load of grain. Randomly sample grain from several locations in the grain tank to collect an average moisture for this load, then measure the actual moisture using an accurate moisture tester.

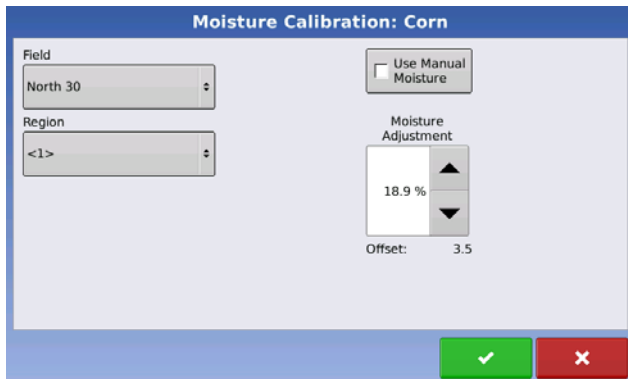


### 2. Go to Grain Calibration screen

Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen.



3. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Grain Calibration button. The Grain Calibration screen appears, as shown.



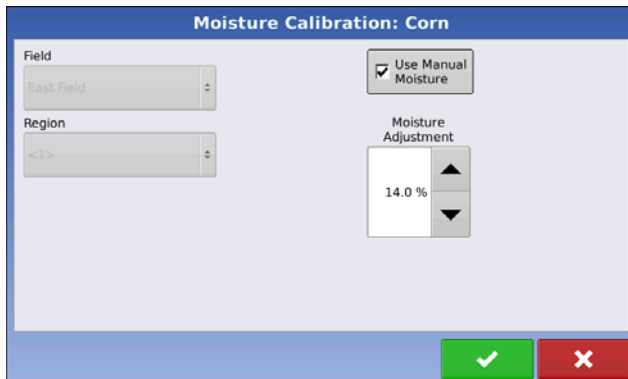
#### 4. Open Moisture Calibration screen

On the Grain Calibration screen, press the Moisture button to open the Moisture Calibration screen, as shown.

#### 5. Choose Field, Region, and Adjust Moisture

Choose the correct field and region the moisture sample was taken from. Use the up and down arrow keys to adjust the moisture so that it matches the known moisture of the sample. When finished, press the check mark box.

### Manual Moisture Setting



If you wish to adjust moisture settings for a specific region, you can use the **Use Manual Moisture** setting. Unlike the Moisture Calibration, which affects all previously-harvested data, a Manual Moisture setting only affects data within a specified Region.

1. At the Moisture Calibration screen, select the desired Field and Region where you wish to adjust Manual Moisture settings.
2. Check the **Use Manual Moisture** check box, as shown above.
3. Use the up and down arrow keys to adjust the moisture to the desired value. When finished, press the check mark box.

## GRAIN WEIGHT CALIBRATION

Before the display can accurately measure harvested bushels, you must calibrate the display by entering in actual load weights into the display for each grain type. You must obtain these actual load weights by weighing the grain from a load on accurate scales. To obtain accurate results, you must obtain between

four and six calibration loads. You can complete a weight calibration at any time during the season; however it is recommended that you calibrate grain weight at the beginning of the season.



**Note:** Start the calibration procedure with the combine stopped, the combine grain tank empty, and a hauling vehicle empty.



### 1. Field Operation Configuration

While performing a Harvest Operation, press the Region button, and the Options screen appears, as shown.

### 2. Flag Region as a Calibration Load

Press the Flag Region as a Calibration Load check box; then press the checkmark box to return to the Home screen.

### 3. Choose Speed or Swath Width

Decide the speed at which you will drive or the swath width you will use for this load. Try to keep your speed or swath width as constant as possible for the entire load.

### 4. Harvest Calibration Load

Harvest a load weighing between 3,000 and 6,000 pounds (1,361 to 2,721 kilograms).

### 5. Empty Grain and Weigh Load

Empty the grain tank completely onto a truck or wagon, and weigh it with an accurate scale. Record each individual load weight to be entered into the display. (No grain from any other combine should be unloaded into this hauling vehicle).

### 6. Change Loads

In the display, immediately change to another load that does not have any data.

### 7. Weigh and Record Load Weight

Weigh the grain on the hauling vehicle and record the actual load weight.

- If you are using a weigh wagon to weigh the grain, make sure the wagon has been calibrated properly.
- Only use one scale during this calibration process.
- Use the same vehicle for all calibration loads.
- Do not use a semi truck, as this vehicle's capacity is too large for a calibration load.

### 8. Repeat for Four Calibration Loads

Repeat steps 1-7 for a minimum of four calibration loads. These calibration loads should be uniform in size.

- Harvest each of these loads at a different grain flow rate. Grain flow can be altered by changing the ground speed for each load (the recommended method) or using different swath widths for each load.
- As you enter these calibration loads, name them by using the appropriate region names, (for example name Region 1 = 5.0 mph, Region 2 = 4.5 mph, etc). This will eliminate confusion when identifying calibration loads.



### 9. Open Grain Calibration screen

Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Grain Calibration button. The Grain Calibration screen appears, as shown.

Field Name	Region Name	Estimated	Actual	Error
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> North 30	<1>	4399	4452	-1.2%
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> North 30	<2>	4402	4378	0.5%
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> North 30	<3>	3693	3720	-0.7%
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> North 30	<4>	3229	3211	0.6%

### 10. Select Crop to Calibrate

Use the drop-down menu to select the crop to calibrate.

### 11. Press Enter Weight

By default, all Field Names are checked. Uncheck any regions that you do not wish to include in the weight calibration, and press the Enter Weight button.

### 12. Select Region and Enter Actual Weight

The Enter Calibration Weight screen appears, as shown at left. Select the correct Field and Region and use the numeric keypad to enter the Actual Weight for those regions. Repeat this step for each calibration load. When finished, press the green check mark button.

### 13. Press Perform Calibration

When the Grain Calibration screen reappears, press the Perform Calibration button.

### 14. (Optional Step) Continue with Full Calibration

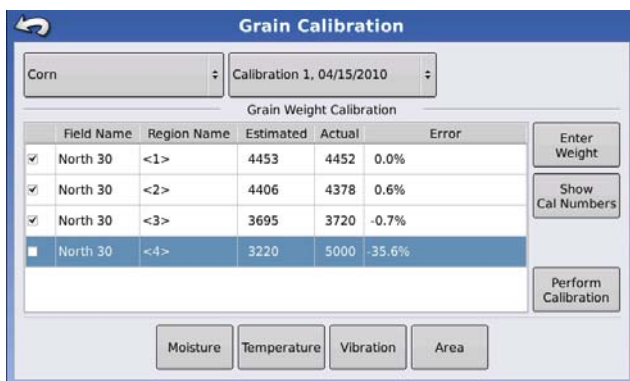
A message appears, stating "Linear Calibration Complete," as in the example shown at left. From here, you can continue with a Full Calibration, which is more accurate than the Linear Calibration that you just performed.



**Note:** A full calibration requires four or more loads; as compared to the Linear Calibration that you just performed, which can be performed with three loads or less.

### 15. Examine Error Percentage

When the calibration is finished, a screen appears, stating "Full Calibration Complete." Examine the error percentages before checking the check mark button. From here, you will return to the Grain Calibration screen.



### 16. Uncheck Loads With Excessive Error Percentages

At the Grain Calibration screen, take note of any calibration loads that have excessive error percentages. In the example at left, Region 4 has an error percentage of 35.6 percent.

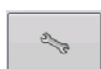
You should be able to calibrate the display for grain weight to an average error of 1% to 3%. If the average error is more than 3%, uncheck the load with the maximum error. Then re-perform the calibration by pressing the Perform Calibration button.



**Note:** You must still have at least four calibration loads checked in order to perform a full calibration.

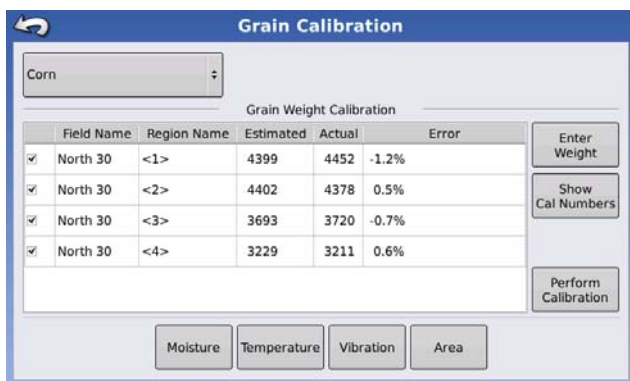
## ADDING A NEW CALIBRATION

If you notice a decreased yield accuracy, you may need to perform a new calibration. To do this, use the following procedure.



### 1. Go to Grain Calibration screen

Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Grain Calibration button. The Grain Calibration screen appears, as shown.

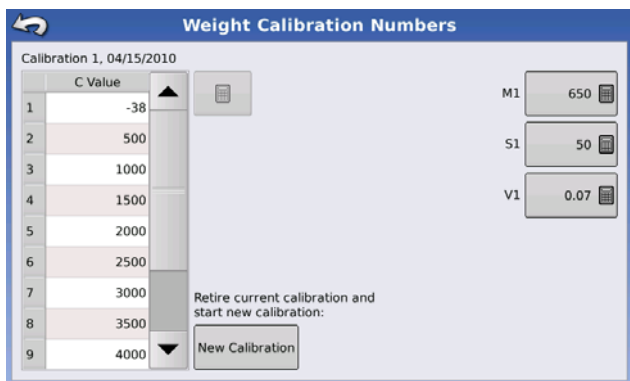


### 2. Select Crop to Calibrate

Use the drop-down menu to select the crop to calibrate.

### 3. Press Show Cal Numbers

Press the Show Cal Numbers button, and the Weight Calibration Numbers screen appears, as shown.



- On the left-hand side of the Weight Calibration Numbers screen is a list of grain calibration values that range from **C1** through **C11**. These 11 C numbers determine the weight that the display calculates from the data that it records into your regions as you harvest. These numbers have been pre-set and you should not change them unless instructed to by Technical Support.

- On the right-hand side of the Weight Calibration Numbers screen, three more numeric values appear: M1, S1, and V1. The M1 and S1 numbers are set specific to the combine model and are used for calibration. Do not

change these unless instructed to by Technical Support. The V1 number is the Vibration Calibration number. As with the first two numbers, do not change the V1 (Vibration Calibration) number unless instructed to by Technical Support.

#### 4. Press New Calibration button

To start a new calibration press the New Calibration button, located on the bottom of the Weight Calibration Numbers screen. After the New Calibration button is pressed, the display will apply the new moisture and grain weight calibration from this point forward.

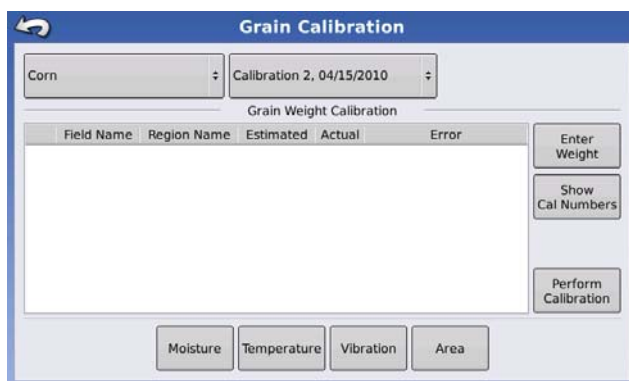


#### 5. Retire Old Calibration

The Retire Calibration warning screen appears, as shown. Press the check mark to retire your old calibration.



**Note:** By retiring your old calibration, you will not be able to return to your old calibration, or add data to it.



#### 6. New Calibration Appears

The new calibration now appears on the Grain Calibration screen, as shown. Your calibrations, past and present, are numbered in this list, in the order in which they were created. The calibration's date of creation appears to the right of the name.

#### 7. Perform New Weight Calibration

After you have created a new calibration, it is recommended that you perform another Weight Calibration. Refer to [“Grain Weight Calibration” on page 236](#).

## AREA CALIBRATION

If at the end of your field operation, your field totals are a different number than the known area of your field, then you can perform an area calibration to correct this discrepancy.

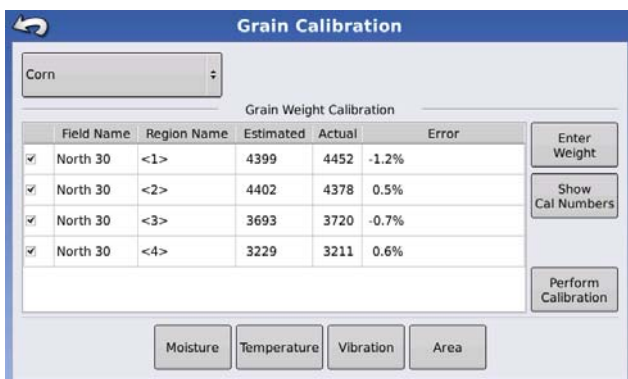


**Note:** This step is optional and may not be necessary for all users.



#### 1. Open Grain Calibration screen

Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the Grain Calibration button. The Grain Calibration screen appears, as shown.



**2. Open Area Calibration screen**

Press the Area button to open the Area Calibration screen.



**3. Enter correct area**

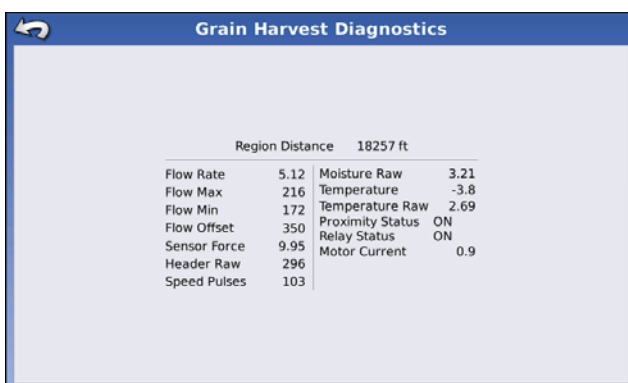
Use the numeric keypad to enter the correct area. The scale of this area change is then shown on this screen. Press the green check mark button when finished.

# GRAIN HARVEST DIAGNOSTICS



When performing a Harvest operation, you can also access the Harvest Diagnostic screen, as shown. Technical support may request that you look at this screen for help in diagnosing a problem. To get to this screen, press the Display Information button as shown at left.

When the Devices screen opens, press and highlight the Moisture Module listing in the CAN Device list, then press the Diagnostics button. The Grain Harvest Diagnostics screen appears, as shown.



The Grain Harvest Diagnostics screen includes the following information:

- **Flow Rate**  
Grain flow rate, shown in kilograms per second.
- **Flow Max, Flow Min and Flow Offset**  
Raw flow values used for diagnostic purposes.
- **Sensor Force**  
Force of grain flow, shown in Newtons.
- **Header Raw**  
Raw value of header sensor.

• **Speed Pulses**

Shows the number of ground speed pulses from the combine.

• **Moisture Raw**

Raw value of moisture sensor.

- **Temperature**

Air temperature, shown in Celsius.

- **Temperature Raw**

Raw value of temperature sensor.

- **Proximity Sensor**

Shows if Elevator Mount Unit sensor is covered with grain.

- **Relay Status**

Shows on or off.

- **Motor Current**

Measure of Elevator Mount Unit (EMU) current, shown in amps.

## HARVEST DIAGNOSTIC NOTES

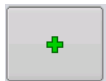
- For generalized Diagnostic information, such as memory, display, CAN device and firmware version information, see *“Device Information” on page 45.*
- For more information on LED diagnostic states, see *“Module LED Diagnostic States” on page 250.*

# CLAAS QUANTIMETER

The CLAAS Quantimeter Optical Sensing System includes the option of interfacing with the display. This option is available for LEXION combines of the 670 model and above. The display communicates with a Bridge Module. This Bridge Module receives data from the combine via the CEBIS (CLAAS Electronic On-Board Information System) monitor which is then relayed to the display. The Bridge module can also interface with the ParaDyme Automated Steering system.

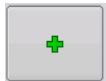
## CONFIGURATION FOR CLAAS QUANTIMETER

1. Go to the Setup screen's Configuration Tab.



2. Press the Add (plus sign) button to add an operating configuration.

3. Press the **Harvest** button to create a new harvest operating configuration.



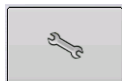
4. The Operating Configuration Wizard appears. Press the Add (plus sign) button. Use the top drop-down menu to select a **Make** of Lexion. Use the button drop-down menu to select any Lexion **Model** above 670.



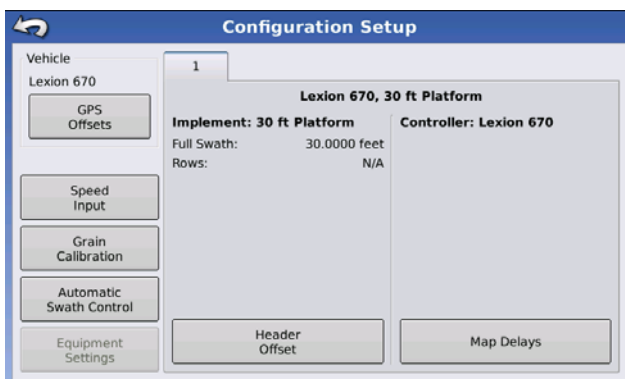
5. The Auxiliary Step appears, as shown. Underneath **Select Yield Monitor Options**, check the **Quantimeter** check box.

6. Follow the wizard's on-screen instructions to complete the operating configuration, including **Header Type**, **Swath Width**, and **Ground Speed Sensor**.

## CLAAS CONFIGURATION SETUP SETTINGS



After creating an operating configuration that includes a Combine and Header, you must go to the Configuration Setup screen and enter information for your specific operating configuration. Highlight your particular Operating Configuration in the configuration list shown on the Setup screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button.



The Configuration Setup screen appears, and this screen's appearance differs if you are using a CLAAS Quantimeter configuration.



---

**Note:** Adjustment of Combine Settings and the Header Sensor Calibration is performed through the CLAAS CEBIS monitor.

---

- **GPS Offsets**

For more information, see [“GPS Offsets” on page 51.](#)

- **Speed Input**

The ground speed source can be changed by pressing the Speed Input button. This opens the Speed Input screen, where you can choose a primary speed source of GPS, Wheels or Radar. For more information, see [“Speed Input Settings” on page 47.](#)

---



**Note:** If you are using a CLAAS Quantimeter, you do not choose a secondary speed source.

---

- **Grain Calibration**

For more information, see [“Calibration Information for CLAAS Quantimeter” on page 244.](#)

- **Automatic Swath Control**

For more information on AutoSwath, see [“AutoSwath Sensitivity Settings” on page 228.](#)

- **Header Offset**

For more information, see [“Header Offset” on page 233.](#)

- **Map Delays**

Press to change the Map Delay settings.

---



**CAUTION:** Do not change settings from the default value of 4 without specific instruction from Technical Support!

---

## CALIBRATION INFORMATION FOR CLAAS QUANTIMETER

Most calibration information used in a CLAAS Quantimeter configuration is calculated in the CEBIS monitor and then relayed to the display. For CLAAS Quantimeter configurations, the CEBIS monitor performs calibrations for the Header Sensor, Yield Monitor, Moisture and Temperature.

---



**Note:** The calibration created in the CLAAS Quantimeter is a linear calibration.

---

When a new calibration is started in the CEBIS monitor, a warning appears on the display, stating “A new grain calibration has been detected. Select an operating configuration to continue.” At the same time, the display unloads the Field Operating Configuration that was collecting data with the old calibration. Acknowledge the New Grain Calibration warning by pressing the check mark box. At the Home screen, press the Start Field Operation button and create a new Field Operation Configuration.

After you have completed the grain weight calibration and a new calibration factor has been calculated in the CEBIS monitor, this new calibration is then sent to the display. The display then uses the new

calibration to update all data collected since the time it detected the start of the new calibration. No further messages appear in the display.



**Note:** The New Grain Calibration warning does not appear for the first calibration performed during the season. It only appears for calibrations performed thereafter.



**Note:** The display does not update any previously-collected data collected prior to the time it detected the start of the new calibration.

## CLAAS Manual Moisture Setting

As with other calibration information, the Moisture Calibration is calculated in the CEBIS monitor and then relayed to the display. However, you can adjust moisture settings for a specific region with the display's Use Manual Moisture setting. The manual moisture setting will only be applied to the specified region.



1. **Go to CLAAS Calibration screen.** Go to the Home screen, and press the Setup (wrench) button. When the Setup screen opens, highlight your operating configuration and press the Setup (wrench) button, which opens the Configuration Setup screen.

2. At the Configuration Setup screen, press the **Grain Calibration** button. The CLAAS Calibration screen appears, as shown.

3. At the CLAAS Calibration screen, use the top drop-down menus to select the desired Crop and Calibration Instance. Then highlight the desired Region in the list. The manual moisture setting appears in the bottom right-hand corner of the CLAAS Calibration screen, as shown.

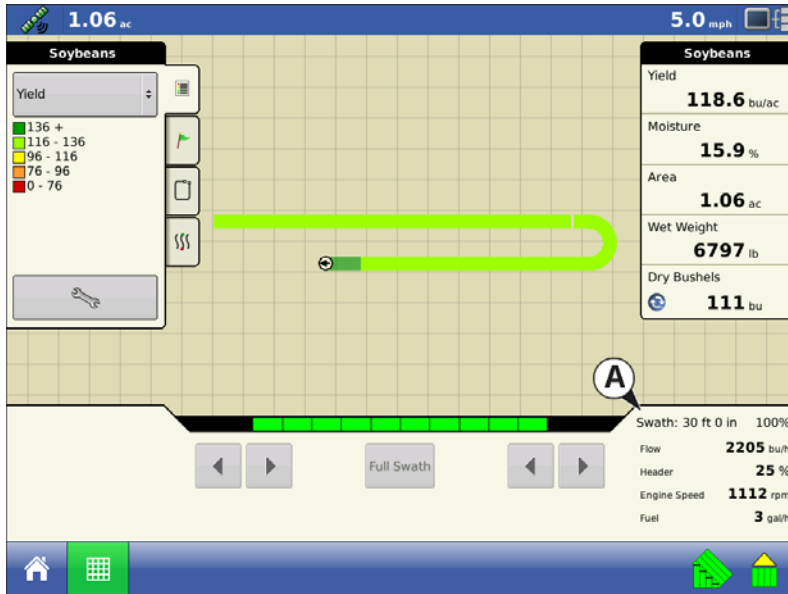


4. Use the up and down arrow keys to adjust the Manual Moisture to the desired value. When finished, press the back button to exit the screen.



**Note:** The list shown in the CLAAS Calibration screen only shows loads harvested during the current season.

# MAP SCREEN FOR CLAAS QUANTIMETER



Once an operating configuration is created for a CLAAS Quantimeter harvest configuration, and a field operation configuration is created at the Home screen, you can view map screen data. An example of a map screen as used in a CLAAS Quantimeter configuration is shown.

For the most part, this map screen is similar in appearance to the map screen used in other Harvest configurations. However, the Harvest Diagnostic button, shown at the bottom right-hand side of the **Equipment Tab (A)**, differs in appearance from that shown on other Harvest configuration map screens. This Harvest Diagnostic button does not display a picture of a combine.

The top of the Harvest Diagnostic button displays the following information:

- For configurations using a Platform Head or Pickup Head - Swath Width, shown both in units of measurement and as a percentage total.
- For configurations using a Row Head - Number of active rows.

The Harvest Diagnostic button also displays this information for all CLAAS configurations:

- Grain Flow
- Header Height - shown as a percentage
- Engine Speed - shown in revolutions per minute
- Fuel - fuel consumption of the combine



**Note:** Elevator Speed information is not shown for CLAAS Quantimeter configurations.

## DIAGNOSTICS FOR CLAAS QUANTIMETER

### Diagnostics Screen for CLAAS Quantimeter



When performing a Harvest operation, you can access the Grain Harvest Diagnostics screen, as shown. Technical support may request that you look at this screen for help in diagnosing a problem. To get to this screen, press the Display Information button as shown at left. When the Devices screen opens, press and highlight the AL Bridge listing in the CAN Device list, then press the Diagnostics button. The Grain Harvest Diagnostics screen appears, as shown.

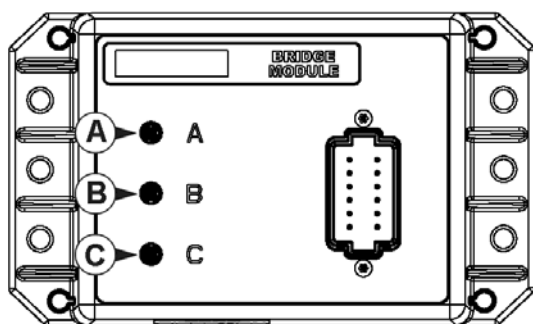
Grain Harvest Diagnostics					
Cal Factor	1.35	Engine Hours	1395.6	Header Segments	10
Moisture	18.6 %	Threshing Status	OFF	Total Distance	182168.6 ft
Temperature	73.4 ° F	Separator Hours	1250.5	Distance (Field)	164042 ft
Header	Down	Chopper Hours	1248.2	Distance (Road)	18126.6 ft
Ground Speed	5.5 mph	Total Fuel	290.6 gal	Total Yield	1090.7 T
Density	60 lb/bu	Total Fuel (Field)	178.3 gal	Total Yield (Dry)	1019.9 T
Header Width	29.9 ft	Total Fuel (Road)	112.3 gal	Fuel Rate	2.6 gal/h
Active Width	29.9 ft	Active Segments	10	Calibrated Flow	2058.4 bu/h
Grain Type	3	Engine Speed	1112 rpm	Header Pos	25 %

Notes:

• The Grain Harvest Diagnostics screen displays different information than the Diagnostics screen that appears for other Harvest configurations. This information is relayed from the CEBIS monitor.

For specific information regarding settings shown on this screen, contact Technical Support.

### Bridge Module



The Bridge Module routes communication between

- (A) CAN-Bus
- (B) ParaDyme CAN-Bus
- (C) CLAAS CAN-Bus

Three indicator lights verify communication received from these systems. A green light indicates good communication; an amber light indicates no communication.

Devices	
DISPLAY	Firmware: 1.0.15
	Firmware ID: AL BRIDGE
	Hardware ID: 4001826
	Serial Number: 2009010001
	Revision: 1.255.255.255
	Run Time: 34209
	Boot Counter: 212
207 AL BRIDGE	

Diagnostics

When the Bridge Module is communicating with the display, it should appear on the display's Devices list, as shown in the highlighted bar on the screen below. (For more information on Device Information, see *"Device Information" on page 45*).

## TROUBLESHOOTING CLAAS QUANTIMETER CONFIGURATIONS

During the operation of a CLAAS Quantimeter field operation configuration, you may see the following error messages. Below is a table describing the cause and solution of the error messages that could appear.

**Error Message:** Warning: "Full header width doesn't match Quantimeter full header width"

**Possible Cause:** The full header width that was specified in the display's Header Setup Wizard does not match the header width in the CEBIS monitor.

**Solution:** Set the swath width in the CEBIS monitor to match the swath width of the operating configuration in the display.

**Error Message:** Crop Type Changed: "The current configuration is no longer valid"

**Possible Cause:** The display has detected that the crop type specified in the CEBIS monitor has changed to a crop type that is different than what is specified in the display's field operation configuration.

Either:

**Solution:** 1. Change the crop type specified in the CEBIS monitor back to what is specified in the display. Then reload the display's field operation configuration.

Or

**Solution:** 2. Create a new field operation configuration that includes the new crop type. If necessary, create a new Harvest Product in Product Setup with the Harvest Crop Wizard. For more information, see *"Crop Settings" on page 15*.

**Error Message:** Grain Calibration: "A new grain calibration has been detected. Select an operating configuration to continue."

**Possible Cause:** When a new calibration is started in the CEBIS monitor, the warning at left appears on the display. At the same time, the display unloads the Field Operating Configuration that was collecting data with the old calibration.

**Solution:** Acknowledge the warning by pressing the check mark box. At the Home screen, press the **Start Field Operation** button. Use the Field Operation Wizard to create a new field operation configuration. After receiving the new calibration from the CEBIS monitor, the display will calculate that field operation configuration's harvest data by using this new calibration that was sent from CEBIS. (Also discussed in *"Calibration Information for CLAAS Quantimeter" on page 244*).

**Error Message:** CLAAS Communication Error: "Cannot communicate with CLAAS bridge module."

**Possible Cause:** No communication between Bridge Module and CLAAS CAN-Bus. (Shown as Indicator Light **C** on Bridge Module in *"Bridge Module" on page 247*).

**Solution:** Check cabling between Module and CLAAS Can-Bus.

**Error Message:** CAN Node Lost: "AL Bridge Node has stopped communicating."

**Possible Cause:** No communication between Bridge Module and display. (Shown as Indicator Light **A** on Bridge Module in *"Bridge Module" on page 247*).

**Solution:** Check cabling between Bridge Module and display.

# APPENDIX

## SYSTEM DIAGRAMS REFERENCE

To view detailed system diagrams for various machine configurations, go to the Support Tab of the Ag Leader Web site, which can be referenced via the following URL:

<http://www.agleader.com/customer-support/product-manuals/>



**Note:** To view and/or print the System diagrams, you will need the Adobe Acrobat or Adobe Reader .pdf file format. The Adobe Reader software comes pre-installed on most personal computers. If Adobe Reader is not installed on your computer the program is available for download at no charge. A link to the Adobe download site is located at the Ag Leader Web site.

## FILE FORMATS

### PRESCRIPTION MAP FILE TYPES

- **.irx**

The .irx file supports multiple product recommendations in a single file.

- **.shp, .shx, .dbf (shape file group)**

What is commonly called a shape file is actually a collection of three different files. All three of the files are required and must be present on the USB drive for the system to use shape file groups for variable rate product application. A single "shape file" can contain recommendation rates for multiple products.

### BOUNDARY AND GUIDELINE FILE TYPES

- **.iby**

Boundary file format. Boundary files are created at the Boundary Tab, found on the Mapping Toolbox of the Map screen; or imported to the system from the Import Files button at the External Storage Operations screen. The External Storage Operations screen can be accessed by pressing the External Storage Operations button on the Home screen.

- **.pat**

Pattern guideline file. Pattern files are created at the Guidance Tab, found on the Mapping Toolbox of the Map screen; or imported to the system from the External Storage Operations button on the Home screen. The External Storage Operations screen can be accessed by pressing the External Storage Operations button on the Home screen.

### IMAGE FILE TYPES

- **.png and .bmp**

Supported file formats for the Display Owner Image. File size is limited to a maximum of 200 pixels wide by 100 pixels tall. Import the file from the Import Image button on the Display screen's General Tab.

## SYSTEM FILE TYPES

- **.ibk**

System backup file. Backup files are written to the USB drive by pressing the Create Backup button on the Display Setup screen's Advanced Tab.

- **.ilf**

System log file. Created with the Copy Data button on the External Storage Operations screen or pressing the Export Data Files button of the Display screen's Advanced Tab.

- **.fw2**

Firmware upgrade file for the display and control modules. Install firmware updates from the USB drive by pressing the Upgrade Firmware button on the External Storage Operations screen. The External Storage Operations screen can be accessed by pressing the External Storage Operations button on the Home screen.

- **.msf**

The .msf (Management Setup File) file format allows the display to import Grower and Field information from SMS software via the USB drive.

- **.ref**

Variety reference map file. SMS software uses planting data to create a variety reference map which is saved as a .ref file. This .ref file can then be exported to the display for use with the Automatic Variety Tracking and Automatic Region Changing features.

## MODULE LED DIAGNOSTIC STATES

- **Off**

No power

- **Flashing 1 Hz green**

Normal operation

- **Flashing 1 Hz orange**

CAN bus errors detected (error active/passive state)

- **Steady orange**

CAN bus off

- **Steady red**

Hardware or initialization failure

- **Flashing 1 Hz red**

Firmware download in progress

- **Flashing fast red**

Firmware download error

## COMPANY WARRANTY STATEMENT

### WARRANTY

Ag Leader Technology will repair or replace at no charge any component of the display that fails during normal service, while being used in an approved application, within two years of the warranty start date.

Warranty is not provided for damage resulting from abuse, neglect, accidents, vandalism, acts of nature, or any causes that are outside of the normal intended use of the display. Ag Leader Technology shall not be liable for indirect, incidental, or consequential damages to the dealer, end user, or third parties arising from the sale, installation, or use of any Ag Leader Technology product.

## PROPRIETARY TECHNOLOGY NOTICE

Ag Leader Technology's display has patents on its design and operational features. Copying *features of this system relating to measurement and calculation of grain flow and weight, organization of field and load data* may result in patent infringement.

## COPYRIGHT NOTICE

Ag Leader Technology has copyrighted (© 2010) the contents of this manual and the operating program for the display. No reproductions may be made without first obtaining the consent of Ag Leader Technology.

## SERVICE AND SUPPORT

Your display was designed with simplicity and ease of use in mind. This manual has been provided to help familiarize yourself with the display and its basic functionality. Setup wizards are implemented where appropriate within the system to further simplify configuration and use.

If you have additional questions or feel that you may be having a problem with your system, call your local Ag Leader Technology dealer or call us directly at the phone number below. If we determine you have a hardware failure, we will ship replacement hardware immediately.

Our Technical Support Department can be reached by phone at 515-232-5363 extension #1 or through email at [support@agleader.com](mailto:support@agleader.com).



# Index

## Symbols

.pat file 82, 84  
.ref file 227

## A

A point 78  
A+ pattern 87  
A-B button 80  
A-B line 76  
    within smartpath 76  
AB line 77, 78  
    in smartpath 80  
AB manager 81  
A-B/smartpath toggle 76  
AB/smartpath toggle 81  
active line cycle 76, 80  
adaptive curve 83, 86, 88  
    area count 86  
    heading change 86  
    heading threshold 86  
    new pass 86  
adaptive pattern options 86  
add configuration 12  
add new calibration 239  
    retire calibration 240  
add product 13  
add product mix 13  
advanced combine settings 232  
all area covered 82  
area 224  
area button 241  
area calibration 240  
area count 86  
automatic region changing 225, 226, 227  
automatic swath control 228  
automatic variety tracking 225, 226, 227  
autoswath 228  
    RTK 229  
    sensitivity 229

## B

base path 80  
boundary 225  
bushels per hour 224

## C

c value 239  
calibrate header sensor 232  
calibration load 237  
calibration sequence 230  
calibration value 239  
CAN device list  
    moisture module 241  
cancel 75  
center pivot 87  
clean grain elevator 225, 230  
clear map 225  
clear nudge 86  
combine settings button 232  
configuration settings 231  
configuration tab  
    add button 12  
configuration type 12  
console button 12  
copy all files 230  
copy log files 84  
copy to card 84  
crop settings  
    dry percentage 15  
    expand bushels 15  
    weight to volume 15  
crop settings screen 15

## D

data 225  
delete product 14  
diagnostic 224  
diagnostics 241  
    flow max 241  
    flow min 241  
    flow offset 241  
    flow rate 241  
    header raw 241  
    moisture raw 241  
    motor current 242  
    proximity sensor 242  
    relay status 242  
    sensor force 241  
    speed pulses 241  
    temperature 242  
    temperature raw 242  
diagnostics button 241, 246  
dry bushels 224  
dry percentage 15

## E

- EdgeVac 132
  - sensors 132
- edit info button 14
- edit legend button 14
- edit pattern 84
- edit product 14
- elevator mount unit sensor 242
- elevator speed 224
- EMU sensor 242
- engage 88
- enter calibration weight 238
- enter weight 238
- EPA number 14
- expand bushels 15
- export pattern 84
  - copy to card 84

## F

- field 16
- flag region as a calibration load 225, 226, 237
- flow delay 225
- flow max 241
- flow min 241
- flow offset 241
- flow rate 241
- flow sensor 225
- followed path 80
- full calibration 238

## G

- gear ratio
  - example 107, 108
  - multiple drives 107, 108
  - single motor drive 106
- gear ratio calculation 106
- GPS button 12
- grain calibration button 234, 236, 245
- grain calibration screen 233, 235, 239
- grain harvest diagnostics 241
- grain settings screen 15
- grain weight calibration 236
- grid 225
- grower 15
- guidance 225
- guidance options 86
  - adaptive curve 86
- guidance tab 74, 75
  - A-B line 75, 76

- active line cycle 76
- cancel 75
- guidance tab 75
- load pattern 74
- manage pattern 74
- menu toggle 75
- new AB pattern 75
- new pattern 74
- nudge menu 75
- pause 75
- remark A 75
- reset 75, 76
- resume 75
- save 75
- save pattern 76
- set A 75
- shift 75
- smartpath 76
- guidance width 77, 83

## H

- harvest configuration 229
- harvest diagnostic button 224
- harvest diagnostic screen 224
- header heigh 232
- header height 224
- header offset 233
- header raw 241
- header sensor
  - reset all 232
- header sensor calibration 232
- header settings 232
- heading change 86
- heading threshold 82, 86
- home screen 11

## I

- identical curve 83, 89
- implement tab 233
- import pattern 84
- import product 13
- import variety map
  - reference file 228
- import variety maps 227
  - error messages 228
- instantaneous coverage 225

## L

- legend

- moisture 225
- yield 225
- legend reference
  - grid 225
  - Rx 225
- legend select 225
  - boundary 225
  - clear map 225
  - data 225
  - guidance 225
  - load reference 225
  - marker 225
  - reference 225
- legend setup button 225
- linear calibration 238
- load pattern 74, 82
  - guidance width 83
- load reference 225
- load weight 236
- logged area 82

## M

- M1 239
- manage equipment 13
- manage pattern 74
- manage pattern button 84
- manage patterns 84
  - edit pattern 84
  - export pattern 84
  - import pattern 84
- management setup 15
  - field 16
  - grower 15
  - season 16
- map delays 232
- map screen 223
  - flow delay 225
- map view button 223
- mapping toolbox 74
- marker 225
- max header height 232
- menu toggle 75
- metric 224
- min header height 232
- moisture 224, 225
- moisture button 14
- moisture calibration 235
- moisture module 241
- moisture raw 241

- motor current 242

## N

- new AB pattern 75, 77
  - A point 78
  - set A 78
  - set B 78
- new calibration 240
- new calibration button 240
- new pass 86
- new pattern 74, 77
  - guidance width 77
- nudge 86
  - guidance options 86
- nudge menu 75

## O

- operating configuration 12
- options screen 225, 226
  - import variety map 227

## P

- pattern file 84
- pause 75, 85
- perform calibration button 238
- pivot 87
  - cancel 88
  - engage 88
  - number of rows 88
  - row spacing 88
  - shift by distance 88
  - shift by rows 88
- pivot pattern 78
- planter configuration
  - EdgeVac 132
- pre-harvest checklist 230
- pre-harvest preparation 230
- product name 14
- product option 13
  - add product 13
  - add product mix 13
  - import product 13
- product settings
  - EPA number 14
  - manufacturer 14
  - restricted use pesticide 14
- product settings screen 14
- product setup 13
- product tab 13

- add 13
- crop settings 15
- delete 14
- edit 14
- edit info 14
- edit legend 14
- grain settings 15
- moisture 14
- yield 14

projected path 80  
proximity sensor 242

## R

- reference 225
- reference file 228
- region button 225
  - options screen 225
- relay status 242
- remark A 75, 85
- remove all 85
- remove all button 82
- remove all patterns 85
- remove button 85
- remove pattern 85
- reset 75, 76, 85
- reset all 232
- reset button 80
- reset pattern 85
- restricted use pesticide 14
- resume 75, 85
- retire calibration 240
- rting 227
- Rx 225

## S

- S1 239
- save 75
- save button 80
- save pattern 76, 82
- save pattern button 82
- season 16
- sensor force 241
- set A 75, 78
- set B 78
- set height 232
- set max 232
- set min 232
- setup buttons 11
  - console 12

## GPS 12

- setup product 13
- setup screen 13
  - configuration tab 12
  - product settings 14
- shift 75
- shift by distanc 88
- shift by distance 83
- shift by rows 83, 88
- shift pattern 83
- show cal numbers button 239
- smart tab 82
- smartpath 76, 79
  - A-B button 80
  - A-B line 76
  - AB line within 80
  - AB manager 81
  - active line cycle 80
  - all area covered 82
  - base path 80
  - followed path 80
  - guidance width 79
  - heading threshold 82
  - logged area 82
  - new pattern 79
  - notes 80
  - projected path 80
  - reset button 80
  - save button 80
  - select previous pass 80
  - smart tab 82
  - toggle 76
- speed pulses 241
- status items 224
  - area 224
  - dry bushels 224
  - metric 224
  - moisture 224
  - wet bushels 224
  - wet weight 224
  - yield 224
- stepper seed control
  - gear ratio 106
- stop height 232
- swath width 224

## T

- temperature 242
- temperature button 235

temperature calibration 234  
temperature raw 242

## V

V1 239  
variety map 227  
variety tracking 226  
    messages 227  
vibration button 234  
vibration calibration 233  
    number 234

## W

weight calibration 236  
    error 238  
    full 238  
    linear 238  
weight calibration numbers 239  
    M1 239  
    S1 239  
    V1 239  
weight to volume 15  
wet bushels 224  
wet weight 224

## Y

yield 14, 224, 225

**This page left blank intentionally.**